PRINCIPIA LATINA.—Part I.

FIRST LATIN COURSE.

COMPREHENDING

GRAMMAR, DELECTUS, AND EXERCISE-BOOK,

WITH VOCABULARIES.

For the Use of the Lower Forms in Public and Private Schools.

BY THE LATE SIR WILLIAM SMITH, D.C.L., LL.D.

THIRTY-EIGHTH EDITION.

CAREFULLY REVISED THROUGHOUT, WITH ADDITIONS TO THE GRAMMAR FORMING A
COMPLETE LATIN PRIMER.

THIRD IMPRESSION.

PREFACE TO THE THIRTY-SEVENTH EDITION.

THE method of teaching languages originated by the late Sir William Smith, and embodied by him in his PRINCIPIA SERIES, has met with very remarkable success, and has been very widely adopted throughout the English-speaking world.

The PRINCIPIA LATINA, which was followed by similar books on the Greek, French, German, and Italian languages, was the result of many years' practical teaching, and seeks to combine the advantages of the older and more modern methods of instruction.

In some cases boys had been compelled to commit to memory all the grammatical forms and syntactical rules without having their knowledge tested by any practical application in the construction of sentences ; in others they had been burdened by a large number of explanations, exceptions, and cautions, and by complicated rules for the formation of cases and other inflexional forms.

The main object of this work is to enable a beginner to fix the Declensions and Conjugations thoroughly in his memory, to learn their usage by constructing simple sentences as soon as he commences the study of the language, and to accumulate gradually a stock of useful words. It is divided into three parts :—

I. The first part contains the elementary grammatical forms, with exercises upon the inflexions ; concurrently with which the simple rules of syntax are introduced as they are required for the formation of sentences.

II. The second part contains an explanation of some of the more important idioms of the language, such as the

construction of the Accusative Case and the Infinitive
Mood, of the Ablative Absolute, of the Gerund and Gerun-
dive, &c., exemplified by Exercises upon each construction.
The Vocabularies contain all the words in the Exercises,
and Alphabetical Indexes of the Latin and English words
in the Vocabularies are appended to them, forming a first
Latin Dictionary.

III. The third part contains fuller details of the gram-
matical forms, thus forming with those given in the first
part a complete Latin Primer, and obviating the neces-
sity of using any other Grammar, till the pupil has made
further progress in his studies. It is recommended, how-
ever, that the elementary forms in the first part, with
the exercises upon them, should be thoroughly mastered by
the pupil before his attention is directed to the additional
grammatical forms.

The work thus contains Grammar, Delectus, and Exer-
cise-book, with Vocabularies, and consequently presents in
one book all that the pupil will require for some time in
his study of the language. It is confidently believed that a
boy who has gone carefully through the work will be found
to have acquired a sound knowledge of the chief gram-
matical forms, and of the most important syntactical rules,
and thus be prepared to enter with advantage upon the
systematic study of the language.

For many years after the publication of the Public
School Latin Primer, the cases of the Nouns, Adjectives,
and Pronouns were arranged in duplicate form, according
to the old and the newer method, in order to meet the
convenience of teachers ; but now that the arrangement of
the cases according to the system of the Public School
Primer has been almost universally adopted, it has been
thought better to present this form only.

Various alterations and improvements have been intro-
duced into the PRINCIPIA LATINA, Part I., during past
years, in most cases at the suggestion of teachers who had
by long practice tested the book ; but the present edition
has undergone a thorough revision to adapt it more com-
pletely to the requirements of modern teaching : and
whilst the identity of the book has been scrupulously pre-

served and no change made in its plan or arrangement, various alterations of detail have been introduced with the object of making the beginner's steps more easy and sure.

(1) Several Exercises which have hitherto proved rather a stumbling-block to young learners—especially Nos. xvii and xxv—have been re-cast ; while a few others have been slightly modified. ·

(2) The treatment of the Locative Case has been postponed. See pp. 93, 114.

The Indexes have been rendered more complete and are given in larger type.

It is hoped that teachers who have become accustomed to the book will find little or no inconvenience in adapting themselves to the changes which have been made, and will recognize that they have been made with the sole object of bringing the pupil ' past the bitterness of his learning.' And it may be said without the slightest reserve, that no single change has been made which has not had that object in view.

The reviser desires to express his acknowledgments to Mr. Thomas Allen, M.A., for many valuable suggestions.

CONTENTS.

Part II.

SOME SYNTACTICAL RULES.

PART III.

ADDITIONS TO THE GRAMMATICAL FORMS.

PART I.

GRAMMATICAL FORMS.

I.—THE ALPHABET. PARTS OF SPEECH.

1. *Alphabet.*—The Latin Alphabet consists of 25 letters, the same as the English without *W*.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I (J), K, L, M, N, O, P,
a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i (j), k, l, m, n, o, p,

Q, R, S, T, U (V), X, Y, Z.
q, r, s, t, u (v), x, y, z.

The letters are divided into Vowels and Consonants.

The Vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*. The remaining letters are Consonants.

The Diphthongs are *ae, oe, au,* which are in common use, and *eu, ei, ui,* which occur in only a few words.

The diphthongs *ae, oe,* are ordinarily pronounced as *ē*. In *eu, ei, ui,* the second letter of the diphthong only is usually sounded.

A Long Vowel may be indicated by the mark (‾) over the vowel. A Short Vowel by the mark (˘). (See p. 111.)

2. *Parts of Speech.*—There are eight parts of speech in the Latin language.

1. Substantive or Noun.	5. Adverb.
2. Adjective.	6. Preposition.
3. Pronoun.	7. Conjunction.
4. Verb.	8. Interjection.

There is no article in the Latin language : hence the Latin **mensă** means not only *table,* but also *a table* and *the table.*

II.—PRONUNCIATION.

There are two different modes of pronouncing Latin in England.

1. The 'old' or ordinary, traditional, pronunciation; which gives to each letter the sound which it commonly has in our own language. The familiar words páter, *father;* máter, *mother;* regína, *queen;* ídem, *the same,* may serve as examples.

2. The 'new' or restored pronunciation; which aims at giving to each letter the sound which was given to it by the Romans themselves in ancient times.

The chief points of difference between the two methods concern the long vowels ā, ē, ī, the short sound of u, the diphthong au, the consonants c, g, j, v, and the syllable ti when followed by another vowel. These differences are shown in the following table :—

Latin letters.	'Old' pronunciation.	'New' pronunciation.
ā	as in m*a*ke	as in f*a*ther
ē	„ m*e*	„ *ei* in rei*n*
ī	„ m*i*ne	„ in mach*i*ne
ŭ (often)	„ t*u*b	„ f*u*ll
au	„ P*au*l	*ou* in h*ou*se
c	soft before e, i, y, ae, oe	always hard = k
g	soft before e, i, y, ae, oe	always hard, as in *g*o
j	as in *j*oke	as *y* in *y*oke
v	„ *v*an	„ *w* in *w*in
ti (foll. by vowel) }	„ na*t*ion	{ pure sound of *t* retained, as nā-*ti*-o.

Which ever mode of pronunciation is adopted, it is important that the distinction between long and short vowels should be carefully observed : as, lī-ber, *free,* but lĭb-er, *a book;* lē-vis, *smooth,* but lĕv-is, *light;* pō-pŭlus, *a poplar-tree,* but pŏp-ŭ-lus, *a people* or *nation.*

e is never mute as in English, but always forms a separate syllable ; as, es-se (two syll.), ă-mā-rĕ (three syll.), mī-lĕs (two syll.). Also when two vowels come together which do not form a diphthong, each vowel retains its separate sound : as, ĕ-am, rĕ-ăr, bŏ-um, dĭ-ēs.

III.—Substantives or Nouns.

Nouns are inflected for *Number* and *Case*.

There are two Numbers : *Singular* and *Plural*.

There are six Cases : *Nominative, Vocative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative, Ablative.*

There was once another Case, the Locative : see p. 114.

There are three Genders : *Masculine, Feminine,* and *Neuter.*

Nouns which may be either Masculine or Feminine are called *Common.*

There are five Declensions, distinguished by the endings of the Genitive Case.

	I	II	III	IV	V
Gen. Sing.	ae	ĭ	ĭs	ūs	ĕī
Gen. Plur.	Ā-rum	ŏ-rum	{-um / ĭ-um}	ŭ-um	Ē-rum

The *Stem* is that part of the word which remains after the changeable endings are taken away.

The *Stems* of Nouns can be ascertained by taking away the terminations *um* or *rum* of the Genitive Plural. Hence the final letter of the Stem is in—

I	II	III	IV	V
A	O	consonant or I	U	E

IV.—The First or A Declension.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the First Declension ends in ă.

	Sing.			Plur.	
Nom.	**Mens-ă** (*fem.*)	*a table*	**mens-ae**	*tables*
Voc.	**mens-ă**	*O table*	**mens-ae**	*O tables*
Acc.	**mens-am**	*a table*	**mens-ās**	*tables*
Gen.	**mens-ae**	*of a table*	**mens-Ārum**	*of tables*
Dat.	**mens-ae**	*to* or *for a table*	**mens-īs**	*to* or *for tables*
Abl.	**mens-ā**	*by, with,* or *from a table.*	**mens-īs**	*by, with,* or *from tables.*

Note.—**Fīlĭă**, *a daughter*, **dĕă**, *a goddess*, and a few other Nouns, usually make the Dat. and Abl. Plur. in **ābŭs**: as, **fīlĭābŭs, dĕābŭs.**

Gender.—All Nouns of the First Declension are Feminine, except those which designate males: as, **naută**, *a sailor.* See also p. 123.

RULE 1.—The Nominative Case denotes the SUBJECT. A Verb agrees with its Nominative case in number and person : as, pŭellă cŭrrĭt, *the girl runs ;* pŭellae cŭrrunt, *the girls run.*

RULE 2.—The Accusative Case denotes the OBJECT. Transitive verbs govern an Accusative case : as, ăquĭlă ālās hăbĕt, *the eagle has wings.*

NOTE.—In Latin the verb is usually put last and the Accusative case immediately before it.

Singular, 3 pers.		Plural, 3 pers.	
currĭt	*(he, she, it) runs.*	currunt	*(they) run.*
hăbĕt	*(he, she, it) has.*	hăbent	*(they) have.*

EXERCISE I.

1. Filia currit. 2. Filiae currunt. 3. Regina coronam habet. 4. Puella coronam habet. 5. Filia pecuniam habet. 6. Femina pecuniam habet. 7. Roma portas habet. 8. Coloniae portas habent. 9. Puellae rosas habent. 10. Feminae rosas habent. 11. Columbae alas habent. 12. Insulae oras habent.

1. The woman runs. 2. The women run. 3. The dove has wings. 4. The eagles have wings. 5. The colony has gates. 6. The island has coasts. 7. The girls have money. 8. The women have money. 9. The colony has women. 10. The island has colonies. 11. The woman has a crown. 12. The islands have roses.

RULE 3.—When two Nouns in Latin are connected by the verb "To be," they are put in the same case : as, Brĭtannĭă est insŭlă, *Britain is an island.*

RULE 4.—The latter of two Nouns is put in the Genitive case when the one is dependent upon the other : as, Brĭtannĭă est insŭlă Eurōpae, *Britain is an island of Europe.*

est *(he, she, it) is, there is.*　　　　sunt *(they) are, there are.*

EXERCISE II.

1. Sicilia est insula. 2. Sicilia est insula Europae. 3. Roma est regina Italiae. 4. Incolae Italiae sunt poetae. 5. Incolae insularum sunt nautae. 6. Incolae Britanniae sunt agricolae. 7. Insula est patria nautarum. 8. Graecia est patria poetarum. 9. Amicitia est gloria vitae. 10. Inimicitia incolarum est causa pugnae.

1. Britain is the queen of islands. 2. Britain is the native-land of sailors. 3. Italy is the native-land of poets. 4. The inhabitants of Britain are sailors. 5. The inhabitants of Sicily are sailors. 6. The inhabitants of Gaul are husbandmen. 7. Britain is the native-land of glory. 8. Friendship is the crown of life. 9. The battle is the cause of glory. 10. The enmity of the sailors is the cause of the battle.

V.—The Second or O Declension.

The Nominative Singular of Masculine Nouns of the Second Declension ends in ŭs and ĕr, and of Neuter Nouns in um.

A. *Masculine.*

1.

	Sing.			Plur.	
Nom.	Dŏmĭn-ŭs	*a lord*	dŏmĭn-ī	*lords*	
Voc.	dŏmĭn-ĕ	*O lord*	dŏmĭn-ī	*O lords*	
Acc.	dŏmĭn-um	*a lord*	dŏmĭn-ōs	*lords*	
Gen.	dŏmĭn-ī	*of a lord*	dŏmĭn-ōrum	*of lords*	
Dat.	dŏmĭn-ō	*to or for a lord*	dŏmĭn-īs	*to or for lords*	
Abl.	dŏmĭn-ō	*by, with, or from a lord.*	dŏmĭn-īs	*by, with, or from lords.*	

2.

Nom.	Măgistĕr	*a master*	măgistr-ī	*masters*	
Voc.	măgistĕr	*O master*	măgistr-ī	*O masters*	
Acc.	magistr-um	*a master*	măgistr-ōs	*masters*	
Gen.	măgistr-ī	*of a master*	măgistr-ōrum	*of masters*	
Dat.	măgistr-ō	*to or for a master*	măgistr-īs	*to or for masters*	
Abl.	măgistr-ō	*by, with, or from a master.*	măgistr-īs	*by, with, or from masters.*	

3.

Nom.	Pŭĕr	*a boy*	pŭĕr-ī	*boys*	
Voc.	pŭĕr	*O boy*	pŭĕr-ī	*O boys*	
Acc.	pŭĕr-um	*a boy*	pŭĕr-ōs	*boys*	
Gen.	pŭĕr-ī	*of a boy*	pŭĕr-ōrum	*of boys*	
Dat.	pŭĕr-ō	*to or for a boy*	pŭĕr-īs	*to or for boys*	
Abl.	pŭĕr-ō	*by, with, or from a boy.*	pŭĕr-īs	*by, with, or from boys.*	

NOTE 1.—Nouns in ĭŭs, ĭum, often contract the Gen. Sing. īī into ī: as, fīlĭŭs, *a son*, Gen. fīlī or fīlī; praemĭum, *a reward*, Gen. Sing. praemĭī or praemī.

2. Proper Names in ĭŭs, together with fīlĭŭs, *a son*, and gĕnĭŭs, *a guardian deity*, have Voc. Sing. in ī: as, Mercŭrĭŭs, *Mercury*, Voc. Mercŭrī; fīlĭŭs, Voc. fīlī; gĕnĭŭs, Voc. gĕnī.

3. There is one Noun of the Second Declension ending in ĭr, namely, vĭr, *a man* (as distinguished from *a woman*).

Nom.	Vĭr	*a man*	vĭr-ī	*men*	
Voc.	vĭr	*O man*	vĭr-ī	*O men*	
Acc.	vĭr-um	*a man*	vĭr-ōs	*men*	
Gen.	vĭr-ī	*of a man*	vĭr-ōrum, vĭr-UM	} *of men*	
Dat.	vĭr-ō	*to or for a man*	vĭr-īs	*to or for men*	
Abl.	vĭr-ō	*by, with, or from a man.*	vĭr-īs	*by, with, or from men.*	

B. *Neuter.*

Sing.			Plur.	
N.V.A.	**Regn-um**	*a kingdom,* or *O kingdom*	**regn-ă**	*kingdoms,* or *O kingdoms*
Gen.	**regn-ī**	*of a kingdom*	**regn-ŏrum**	*of kingdoms*
Dat.	**regn-ō**	*to* or *for a kingdom*	**regn-īs**	*to* or *for kingdoms*
Abl.	**regn-ō**	*by, with,* or *from a kingdom.*	**regn-īs**	*by, with,* or *from kingdoms.*

NOTE.—The Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative of all Neuter Nouns are the same in each Number, and in the Plural these three cases always end in **a**.

GENDER.—Most Nouns in **ŭs** are Masculine, but names of trees are Feminine; as, mālŭs, *an apple-tree.* (See also p. 123.)

Three Nouns of the Second Declension ending in **ŭs** are Neuter: vīrŭs, *poison*; vulgŭs (sometimes Masc.), *the multitude*; pĕlăgŭs, *the (open) sea.* They are used only in the Singular.

ĕt   *and.*

EXERCISE III.

Masculine Nouns in **ŭs.**

1. Filius currit.   2. Servi currunt.   3. Dominus servos habet. 4. Filius domini servos habet.   5. Dominus servos et equos habet. 6. Filii dominorum equos et tauros habent.   7. Avus servos et equos habet.   8. Filius amici hortum habet.   9. Filii inimicorum gladios habent.   10. Rhodanus est fluvius Galliae.   11. Rhodanus et Rhenus sunt fluvii Europae.   12. Hortus rosas habet.

1. The slave runs.   2. The sons run.   3. The grandfather has a slave.   4. The son of the grandfather has slaves.   5. The sons of the grandfather have slaves.   6. The sons of the lords are sailors. 7. The sons of the slaves are husbandmen.   8. The lord has slaves and horses.   9. The Rhine and the Rhone are rivers of Europe. 10. The friends of the grandfather are poets.   11. The enemies of the lord have swords.   12. The rivers of the island have banks.

RULE 5.—The Dative Case indicates the person *to whom* something is given: as, măgistĕr cŏlumbam pŭĕrō dăt, *the master gives a dove to the boy.*

dăt   *(he, she, it) gives.*   dant   *(they) give.*

EXERCISE IV.

Masculine Nouns in **ĕr.**

1. Puer librum habet.   2. Magister librum puero dat.   3. Filius libros habet.   4. Dominus servos et ministros habet.   5. Dominus agrum ministro dat.   6. Socer agros et ministros habet.   7. Socer agrum genero dat.   8. Magistri libros pueris dant.   9. Gener servum puero dat.   10. Puer librum ministro dat.

1. The boys have books.   2. The lord gives a field to the boys. 3. The fathers-in-law and the sons-in-law have fields.   4. The

father-in-law gives servants to the son-in-law. 5. The friends have books. 6. The enemies have servants and fields. 7. The masters give gardens to the boys. 8. The master gives doves to the boys. 9. The grandfather gives fields to the master. 10. The fathers-in-law give fields and bulls to the sons-in-law.

<div align="center">

EXERCISE V.

Neuter Nouns.

</div>

1. Amici sunt donum caeli. 2. Amicitia est donum Dei. 3. Dona avi sunt praemia diligentiae. 4. Aurum et argentum sunt metalla. 5. Magister argentum puero dat. 6. Discipuli sunt gaudium magistrorum. 7. Bellum est causa morborum. 8. Oppidum muros et portas habet. 9. Templa sunt gloria Graeciae. 10. Romani gladios et scuta habent.

1. Friends are the gift of God. 2. The boys and girls are the joy of the grandfather. 3. The grandfather gives gold and silver to the boys. 4. Greece and Sicily have temples. 5. The temples of Greece have gifts. 6. The father-in-law gives gold and silver to the temples. 7. The metals are the cause of war. 8. The queen has lands and towns. 9. The queen gives rewards to the inhabitants. 10. The lord gives shields and swords to the servants.

VI.—Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

Adjectives in ŭs, ă, um, and ĕr, (ĕ)ră, (ĕ)rum, are declined in the Masculine and Neuter like Nouns of the Second Declension, and in the Feminine like Nouns of the First Declension : as, bŏnŭs, bŏnă, bŏnum, *good;* nĭgĕr, nĭgră, nigrum, *black;* tĕnĕr, tĕnĕră, tĕnĕrum, *tender*.

1.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Bŏn-ŭs	bŏn-ă	bŏn-um	bŏn-ī	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ă
Voc.	bŏn-ĕ	bŏn-ă	bŏn-um	bŏn-ī	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ă
Acc.	bŏn-um	bŏn-am	bŏn-um	bŏn-ōs	bŏn-ās	bŏn-ă
Gen.	bŏn-ī	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ī	bŏn-ōrum	bŏn-ārum	bŏn-ōrum
Dat.	bŏn-ō	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ō	bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs
Abl.	bŏn-ō	bŏn-ā	bŏn-ō	bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs

2.

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. V.	Nĭgĕr	nigr-ă	nigr-um	nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ă
Acc.	nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-ă
Gen.	nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ī	nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum
Dat.	nigr-ō	nigr-ae	nigr-ō	nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs
Abl.	nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō	nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs

3.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. V.	Tĕnĕr	tĕnĕr-ă	tĕnĕr-um	tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ă
Acc.	tĕnĕr-um	tĕnĕr-am	tĕnĕr-um	tĕnĕr-ōs	tĕnĕr-ās	tĕnĕr-ă
Gen.	tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-ōrum	tĕnĕr-ārum	tĕnĕr-ōrum
Dat.	tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs
Abl.	tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-ā	tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs

4.

FEMININE ADJECTIVE DECLINED ALONG WITH FEMININE NOUN, BOTH
OF FIRST DECLENSION.

Sing.

N. V.	Parvă mensă	a small table, or O small table
Acc.	parvam mensam	a small table
Gen.	parvae mensae	of a small table
Dat.	parvae mensae	to or for a small table
Abl.	parvā mensā	by, with, or from a small table.

Plur.

N. V.	parvae mensae	small tables, or O small tables
Acc.	parvās mensās	small tables
Gen.	parvārum mensārum	of small tables
Dat.	parvīs mensīs	to or for small tables
Abl.	parvīs mensīs	by, with, or from small tables.

5.

MASCULINE ADJECTIVES DECLINED ALONG WITH MASCULINE
NOUNS, BOTH OF SECOND DECLENSION.

(A.)

Sing.

Nom.	Bŏnŭs dŏmĭnŭs	a good lord
Voc.	bŏnĕ dŏmĭnĕ	O good lord
Acc.	bŏnum dŏmĭnum	a good lord
Gen.	bŏnī dŏmĭnī	of a good lord
Dat.	bŏnō dŏmĭnō	to or for a good lord
Abl.	bŏnō dŏmĭnō	by, with, or from a good lor

Plur.

N. V.	bŏnī dŏmĭnī	good lords, or O good lords
Acc.	bŏnōs dŏmĭnōs	good lords
Gen.	bŏnōrum dŏmĭnōrum	of good lords
Dat.	bŏnīs dŏmĭnīs	to or for good lords
Abl.	bŏnīs dŏmĭnīs	by, with, or from good lords.

(B.)

Sing.

Nom.	Bŏnŭs pŭĕr	a good boy
Voc.	bŏnĕ pŭĕr	O good boy
Acc.	bŏnum pŭĕrum	a good boy
Gen.	bŏnī pŭĕrī	of a good boy
Dat.	bŏnō pŭĕrō	to or for a good boy
Abl	bŏnō pŭĕrō	by, with, or from a good boy.

Plur.

N. V.	bŏnī pŭĕrī	*good boys,* or *O good boys*
Acc.	bŏnōs pŭĕrōs	*good boys*
Gen.	bŏnōrum pŭĕrōrum	*of good boys*
Dat.	bŏnīs pŭĕrīs	*to* or *for good boys*
Abl.	bŏnīs pŭĕrīs	*by, with,* or *from good boys.*

6.

NEUTER ADJECTIVE DECLINED ALONG WITH NEUTER NOUN,
BOTH OF SECOND DECLENSION.

(A.)

Sing.

N. V. A.	**Magnum regnum**	*a great kingdom,* or *O great kingdom*
Gen.	magnī regnī	*of a great kingdom*
Dat	magnō regnō	*to* or *for a great kingdom*
Abl.	magnō regnō	*by, with,* or *from a great kingdom.*

Plur.

N. V. A.	magnă regnă	*great kingdoms,* or *O great kingdoms*
Gen.	magnōrum regnōrum	*of great kingdoms*
Dat.	magnīs regnīs	*to* or *for great kingdoms*
Abl.	magnīs regnīs	*by, with,* or *from great kingdoms.*

B.)

Sing. only.

N. V. A.	**Magnum pĕlăgŭs**	*the great sea*
Gen.	magnī pĕlăgī	*of the great sea*
Dat.	magnō pĕlăgō	*to* or *for the great sea*
Abl.	magnō pĕlăgō	*by, with,* or *from the great sea.*

7.

MASCULINE ADJECTIVE OF SECOND DECLENSION DECLINED WITH
MASCULINE NOUN OF FIRST DECLENSION.

Sing.

Nom.	**Clārŭs** naută	*a famous sailor*
Voc.	clārĕ naută	*O famous sailor*
Acc.	clārum nautam	*a famous sailor*
Gen.	clārī nautae	*of a famous sailor*
Dat.	clārō nautae	*to* or *for a famous sailor*
Abl.	clārō naută	*by, with,* or *from a famous sailor.*

Plur.

N. V.	clārī nautae	*famous sailors,* or *O famous sailors*
Acc.	clārōs nautās	*famous sailors*
Gen.	clārōrum nautārum	*of famous sailors*
Dat.	clārīs nautīs	*to* or *for famous sailors*
Abl.	clārīs nautīs	*by, with,* or *from famous sailors.*

Rule 6.—Adjectives agree with their Nouns in gender, number, and case: as, bŏn-us vĭr, *a good man;* bŏn-ă fēmĭnă, *a good woman;* bŏn-ă exemplă, *good examples.*

Note.—The Adjective in Latin is often placed after the Noun: as, oppĭdum parvum, *a small town.*

Exercise VI.

A.—1. Servus est timidus. 2. Columba est timida. 3. Gaudium est magnum. 4. Servi sunt mali. 5. Insulae sunt magnae. 6. Oppida sunt parva. 7. Muri sunt alti. 8. Puellae sunt bonae. 9. Horti sunt lati. 10. Alae sunt albae.

1. The sword is long. 2. The island is long. 3. The shields are long. 4. The slaves are timid. 5. The doves are timid. 6. The towns are great. 7. The temples are small. 8. The shields are wide. 9. The kingdom is great. 10. The friends are good.

B.—1. Columba albas alas habet. 2. Multae columbae albas alas habent. 3. Graecia multa templa habet. 4. Splendida templa sunt gloria Graeciae. 5. Bellicosa regina multas terras habet. 6. Oppidum magnum multas portas habet. 7. Magister librum bono puero dat. 8. Avus praemium bonae puellae dat. 9. Pericula nautarum sunt magna. 10. Dominus acutos gladios habet.

1. The queen has many islands. 2. The queen gives swords to the inhabitants. 3. Gaul has many towns. 4. The temples are great and splendid. 5. The daughters of the women are good. 6. The son of the warlike queen has a sharp sword. 7. The high banks have many roses. 8. The Rhine is a great and broad river. 9. The roses of the high banks are white. 10. The Rhone is a rapid river.

C.—1. Puer est aeger. 2. Puella est aegra. 3. Aurum templi est sacrum. 4. Regina est pulchra. 5. Filiae sunt tenerae. 6. Filii sunt miseri. 7. Morbus molestus est tenero filio. 8. Exemplum servi noxium puero est. 9. Praemia diligentiae sunt grata discipulis. 10. Magnus est numerus puerorum.

1. The pupils of the master are sick. 2. The master gives a book to the sick boy. 3. The black slaves are troublesome to the lord. 4. Great is the number of black slaves. 5. The splendid gifts of the temple are sacred. 6. Great is the diligence of the beautiful girl. 7. The diligence of the girl is pleasing to the grandfather. 8. The example of the slaves is injurious to the pupils. 9. The disease is troublesome to the wretched girl. 10. The master gives rewards to the beautiful girl.

VII.—The Third or Consonant and I Declension.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the Third Declension ends in various letters. Their stems end in some consonant or i.

A. *Masculine and Feminine Nouns.*

I. Stems ending in a Consonant.

1. Nouns the stems of which end in the labial (lip) letters *p, b, m.*

	Sing.	1.	Plur.	
N.V.	Trab-s (f.)	a beam, or O beam	trăb-ēs	beams, or O beams
Acc.	trăb-em	a beam	trăb-ēs	beams
Gen.	trăb-ĭs	of a beam	trăb-um	of beams
Dat.	trăb-ī	to or for a beam	trăb-ĭbŭs	to or for beams
Abl.	trăb-ĕ	by, with, or from a beam.	trăb-ĭbŭs	by, with, or from beams.

		2.		
N.V.	Princep-s (c.)	a chief, or O	princĭp-ēs	chiefs, or O chiefs
Acc.	princĭp-em	a chief [chief	princĭp-ēs	chiefs
Gen.	princĭp-ĭs	of a chief	princĭp-um	of chiefs
Dat.	princĭp-ī	to or for a chief	princĭp-ĭbŭs	to or for chiefs
Abl.	princĭp-ĕ	by, with, or from a chief.	princĭp-ĭbŭs	by, with, or from chiefs.

		3.		
N.V.	Hĭĕm-s (f.)	winter, or O	hĭĕm-ēs	winters, or O winters
Acc.	hĭĕm-em	winter [winter	hĭĕm-ēs	winters
Gen.	hĭĕm-ĭs	of winter	hĭĕm-um	of winters
Dat.	hĭĕm-ī	to or for winter	hĭĕm-ĭbŭs	to or for winters
Abl.	hĭĕm-ĕ	in, by, with, or from winter.	hĭĕm-ĭbŭs	in, by, with, or from winters.

2. Nouns the stems of which end in the guttural (throat) letters *c, g.*

> Note.—In the Nominative and Vocative Singular *cs, gs* are contracted into *x.*

	Sing.	1.	Plur.	
N.V.	Dux (c.)	a leader, or O leader	dŭc-ēs	leaders, or O leaders
Acc.	dŭc-em	a leader	dŭc-ēs	leaders
Gen.	dŭc-ĭs	of a leader	dŭc-um	of leaders
Dat.	dŭc-ī	to or for a leader	dŭc-ĭbŭs	to or for leaders
Abl.	dŭc-ĕ	by, with, or from a leader.	dŭc-ĭbŭs	by, with, or from leaders.

	Sing.		2.	Plur.	
N.V.	**Lex** (*f.*)	*a law*, or *O law*		lēg-ēs	*laws*, or *O laws*
Acc.	lēg-em	*a law*		lēg-ēs	*laws*
Gen.	lēg-ĭs	*of a law*		lēg-um	*of laws*
Dat.	lēg-ī	*to* or *for a law*		lēg-ĭbŭs	*to* or *for laws*
Abl.	lēg-ĕ	*by, with*, or *from a law.*		lēg-ĭbŭs	*by, with*, or *from laws.*

3.

N.V.	**Jūdex** (*c*)	*a judge*, or *O judge*		jūdĭc-ēs	*judges*, or *O judges*
Acc.	jūdĭc-em	*a judge*		jūdĭc-ēs	*judges*
Gen.	jūdĭc-ĭs	*of a judge*		jūdĭc-um	*of judges*
Dat.	jūdĭc-ī	*to* or *for a judge*		jūdĭc-ĭbŭs	*to* or *for judges*
Abl.	jūdĭc-ĕ	*by, with*, or *from a judge.*		jūdĭc-ĭbŭs	*by, with*, or *from judges.*

ĕrăt   (*he, she it*) *was; there was.*   ĕrant   (*they*) *were; there were.*

Exercise VII.

1. Trabes sunt longae. 2. Romulus Romanorum rex erat. 3. Pax regi jucunda erat. 4. Judices erant justi. 5. Duces erant benigni. 6. Leges Romanorum severae erant. 7. Reges arces firmas habent. 8. Arx urbis est firma. 9. Hiems agricolis molesta erat. 10. Oppida regis firma erant.

1. The beams were long. 2. Rome is a city of Italy. 3. The leader of the Romans was warlike. 4. Peace was pleasant to the leaders. 5. The king gives the city to the leader. 6. The judges were kind and just. 7. The king gives a book to the severe judge. 8. The disease is troublesome to the king. 9. The example is injurious to the judges. 10. The sons of the judges are severe.

3. Nouns the stems of which end in the dental (teeth) letters *t, d.*

	Sing.		1.	Plur.	
N.V.	**Aetă-s** (*f.*)	*an age*, or *O age*		aetāt-ēs	*ages*, or *O ages*
Acc.	aetāt-em	*an age*		aetāt-ēs	*ages*
Gen.	aetāt-ĭs	*of an age*		aetāt-um	*of ages*
Dat.	aetāt-ī	*to* or *for an age*		aetāt-ĭbŭs	*to* or *for ages*
Abl.	aetāt-ĕ	*in, by, with*, or *from an age.*		aetāt-ĭbŭs	*in, by, with*, or *from ages.*

2.

N.V.	**Lăpĭs** (*m.*)	*a stone*, or *O stone*		lăpĭd-ēs	*stones*, or *O stones*
Acc.	lăpĭd-em	*a stone*		lăpĭd-ēs	*stones*
Gen.	lăpĭd-ĭs	*of a stone*		lăpĭd-um	*of stones*
Dat.	lăpĭd-ī	*to* or *for a stone*		lăpĭd-ĭbŭs	*to* or *for stones*
Abl.	lăpĭd-ĕ	*by, with*, or *from a stone.*		lăpĭd-ĭbŭs	*by, with*, or *from stones.*

3.

N.V. **Mīlĕ-s** (*c.*)	*a soldier*, or *O*	**mīlĭt-ēs**	*soldiers*, or *O soldiers*
Acc. **mīlĭt-em**	*a soldier* [*soldier*	**mīlĭt-ēs**	*soldiers*
Gen. **mīlĭt-ĭs**	*of a soldier*	**mīlĭt-um**	*of soldiers*
Dat. **mīlĭt-ī**	*to* or *for a soldier*	**mīlĭt-ĭbŭs**	*to* or *for soldiers*
Abl. **mīlĭt-ĕ**	*by, with,* or *from a soldier.*	**mīlĭt-ĭbŭs**	*by, with,* or *from soldiers.*

RULE 7.—The Ablative case indicates—(1) The instrument or means by which something is done : as, dŏmĭnŭs hastā servum occīdĭt, *the lord kills the slave with a spear.*

(2) The time when something is done or takes place : as, noctēs hĭĕmĕ longae sunt, *the nights are long in winter.*

> occīdĭt (*he, she, it*) *kills.*   occīdunt (*they*) *kill.*

EXERCISE VIII.

1. Miles gladio obsidem occidit. 2. Miles lapide comitem occidit. 3. Pedites custodes gladiis occidunt. 4. Tempestates auctumno magnae sunt. 5. Equites et pedites timidi erant. 6. Custodes auri erant timidi. 7. Mors est lex naturae. 8. Civitas Romanorum clara erat. 9. Voluntas judicis justa est. 10. Milites judices hastis occidunt.

1. Tempests in the winter are great. 2. A tempest in the summer is troublesome. 3. A long night in the winter is pleasant. 4. The inhabitants kill the soldiers with stones. 5. The hostages kill the foot-soldiers with spears. 6. The wish of the companion is just. 7. The horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers have swords. 8. The guardian of the silver was timid. 9. The boy has many stones. 10. The king has many soldiers and companions.

4. Nouns the stems of which end in the liquids *l*, *r*, and the sibilant *s*.

1.

Sing.		Plur.	
N.V. **Consŭl** (*m.*)	*a consul*, or *O*	**consŭl-ēs**	*consuls*, or *O consuls*
Acc. **consŭl-em**	*a consul* [*consul*	**consŭl-ēs**	*consuls*
Gen. **consŭl-ĭs**	*of a consul*	**consŭl-um**	*of consuls*
Dat. **consŭl-ī**	*to* or *for a consul*	**consŭl-ĭbŭs**	*to* or *for consuls*
Abl. **consŭl-ĕ**	*by, with,* or *from a consul.*	**consŭl-ĭbŭs**	*by, with,* or *from consuls.*

2.

N.V. **Clāmŏr** (*m.*)	*a shout*, or *O*	**clāmŏr-ēs**	*shouts*, or *O shouts*
Acc. **clāmŏr-em**	*a shout* [*shout*	**clāmŏr-ēs**	*shouts*
Gen. **clāmŏr-ĭs**	*of a shout*	**clāmŏr-um**	*of shouts*
Dat. **clāmŏr-ī**	*to* or *for a shout*	**clāmŏr-ĭbŭs**	*to* or *for shouts*
Abl. **clāmŏr-ĕ**	*by, with,* or *from a shout.*	**clāmŏr-ĭbŭs**	*by, with,* or *from shouts.*

3.

	Sing.		Plur.
N.V.	**Ansĕr** (*m.*) *a goose,* or *O goose*	**ansĕr-ēs** *geese,* or *O geese*
Acc.	**ansĕr-em** *a goose*	**ansĕr-ēs** *geese*
Gen.	**ansĕr-ĭs** *of a goose*	**ansĕr-um** *of geese*
Dat.	**ansĕr-ī** *to* or *for a goose*	**ansĕr-ĭbŭs** *to* or *for geese*
Abl.	**ansĕr-ĕ** *by, with,* or *from a goose.*	**ansĕr-ĭbŭs** *by, with,* or *from geese.*

4.

	Sing.		Plur.
N.V.	**Pătĕr** *a father,* or *O father*	**patr-ēs** *fathers,* or *O fathers*
Acc.	**patr-em** *a father*	**patr-ēs** *fathers*
Gen.	**patr-ĭs** *of a father*	**patr-um** *of fathers*
Dat.	**patr-ī** *to* or *for a father*	**patr-ĭbŭs** *to* or *for fathers*
Abl.	**patr-ĕ** *by, with,* or *from a father.*	**patr-ĭbŭs** *by, with,* or *from fathers.*

5.

	Sing.		Plur.
N.V.	**Flōs** (*m.*) *a flower,* or *O flower*	**flōr-ēs** *flowers,* or *O flowers*
Acc.	**flōr-em** *a flower*	**flōr-ēs** *flowers*
Gen.	**flōr-ĭs** *of a flower*	**flōr-um** *of flowers*
Dat.	**flōr-ī** *to* or *for a flower*	**flōr-ĭbŭs** *to* or *for flowers*
Abl.	**flōr-ĕ** *by, with,* or *from a flower.*	**flōr-ĭbŭs** *by, with,* or *from flowers.*

EXERCISE IX.

1. Puer patrem et matrem habet.   2. Puellae fratres et sorores habent.   3. Odores florum sunt varii.   4. Color floris est jucundus.   5. Labor aestate molestus est.   6. Calor solis molestus est.   7. Tota urbs est praeda victoris.   8. Aggeres et fossae sunt munimenta castrorum.   9. Clamor militum molestus est.

1. The father of the judge is just.   2. The mother of the soldier is sick.   3. The hostage has a brother and a sister.   4. The colours of the flowers are various.   5. The brother gives a flower to (his) sister.   6. The shout of the soldiers was great.   7. The heat of the sun is great.   8. The heat is troublesome in the summer.   9. The mounds of the camp are high.   10. The cities are the booty of the soldiers.

5. Nouns the stems of which end in ōn or ŏn (ĭn).

1.

	Sing.		Plur.
N.V.	**Lĕo** (*m.*) *a lion,* or *O lion*	**lĕōn-ēs** *lions,* or *O lions*
Acc.	**lĕōn-em** *a lion*	**lĕōn-ēs** *lions*
Gen.	**lĕōn-ĭs** *of a lion*	**lĕōn-um** *of lions*
Dat.	**lĕōn-ī** *to* or *for a lion*	**lĕōn-ĭbŭs** *to* or *for lions*
Abl.	**lĕōn-ĕ** *by, with,* or *from a lion.*	**lĕōn-ĭbŭs** *by, with,* or *from lions.*

2.

	Sing.		Plur.
N.V.	**Virgo** (*f.*) *a maiden,* or *O maiden*	**virgĭn-ēs** *maidens,* or *O maidens*
Acc.	**virgĭn-em** *a maiden*	**virgĭn-ēs** *maidens*
Gen.	**virgĭn-ĭs** *of a maiden*	**virgĭn-um** *of maidens*
Dat.	**virgĭn-ī** *to* or *for a maiden*	**virgĭn-ĭbŭs** *to* or *for maidens*
Abl.	**virgĭn-ĕ** *by, with,* or *from a maiden.*	**virgĭn-ĭbŭs** *by, with,* or *from maidens.*

Exercise X.

1. Leones sunt validi.   2. Virgo est timida.   3. Calor molestus est multis hominibus.   4. Consuetudo altera natura est.   5. Sermo oratoris est doctus.   6. Pavones agricolae sunt pulchri.   7. Mors hominibus certa est.   8. Multitudo morborum est infinita.   9. Juno erat dea Romanorum.   10. Vita hominibus grata est.

1. The lion is strong.   2. The maidens are timid.   3. The multitude of men is infinite.   4. The soldier kills the lion with a sword. 5. The father gives a peacock to the maiden.   6. The heat is troublesome.   7. The heat in autumn is injurious to men.   8. The discourses of the orators were learned.   9. Juno and Minerva were goddesses of the Romans.   10. The peacock was sacred to Juno.

II. Stems ending in I.

(See also p. 117 : Acc. Sing. in im and Abl. in i.)

	Sing.	1.	Plur.	
N. V.	Host-ĭs (c.)	*an enemy,* or *O*	host-ēs	*enemies,* or *O enemies*
Acc.	host-em	*an enemy* [*enemy*	host-ēs	*enemies*
Gen.	host-ĭs	*of an enemy*	host-ĭum	*of enemies*
Dat.	host-ī	*to* or *for an enemy*	host-ĭbŭs	*to* or *for enemies*
Abl.	host-ĕ	*by, with,* or *from*	host-ĭbŭs	*by, with,* or *from*
		an enemy.		*enemies.*

Some stems in *i* have the Nominative in *e* and are thus declined :—

2.

N. V.	Nŭb-ēs (*f.*)	*a cloud,* or *O*	nŭb-ēs	*clouds,* or *O clouds*
Acc.	nŭb-em	*a cloud* [*cloud*	nŭb-ēs	*clouds*
Gen.	nŭb-ĭs	*of a cloud*	nŭb-ĭum	*of clouds*
Dat.	nŭb-ī	*to* or *for a cloud*	nŭb-ĭbŭs	*to* or *for clouds*
Abl.	nŭb-ĕ	*by, with,* or *from*	nŭb-ĭbŭs	*by, with,* or *from clouds.*
		a cloud.		

Exercise XI.

1. Cives agros et hortos habent.   2. Rex civibus praemia dat. 3. Nubes atrae sunt causa tempestatum.   4. Rupes sunt durae. 5. Urbs turres altas habet.   6. Caedes hostium magna erat. 7. Classis Romana duces peritos habet.   8. Valles hostibus notae erant.   9. Graecia valles angustas habet.   10. Virgo pulchram vestem habet.

1. The citizens were timid.   2. The valleys are known to the citizens.   3. The mother gives a garment to the maiden.   4. The citizens kill the enemies with swords.   5. The rocks are known to the citizens.   6. The valleys of Greece are narrow.   7. The Roman fleet has a skilful leader.   8. The maidens have beautiful garments.   9. The slaughter of the soldiers was great.   10. The leaders of the enemies were skilful.

B. *Neuter Nouns.*

I. STEMS ENDING IN A Consonant.

Nouns the stems of which end in *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*.

1.

	Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.A.	**Nōmĕn**	*a name,* or *O*	**nōmĭn-ă**	*names,* or *O names*
Gen.	**nōmĭn-ĭs**	*of a name* [*name*	**nōmĭn-um**	*of names*
Dat.	**nōmĭn-ī**	*to* or *for a name*	**nōmĭn-ĭbŭs**	*to* or *for names*
Abl.	**nōmĭn-ĕ**	*by, with,* or *from a name.*	**nōmĭn-ĭbŭs**	*by, with,* or *from names.*

2.

N.V.A.	**Fulgŭr**	*lightning,* or *O lightning*	**fulgŭr-ă**	*lightnings,* or *O lightnings*
Gen.	**fulgŭr-ĭs**	*of lightning*	**fulgŭr-um**	*of lightnings*
Dat.	**fulgŭr-ī**	*to* or *for lightning*	**fulgŭr-ĭbŭs**	*to* or *for lightnings*
Abl.	**fulgŭr-ĕ**	*by, with,* or *from lightning.*	**fulgŭr-ĭbŭs**	*by, with,* or *from lightnings.*

3.

N.V.A.	**Crūs**	*a leg,* or *O leg*	**crūr-ă**	*legs,* or *O legs*
Gen.	**crūr-ĭs**	*of a leg*	**crūr-um**	*of legs*
Dat.	**crūr-ī**	*to* or *for a leg*	**crūr-ĭbŭs**	*to* or *for legs*
Abl.	**crūr-ĕ**	*by, with,* or *from a leg.*	**crūr-ĭbŭs**	*by, with,* or *from legs.*

4.

N.V.A.	**Ŏpŭs**	*a work,* or *O work*	**ŏpĕr-ă**	*works,* or *O works*
Gen.	**ŏpĕr-ĭs**	*of a work*	**ŏpĕr-um**	*of works*
Dat.	**ŏpĕr-ī**	*to* or *for a work*	**ŏpĕr-ĭbŭs**	*to* or *for works*
Abl.	**ŏpĕr-ĕ**	*by, with,* or *from a work.*	**ŏpĕr-ĭbŭs**	*by, with,* or *from works.*

5.

N.V.A.	**Corpŭs**	*a body,* or *O body*	**corpŏr-ă**	*bodies,* or *O bodies*
Gen.	**corpŏr-ĭs**	*of a body*	**corpŏr-um**	*of bodies*
Dat.	**corpŏr-ī**	*to* or *for a body*	**corpŏr-ĭbŭs**	*to* or *for bodies*
Abl.	**corpŏr-ĕ**	*by, with,* or *from a body.*	**corpŏr-ĭbŭs**	*by, with,* or *from bodies.*

6.

N.V.A.	**Căpŭt**	*a head,* or *O head*	**căpĭt-ă**	*heads,* or *O heads*
Gen.	**căpĭt-ĭs**	*of a head*	**căpĭt-um**	*of heads*
Dat.	**căpĭt-ī**	*to* or *for a head*	**căpĭt-ĭbŭs**	*to* or *for heads*
Abl.	**căpĭt-ĕ**	*by, with,* or *from a head.*	**căpĭt-ĭbŭs**	*by, with,* or *from heads.*

II. STEMS ENDING IN I.

The Nominative in *ĕ*, *ăl*, *ăr*.

1.

	Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.A.	**Măr-ĕ**	*the sea,* or *O sea*	**măr-ĭă**	*seas,* or *O seas*
Gen.	**măr-ĭs**	*of the sea*	**măr-ĭum**	*of seas*
Dat.	**măr-ī**	*to* or *for the sea*	**măr-ĭbŭs**	*to* or *for seas*
Abl.	**măr-ī**	*by, with,* or *from the sea.*	**măr-ĭbŭs**	*by, with,* or *from seas.*

	Sing	2.	Plur.	
N.V.A.	**Ănĭmăl** *an animal, or O animal*	**ănĭmāl-ĭă**	*animals, or O animals*	
Gen.	ănĭmāl-ĭs *of an animal*	**ănĭmāl-ĭum**	*of animals*	
Dat.	ănĭmāl-ī *to or for an animal*	**ănĭmāl-ĭbŭs**	*to or for animals*	
Abl.	ănĭmāl-ī *by, with, or from an animal.*	**ănĭmāl-ĭbŭs**	*by, with, or from animals.*	

3.

N.V.A.	**Calcăr** *a spur, or O spur*	**calcăr-ĭă**	*spurs, or O spurs*
Gen.	calcăr-ĭs *of a spur*	**calcăr-ĭum**	*of spurs*
Dat.	calcăr-ī *to or for a spur*	**calcăr-ĭbŭs**	*to or for spurs*
Abl.	calcăr-ī *by, with, or from a spur.*	**calcăr-ĭbŭs**	*by, with, or from spurs.*

Exercise XII.

A.—1. Nomen Carthaginis clarum erat. 2. Litora erant angusta. 3. Elephanti magna capita et parva crura habent. 4. Balaenae parva ora habent. 5. Fulgur est rapidum. 6. Opus est durum et molestum. 7. Ira causa multorum scelerum est. 8. Juno antiquis temporibus erat dea. 9. Sidera nautis grata sunt. 10. Frigus hieme est molestum.

1. The name of Cicero is renowned. 2. The works of Cicero are renowned. 3. Elephants have a strong body. 4. The legs of elephants are small. 5. The mouths of whales are small. 6. Elephants have great heads and small eyes. 7. The crimes are known to the judge. 8. The cold is troublesome to the maiden. 9. The time of the year is pleasant. 10. The shore is wide.

B.—1. Maria sunt domicilia piscium. 2. Calcaria sunt decus equitis. 3. Litora maris sunt magna. 4. Nautae retia habent. 5. Vectigalia sunt magna. 6. Gramen animalibus gratum erat. 7. Calcaria equitis sunt nova. 8. Maria sunt profunda. 9. Genera animalium sunt varia. 10. Equites aurea calcaria habent.

1. The sea is deep. 2. The shores of the seas are wide. 3. The deep sea is the abode of fishes. 4. The nets of the sailors are strong. 5. The king gives new nets to the sailors. 6. The spurs of the horse-soldier are golden. 7. The king gives a golden spur to the horse-soldier. 8. The animal is strong. 9. Many animals are strong. 10. The tax is troublesome.

NOUNS OF THIRD DECLENSION, AND ADJECTIVES OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS, DECLINED TOGETHER.

1. Magnus dux,—a great leader.

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. **Magnŭs dux**	**magnī dŭcēs**
Voc. magnĕ dux	magnī dŭcēs
Acc. magnum dŭcem	magnōs dŭcēs
Gen. magnī dŭcĭs	magnōrum dŭcum
Dat. magnō dŭcī	magnīs dŭcĭbŭs
Abl. magnō dŭcĕ	magnīs dŭcĭbŭs.

2. Bŏnă mātĕr,—*a good mother.*

	Sing.	Plur
N.V.	Bŏnă mātĕr	bŏnae mātrēs
Acc.	bŏnam mātrem	bŏnās mātrēs
Gen.	bŏnae mātrĭs	bŏnārum mātrum
Dat.	bŏnae mātrī	bŏnīs mātrĭbŭs
Abl.	bŏnă mātrĕ	bŏnīs mātrĭbŭs.

3. Răpĭdum flūmĕn,—*a rapid river.*

N.V.A.	Răpĭdum flūmĕn	răpĭdă flūmĭnă
Gen.	răpĭdī flūmĭnĭs	răpĭdōrum flūmĭnum
Dat.	răpĭdō flūmĭnī	răpĭdīs flūmĭnĭbŭs
Abl.	răpĭdō flūmĭnĕ	răpĭdīs flūmĭnĭbŭs.

VIII.—ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Adjectives of the Third Declension have some of them three terminations in the Nominative Singular, some two, and some one only.

I. Those of THREE TERMINATIONS end in ĕr, (ĕ)rĭs, (ĕ)rĕ: as, ācer, ācrĭs, ācrĕ, *sharp*; cĕlĕr, cĕlĕrĭs, cĕlĕrĕ, *swift*. (The ending Ĭs is also sometimes used for the Masculine.)

	Sing. M.	F.	N.	Plur. M. and F.	N.
N.V.	Ācĕr	ācrĭs	ācrĕ	ācrēs	ācrĭă
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācrĕ	ācrēs	ācrĭă
Gen.	ācrĭs	ācrĭs	ācrĭs	ācrĭum	ācrĭum
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācrĭbŭs	ācrĭbŭs
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācrĭbŭs	ācrĭbŭs

II. Those of TWO TERMINATIONS include—

1. Adjectives ending in Ĭs: as, tristĭs (*masc.* and *fem.*), tristĕ (*neut.*), *sad.*

2. Comparative Adjectives, ending in ĭŏr, ĭŭs: as, mĕlĭŏr (*masc.* and *fem.*), mĕlĭŭs (*neut.*), *better.*

	Sing. M. and F	N.	Plur. M. and F.	N.
N.V.	Trist-ĭs	trist-ĕ	trist-ēs	trist-ĭă
Acc.	trist-em	trist-ĕ	trist-ēs	trist-ĭă
Gen.	trist-ĭs	trist-ĭs	trist-ĭum	trist-ĭum
Dat.	trist-ī	trist-ī	trist-ĭbŭs	trist-ĭbŭs
Abl.	trist-ī	trist-ī	trist-ĭbŭs	trist-ĭbŭs

	Sing.	2.	Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
N.V.	Mĕlĭŏr	mĕlĭŭs		mĕlĭŏr-ēs	mĕlĭŏr-ă
Acc.	mĕlĭŏr-em	mĕlĭŭs		mĕlĭŏr-ēs	mĕlĭŏr-ă
Gen.	mĕlĭŏr-ĭs	mĕlĭŏr-ĭs		mĕlĭŏr-um	mĕlĭŏr-um
Dat.	mĕlĭŏr-ī	mĕlĭŏr-ī		mĕlĭŏr-ĭbŭs	mĕlĭŏr-ĭbŭs
Abl.	mĕlĭŏr-ĕ (ī)	mĕlĭŏr-ĕ (ī)		mĕlĭŏr-ĭbŭs	mĕlĭŏr-ĭbŭs

III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION are of various endings : as, fēlix (*masc.*, *fem.*, and *neut.*), *fortunate ;* prūdens (*masc.*, *fem.*, and *neut.*), *prudent.*

	Sing.	1.	Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
N.V.	Fēlix	fēlix		fēlīc-ēs	fēlīc-ĭă
Acc.	fēlīc-em	fēlix		fēlīc-ēs	fēlīc-ĭă
Gen.	fēlīc-ĭs	fēlīc-ĭs		fēlīc-ĭum	fēlīc-ĭum
Dat.	fēlīc-ī	fēlīc-ī		fēlīc-ĭbŭs	fēlīc-ĭbŭs
Abl.	fēlīc-ī (ĕ)	fēlīc-ī (ĕ)		fēlīc-ĭbŭs	fēlīc-ĭbŭs

2.

			2.		
N.V.	Prūdens	prūdens		prūdent-ēs	prūdent-ĭă
Acc.	prūdent-em	prūdens		prūdent-ēs	prūdent-ĭă
Gen.	prūdent-ĭs	prūdent-ĭs		prūdent-ĭum	prūdent-ĭum
Dat.	prūdent-ī	prūdent-ī		prūdent-ĭbŭs	prūdent-ĭbŭs
Abl.	prūdent-ī (ĕ)	prūdent-ī (ĕ)		prūdent-ĭbŭs	prūdent-ĭbŭs

ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION, DECLINED WITH NOUNS OF FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD DECLENSIONS.

1. Cĕlĕrĭs săgĭttă,—*a swift arrow.*

Sing.	Plur.
N.V. Cĕlĕrĭs săgĭttă	cĕlĕrēs săgĭttae
Acc. cĕlĕrem săgĭttam	cĕlĕrēs săgĭttas
Gen. cĕlĕrĭs săgĭttae	cĕlĕrĭum săgĭttārum
Dat. cĕlĕrī săgĭttae	cĕlĕrĭbŭs săgĭttīs
Abl. cĕlĕrī săgĭttă	cĕlĕrĭbŭs săgĭttīs

2. Tristĕ proelium,—*a sad battle.*

N.A.V. Tristĕ proelĭum	tristĭă proelĭă
Gen. tristĭs proelĭī	tristĭum proelĭōrum
Dat. tristī proelĭō	tristĭbŭs proelĭīs
Abl. tristī proelĭō	tristĭbŭs proelĭīs

3. Fēlix hŏmo,—*a happy man.*

N.V. Fēlix hŏmo	fēlīcēs hŏmĭnēs
Acc. fēlīcem hŏmĭnem	fēlīcēs hŏmĭnēs
Gen fēlīcĭs hŏmĭnĭs	fēlīcĭum hŏmĭnum
Dat. fēlīcī hŏmĭnī	fēlīcĭbŭs hŏmĭnĭbŭs
Abl. fēlīcī hŏmĭnĕ	fēlīcĭbŭs hŏmĭnĭbŭs

EXERCISE XIII.

A.—1. Ira furor brevis est.   2. Ira militum erat acris.   3. Via est facilis.   4. Omne initium est difficile.   5. Leges hominibus utiles sunt.   6. Vulnus militis est leve.   7. Carmen est dulce.

8. Naves hostium sunt celeres. 9. Tempus humanae vitae breve est. 10. Rex cives fideles habet.

1. The soldiers have sharp arrows. 2. The arrow is swift. 3. Labour is easy in the winter. 4. Labour is difficult in the summer. 5. Arms are useful to soldiers. 6. The soldiers have short swords. 7. The beginning of the song is difficult. 8. The songs are easy. 9. The wounds of the soldier are light. 10. The arrows are sharp and swift.

B.—1. Consilium ducis audax est. 2. Consilia ducis Romani audacia sunt. 3. Tempus praesens felix est. 4. Regnum Persarum erat potens. 5. Animalia rapacia sunt velocia. 6. Vetus vinum est bonum. 7. Rex ingentem numerum militum habet. 8. Leges Romanorum erant praestantes. 9. Praemia equitum ingentia erant. 10. Agricolae vinum vetus habent.

1. The plans of the leader were prudent. 2. Elephants are prudent animals. 3. The booty of the Romans was immense. 4. The beginning was fortunate. 5. The Romans have excellent laws. 6. The king gives immense rewards to the soldiers. 7. Lions are rapacious animals. 8. The father gives old wine to the boy. 9. The present times are fortunate. 10. The Romans are powerful.

IX.—THE FOURTH OR U DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Masculine and Feminine Nouns of the Fourth Declension ends in ŭs, and of Neuter Nouns in u. (For Feminines in ŭs, see p. 124.)

1.

Sing.		Plur.	
N.V. Grăd-ŭs (m.),	a step, or O step	grăd-ūs	steps, or O steps
Acc. grăd-um	a step	grăd-ūs	steps
Gen. grăd-ūs	of a step	grăd-ŭum	of steps
Dat. grăd-ŭī	to or for a step	grăd-ĭbŭs	to or for steps
Abl. grăd-ū	by, with, or from a step.	grăd-ĭbŭs	by, with, or from steps.

2.

N.V.A. Gĕn-ū (n.),	a knee or O knee	gĕn-ŭă	knees, or O knees
Gen. gĕn-ūs	of a knee	gĕn-ŭum	of knees
Dat. gĕn-ū	to or for a knee	gĕn-ĭbŭs	to or for knees
Abl. gĕn-ū	by, with, or from a knee.	gĕn-ĭbŭs	by, with, or from knees.

NOTE.—Some Nouns of the Fourth Declension make the Dative and Ablative plural in -ŭbŭs: as, ăcŭbŭs, arcŭbŭs, with a few others. (See p. 120.)

EXERCISE XIV.

A.—1. Quercus sunt altae. 2. Manus hominibus utiles sunt. 3. Visus et auditus sunt utiles hominibus. 4. Acus est acuta. 5. Portus est tutus. 6. Cursus militis erat celer. 7. Arcus Scytharum leves erant. 8. Arcus caelestis varios colores habet.

9. Fructus ficūs erat dulcis. 10. Caput est sedes omnium sensuum.

1. The oak is useful to man. 2. The city has beautiful harbours. 3. The Scythians have arrows and bows. 4. The needles are sharp. 5. The girl has a sharp needle. 6. The harbours of the city are safe. 7. The number of the harbours is great. 8. Hearing and seeing are useful (*pl.*) to animals. 9. The fruit of fig-trees is sweet. 10. The soldier kills the lion with (his) hand.

B.—1. Cornua tauri acuta sunt. 2. Magister cornu puero dat. 3. Genua hominibus utilia sunt. 4. Magistratus sunt legum ministri. 5. Exercitus arma magnifica habet. 6. Duces exercitūs audaces erant. 7. Rex equitatum peditatumque habet. 8. Voluptas sensibus grata est. 9. Oculi sunt instrumenta visūs. 10. Aures sunt instrumenta auditūs.

1. The knees of elephants are hard. 2. The horns of the stag are hard. 3. The king gives a beautiful horn to the soldier. 4. The magistrates are the guardians of the laws. 5. The leader of the cavalry is bold. 6. Greece has many harbours. 7. Every animal has senses. 8. Eyes and ears are the instruments of the senses. 9. Needles are useful to women. 10. The leaders of the infantry are powerful.

X.—The Fifth or E Declension.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the Fifth Declension ends in ēs.

Sing.		Plur.	
N.V. Dĭ-ēs ~ *day*, or *O day*		dĭ-ēs	*days*, or *O days*
Acc. dĭ-em ; *day*		dĭ-ēs	*days*
Gen. dĭ-ēī *of a day*		dĭ-Ērum	*of days*
Dat. dĭ-ēī *to* or *for a day* [*day.*		dĭ-ēbŭs	*to* or *for days* [*days.*
Abl. dĭ-ē *in, by, with,* or *from a*		dĭ-ēbŭs	*in, by, with,* or *from*

> NOTE.—In Nouns like rēs, where ēs is preceded by a Consonant, the e becomes short in Gen. and Dat. Singular: as, rĕī, spĕī.
>
> GENDER.—All Nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine except dĭēs, which is Common in the Singular, and always Masculine in the Plural, and mĕrĭdĭēs, *midday*, which is always Masculine.

RULE 8.—When the Ablative Case indicates the place *where*, it is used with the Preposition ĭn, *in :* as, hostēs ĭn plānĭtĭē ĕrant, *the enemies were in the plain.*

EXERCISE XV.

1. Dies sunt sereni. 2. Numerus dierum serenorum parvus est. 3. Deus est dominus omnium rerum. 4. Dux magnam victoriae spem habet. 5. Fides servorum rara erat. 6. Exercitus in magnā planitie erat. 7. In acie multi pedites erant. 8. Fortuna est

domina rerum humanarum. 9. Facies filii pulchra erat. 10. Magna est pueri segnities.

1. The number of days is infinite. 2. God is the creator of all things. 3. Many things are hurtful to man. 4. The mother gives many things to the girl. 5. In the line-of-battle were many horse-soldiers. 6. The cavalry was in the plain. 7. The reward was the beginning of hope. 8. The leaders have great hope of victory. 9. The fidelity of sons was rare. 10. The slothfulness of the girl is troublesome to the mother.

XI.—SOME IRREGULAR NOUNS.

The following words are thus declined :—

Dĕŭs, m., God. (2 Decl.)

	Sing.	Plur.
N.V.	Dĕŭs	dĕī, dĭī, or dī
Acc.	dĕum	dĕōs
Gen.	dĕī	dĕōrum, or deûm
Dat.	dĕō	dĕīs, dĭīs, or dīs
Abl.	dĕō	dĕīs, dĭīs, or dīs

Dŏmŭs, f., a house. (2 and 4 Decl.)

Sing.	Plur.
Dŏmŭs	dŏmūs
dŏmum	dŏmōs (rarely dŏmūs)
dŏmūs	dŏmŭum, or dŏmōrum
dŏmŭī (-ō)	dŏmĭbŭs
dŏmō	dŏmĭbŭs

The dat. dŏmō is rarely used. The form dŏmī, at home, is a Locative: see p. 114.

Bōs, c., an ox or cow. (3 Decl.)

	Sing.	Plur.
N.V.	Bōs	bŏvēs
Acc.	bŏvem	bŏvēs
Gen.	bŏvīs	bŏvum, or bŏum
Dat.	bŏvī	bōbŭs, or būbŭs
Abl.	bŏvĕ	bōbŭs, or būbŭs

Sĕnex, m., an old man. (3 Decl.)

	Sing.	Plur.
	Sĕnex	sĕnēs
	sĕnem	sĕnēs
	sĕnīs	sĕnum
	sĕnī	sĕnĭbŭs
	sĕnĕ	sĕnĭbŭs

Vīs, f., strength. (3 Decl.)

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Vīs	vīrēs
Acc.	vim	vīrēs
Gen.	wanting	vīrĭum
Dat.	wanting	vīrĭbŭs
Abl.	vī	vīrĭbŭs

Jūpĭtĕr (=Jŏv-pĭtĕr, i.e. -pătĕr), the god Jupiter (3 Decl.).

	Sing.	
N.V.	Jūpĭtĕr	
Acc.	Jŏvem	No plural.
Gen.	Jŏvīs	
Dat.	Jŏvī	
Abl	Jŏvĕ	

Jusjūrandum, n., an oath (properly two words, jūs, 3 Decl., and jūrandum, neut. participle, 2 Decl.).

	Sing.	
N.V.A.	Jusjūrandum	
Gen.	jūrisjūrandī	No plural.
Dat.	jūrĭjūrandō	
Abl.	jūrĕjūrandō	

Respublĭcă, f., a commonwealth, a republic (properly two words, res, 5 Decl., and publĭcă, fem. adj., 1 Decl.).

	Sing.	
N.V.	Respublĭcă	
Acc.	rempublĭcam	Rare in plural.
Gen.	rēīpublĭcae	
Dat.	rēīpublĭcae	
Abl.	rēpublĭcā	

EXERCISE XVI.

A.—1. Di sunt immortales. 2. Jupiter et Neptunus sunt dii Romanorum. 3. Quercus Jovi sacrae erant. 4. Domus urbis sunt pulchrae. 5. Divitiae magnae in domo patris sunt. 6. Divitiae ingentes in domibus incolarum sunt. 7. Canes domuum custodes sunt. 8. Homines in domibus sunt, bestiae in silvis. 9. Dis sacrum est monumentum. 10. Vis fluminis ingens est.

1. Men are mortal, the gods immortal. 2. The oak is sacred to Jupiter. 3. Thunderbolts are the arms of Jupiter. 4. Many trees are sacred to the gods. 5. The number of the gods is immense. 6. The number of the houses is immense. 7. (There) were immense riches in the houses of the citizens. 8. The monuments are sacred to the gods. 9. Jupiter has many temples in Italy. 10. Oxen have great strength (*pl.*).

B.—1. Senex est debilis et aeger. 2. Funera senum et juvenum sunt multa. 3. Nomen Ciceronis senibus notum est. 4. Boves magnas vires habent. 5. Magna est vis conscientiae. 6. Jurisjurandi vis est magna. 7. In republica Romana sunt multi servi. 8. Respublica Romanorum potens erat. 9. Cornua bovis dura sunt. 10. Boves et equi in agro sunt.

1. The strength (*pl.*) of oxen is immense. 2. The king gives many oxen to the soldiers. 3. The old-men are feeble and sick. 4. The old-man gives gold and silver to the young-man. 5. The house of the old-man is full of riches. 6. Gold and silver are in the houses of the citizens. 7. In the Roman commonwealth were many citizens. 8. The friends of the commonwealth were few. 9. Grass is pleasing to the oxen. 10. The fields are sacred to Jupiter.

XII.—SOME IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

The following words have in the Genitive Sing. iŭs and in the Dative ī :—

ūnŭs, ă, um,	*one, alone.*	altĕr, altĕră, altĕrum, *one of two ;*
sōlŭs, ă, um,	*alone.*	altĕr .... altĕr, *the one ....*
tōtŭs, ă, um,	*whole.*	*the other.*
ullŭs, ă, um,	*any.*	ălĭŭs, ălĭă, ălĭŭd, *one of any*
nullŭs, ă, um,	*no, none.*	*number ;* ălĭŭs .... ălĭŭs, *one*
ŭtĕr, utră, utrum,	*which of two.*	*.... another ;* in pl. ălĭī ....
neutĕr, neutră, neutrum,	*neither.*	ălĭī, *some .... others.*

For example—

	Sing.			Plur.	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Ūn-ŭs	ūn-ă	ūn-um	ūn-ī	ūn-ae	ūn-ă
Voc.	ūn-ĕ	ūn-ă	ūn-um	ūn-ī	ūn-ae	ūn-ă
Acc.	ūn-um	ūn-am	ūn-um	ūn-ōs	ūn-ās	ūn-ă
Gen.	ūn-īŭs (of all genders)			ūn-ōrum	ūn-ārum	ūn-ōrum
Dat.	ūn-ī (of all genders)			ūn-īs (of all genders)		
Abl.	ūn-ō	ūn-ā	ūn-ō	ūn-īs (of all genders)		

Of the above adjectives only ūnŭs and sōlŭs have a Vocative Case. Altĕr has Gen. Sing. altĕr-ĭŭs; ălĭŭs has Gen. Sing. ăl-īus, Dat. ăl-ī. The rest have mostly both -īŭs and -ĭus in Gen., but more frequently -īus. See Latin Index.

For the plural use of ūnus, see p. 125.

EXERCISE XVII.

1. Virtus sola dat laudem. 2. Cives dant uni homini laudem. 3. Alius * est doctus, alius indoctus. 4. Alii sunt docti, alii indocti. 5. Coronam alii, librum alii dat. 6. Alter est Graecus, alter Romanus. 7. Tota vita hominis memorabilis erat. 8. Alteri laudem, alteri culpam dat. 9. Totam laudem neutri dat. 10. Neutra civitas multos cives habet.

* One *man:* see p. 46, Note.

1. He gives the whole booty to the soldiers. 2. Cicero alone was pleasing to the citizens. 3. He was troublesome to neither (*sing.*). 4. To-which-of-the-two does-he-give (dat) the praise? 5. Neither (man) has any praise. 6. Virtue alone gives true honours. 7. One (man) has fields, another (has) horses. 8. Some (men) have horses, others (have) bulls. 9. Rome alone was head of (all) cities. 10. The one (man) was pleasing to the citizens, the other (was) troublesome.

XIII.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three Degrees of Comparison : Positive, Comparative, and Superlative : as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
altŭs, *high.*	altĭŏr, *higher.*	altissĭmŭs, { *highest, most high, or very high.*

The Comparative is formed by adding ĭŏr and the Superlative by adding issimŭs to the Positive, after taking away the termination of the Genitive Singular : as,

Nom.	Posit. Gen.		Comp.	Sup.
altŭs,	alt-ī,	*high,*	alt-ĭŏr,	alt-issĭmŭs,
hăbĭlĭs,	hăbĭl-ĭs,	*handy,*	hăbĭl-ĭŏr,	hăbĭl-issĭmŭs,
fēlix,	fēlic-ĭs,	*fortunate,*	fēlic-ĭŏr,	fēlic-issĭmŭs,
prūdens,	prūdent-ĭs,	*prudent,*	prūdent-ĭŏr,	prūdent-issĭmŭs.

The Comparative is declined as on p. 19 (mĕl-ĭŏr). The Superlative is declined like bŏnŭs, bŏnă, bŏnum.

EXCEPTIONS.—I. All Adjectives ending in **ĕr** form the Superlative in **rĭmŭs** : as,

Nom. Posit.	Gen.		Comp.	Sup.
pulchĕr,	pulchr-ī,	*beautiful,*	pulchr-ĭŏr,	pulcher-rĭmŭs.
lībĕr,	lībĕr-ī,	*free,*	lībĕr-ĭŏr,	līber-rĭmŭs.
ācĕr,	ācr-ĭs,	*sharp,*	ācr-ĭŏr,	ācer-rĭmŭs.
cĕlĕr,	cĕlĕr-ĭs,	*swift,*	cĕlĕr-ĭŏr,	cĕler-rĭmŭs.

Also **vĕtŭs** (*Gen.* vĕtĕr-ĭs), *old,* has Superlative vĕter-rĭmŭs.

II. The following six Adjectives ending in **ĭl-ĭs** form their Superlative in **ĭl-lĭmŭs** :

Posit.		Comp.	Sup.
făcĭlĭs,	*easy,*	făcĭl-ĭŏr,	făcil-lĭmŭs.
diffĭcĭlĭs,	*difficult,*	diffĭcĭl-ĭŏr,	diffĭcil-lĭmŭs.
sĭmĭlĭs,	*like,*	sĭmĭl-ĭŏr,	sĭmil-lĭmŭs.
dissĭmĭlĭs,	*unlike,*	dissĭmĭl-ĭŏr,	dissĭmil-lĭmŭs.
grăcĭlĭs,	*slender,*	grăcĭl-ĭŏr,	grăcil-lĭmŭs.
hŭmĭlĭs,	*low,*	hŭmĭl-ĭŏr,	hŭmil-lĭmŭs.

All other Adjectives in **ĭlĭs** are compared regularly ; as, frăgĭlĭs, *brittle,* frăgĭlĭŏr, frăgĭlissĭmŭs.

III. Adjectives ending in **dĭcŭs, fĭcŭs,** and **vŏlŭs,** form their Comparative in **entĭŏr,** and their Superlative in **entissĭmŭs** : as,

Posit.		Comp.	Sup.
mălĕdĭcŭs,	*slanderous,*	mălĕdīcentĭŏr,	mălĕdīcentissĭmŭs.
bĕnĕfĭcŭs,	*beneficent,*	bĕnĕfīcentĭŏr,	bĕnĕfīcentissĭmŭs.
bĕnĕvŏlŭs,	*benevolent,*	bĕnĕvŏlentĭŏr,	bĕnĕvŏlentissĭmŭs.

IV. Adjectives which have a vowel before the termination **us,** usually form the Comparative by prefixing the Adverb **măgĭs,** *more,* and the Superlative by prefixing the Adverb maxĭmē, *most,* to the Positive : as, noxĭŭs, *hurtful ;* măgĭs noxĭŭs, *more hurtful ;* maxĭmē noxĭŭs, *most hurtful.*

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Posit.		Comp.	Sup.
bŏnŭs,	*good,*	mĕlĭŏr,	optĭmŭs.
mălŭs,	*bad,*	pējŏr,	pessĭmŭs.
magnŭs,	*great,*	mājŏr,	maxĭmŭs.
parvŭs,	*small,*	mĭnŏr,	mĭnĭmŭs.
multŭs,	*much,*	plūs (*see foll. page*),	plūrĭmŭs.
nēquam	*worthless,*	nēquĭŏr,	nēquissĭmŭs.
(*not declined*),			
dīves,	*rich,*	dīvītĭŏr, dītĭŏr,	dīvītissĭmŭs, dītissĭmŭs.
sĕnex,	*old,*	sĕnĭŏr [nātū mājŏr],	[nātū maxĭmŭs].
jŭvĕnĭs,	*young,*	jūnĭŏr [nātū mĭnŏr],	[nātū mĭnĭmŭs].
sŭpĕrŭs,	*upper,*	sŭpĕrĭŏr,	suprēmŭs, summŭs.
infĕrŭs,	*lower,*	infĕrĭŏr,	infĭmŭs, īmŭs.
extĕrŭs,	*outside,*	extĕrĭŏr,	extrēmŭs, extĭmŭs.
intĕrŭs,	*inside,*	intĕrĭŏr,	intĭmŭs.

Posit.		Comp.	Sup.
postĕrŭs,	*hinder, latter,*	postĕrĭŏr,	postrēmŭs (*last*).
[prae, *prep.*	*before*]	prĭŏr (*former*),	prīmŭs (*first*).
[prŏpĕ, *adv.*	*near*]	prŏpĭŏr (*nearer*)	proxĭmŭs (*nearest, next*).
[ultrā, *prep.*	*beyond*]	ultĕrĭŏr (*further*),	ultĭmŭs (*furthest, last*).

The Comparative plūs is thus declined :—

	Singular. Neut. only.	Plural. Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom. & Acc. }	plūs	plūrēs	plūră
Gen.	plūrĭs	plūrĭum	plūrĭum
Dat.	plūrī	plūrĭbŭs	plūrĭbŭs
Abl.	plūrĕ	plūrĭbŭs	plūrĭbŭs

Exercise XVIII.

A.—1. Aestate dies longiores sunt quam noctes. 2. Tempore hiberno dies sunt breviores. 3. Lepores timidiores sunt quam canes. 4. Noctes brevissimae sunt aestate. 5. Roma clarissima urbs Italiae erat. 6. Ferrum utilissimum est metallorum. 7. Radices arborum longissimae sunt. 8. Nihil est amabilius quam virtus. 9. Lux est velocior quam sonitus. 10. Nihil in amicitia perniciosius est quam adulatio.

1. Men are stronger than women. 2. Iron is more useful than gold. 3. The hare is a very timid animal. 4. Nothing is more excellent than virtue. 5. The roots of oak-trees are very strong and very long. 6. The Rhone is a very rapid river. 7. The eyes of the eagle are very keen. 8. The days are calmer in summer than in winter. 9. In winter time the light is feebler than in summer. 10. Nothing is more destructive to friendship than flattery.

B.—1. In bello miserrimi sunt agricolae. 2. Filiae matri sunt simillimae. 3. Itinera antiquis temporibus difficillima erant. 4. Pulcherrima est imago regis. 5. Facillimi erant labores militum. 6. Pulcherrima animalia non semper sunt utilissima. 7. Veterrima vina non semper sunt dulcissima. 8. Vultures acerrimos oculos habent. 9. Pulcherrimi sunt colores florum. 10. In Helvetia sunt asperrimi montes.

1. The scent of flowers is very sweet. 2. The work is very difficult. 3. The journey was very long and very rough. 4. The eyes of the vulture are very keen. 5. Helvetia is a very rugged land. 6. The swiftest animals are not always the strongest. 7. The legs of the stag are very slender. 8. The son was very like (his) father (*dat.*). 9. War is the cause of many crimes. 10. In spring the sun is more powerful than in winter.

C.—1. Nihil est melius quam sapientia. 2. Sol major est quam terra. 3. Luna minor est quam terra. 4. Plurima et maxima

animalia sunt in mari. 5. Optimae erant leges Romanae. 6. Pessimae sunt consuetudines discipulorum. 7. Melior est certa pax quam sperata victoria. 8. Simulatio amoris est pejor quam odium. 9. Cato optimus erat suae aetatis orator. 10. Aquilae vis maxima est.

1. Hatred is better than flattery. 2. Very many men give the greatest praise to Cato. 3. The best orator is not always the best citizen. 4. The most wicked men slay the most excellent (men). 5. No state was ever more renowned than Rome. 6. The best men are not always the most powerful. 7. They give the honour to the most excellent citizens. 8. Very many and very large islands are in the sea. 9. Sicily is a smaller island than Britain. 10. The Greeks were more learned than the Romans.

XIV.—The Numerals.

Cardinal Numerals denote number simply or absolutely : as, ūnŭs, *one ;* dŭŏ, *two ;* trēs, *three.* See p. 28.

The declension of ūnŭs is given on p. 23.

Dŭŏ, *two,* trēs, *three,* and mīlĭă, *thousands,* are declined as follows :—

	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	N.
Nom.	Dŭ-ŏ	dŭ-ae	dŭ-ŏ	Trēs	trĭă	Mīlĭă
Acc.	dŭ-ōs or dŭ-ŏ	dŭ-ās	dŭ-ŏ	trēs *or* trīs	trĭă	mīlĭă
Gen.	dŭ-ōrum	dŭ-ārum	dŭ-ōrum	trĭum	trĭum	mīlĭum
Dat.	dŭ-ōbŭs	dŭ-ābŭs	dŭ-ōbŭs	trĭbŭs	trĭbŭs	mīlĭbŭs
Abl.	dŭ-ōbŭs	dŭ-ābŭs	dŭ-ōbŭs	trĭbŭs	trĭbŭs	mīlĭbŭs

Obs. Ambŏ, *both,* is declined like dŭŏ.

Millĕ, *a thousand,* is usually an indeclinable adjective like dĕcem, centum, &c. ; but mīlĭa (also millĭă), *thousands,* is a substantive plural : as, millĕ hŏmĭnēs, *a thousand men* (less frequently, millĕ hŏmĭnum) ; but dŭŏ mīlĭă hŏmĭnum, *two thousand men* (literally, *two thousands of men*).

The Cardinal Numerals from quattŭŏr, *four,* to centum, *a hundred,* are indeclinable.

Dŭcentī, ae, ă, *two hundred,* and the following hundreds, are declined regularly.

Ordinal Numerals denote numbers regarded as forming parts of a series : as, prīmŭs, *first ;* sĕcundŭs, or altĕr, *second.* They are declined regularly as adjectives.

Arabic Symbols.	Roman Symbols.	Cardinals.	Ordinals.
1	I	ūnus	prīmus.
2	II	dŭŏ	sĕcundus *or* altĕr.
3	III	trēs	tertĭus.
4	IV	quattŭŏr (quātŭŏr)	quartus.
5	V	quinquĕ	quintus.
6	VI	sex	sextus.
7	VII	septem	septĭmus.
8	VIII	octo	octāvus.
9	IX	nŏvem	nōnus.
10	X	dĕcem	dĕcĭmus.
11	XI	undĕcim	undĕcĭmus.
12	XII	duŏdĕcim	duŏdĕcĭmus.
13	XIII	trĕdĕcim	tertĭus dĕcĭmus.
14	XIV	quattuordĕcim	quartus dĕcĭmus.
15	XV	quindĕcim	quintus dĕcĭmus.
16	XVI	sēdĕcim	sextus dĕcĭmus.
17	XVII	septemdĕcim	septĭmus dĕcĭmus.
18	XVIII	duŏdēvīgintī	duŏdēvīcēsĭmus.
19	XIX	undēvīgintī	undēvīcēsĭmus.
20	XX	vīgintī	vīcēsĭmus.
21	XXI	ūnus et vīgintī *or* vīgintī ūnus	prīmus et vīcēsĭmus, *or* vīcēsĭmus prīmus.
22	XXII	dŭŏ et vīgintī *or* vīgintī dŭŏ	alter et vīcēsĭmus, *or* vīcēsĭmus alter.
23	XXIII	trēs et vīgintī *or* vīgintī trēs	tertĭus et vīcēsĭmus, *or* vīcēsĭmus tertĭus.
28	XXVIII	duŏdētrīgintā	duŏdētrīgēsĭmus.
29	XXIX	undētrīgintā	undētrīgēsĭmus.
30	XXX	trīgintā	trīgēsĭmus.
40	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsĭmus.
50	L	quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsĭmus.
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsĭmus.
70	LXX	septŭāgintā	septŭāgēsĭmus.
80	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsĭmus.
90	XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsĭmus.
100	C	centum	centēsĭmus.
200	CC	dŭcentī, ae, ă	ducentēsĭmus.
300	CCC	trĕcentī, ae, ă	trĕcentēsĭmus.
400	CCCC	quadringentī, ae, ă	quadringentēsĭmus.
500	D *or* IↃ	quingentī, ae, ă	quingentēsĭmus.
600	DC	sexcentī (sesc-), ae, ă	sexcentēsĭmus (sesc-).
700	DCC	septingentī, ae, ă	septingentēsĭmus.
800	DCCC	octingentī, ae, ă	octingentēsĭmus.
900	DCCCC	nongentī, ae, ă	nongentēsĭmus.
1,000	M *or* CIↃ	millĕ	millēsĭmus.
2,000	MM	dŭŏ mīlĭă (millĭă)	bis millēsĭmus.
00,000	CCCIↃↃↃ	centum (centēnă) mīlĭă	centiēs millēsĭmus.

EXERCISE XIX.

1. Homo habet unum ōs, duas aures, duos oculos. 2. Magister puerǫ tres libros dat. 3. Sunt (*there are*) sedecim mala, viginti pruna, undeviginti pira, duodeviginti cerasa. 4. In capite hominis sexaginta tria sunt ossa. 5. In exercitu Alexandri Magni duodecim milia Macedonum erant. 6. Xerxes habet classem mille ducentarum navium. 7. In legione Romana erant cohortes decem, manipuli triginta, centuriae sexaginta. 8. Septem erant reges Romani; primus erat Romulus, secundus Numa Pompilius, tertius Tullus Hostilius, quartus Ancus Martius, quintus Tarquinius Priscus, sextus Servius Tullius, septimus Tarquinius Superbus. 9. Augustus est octavus anni mensis. 10. Manipulus erat trigesima pars legionis Romanae.

1. The wise (men) of Greece were seven. 2. The first king of Rome was warlike. 3. They slay the tenth part of the men. 4. A Roman legion has ten cohorts, thirty maniples, sixty centuries. 5. They slay ten thousand men (*gen.*) in the war. 6. The second king of Rome was just and mild. 7. The seventh king of Rome was unjust and wicked. 8. In the first month of the year (there) are thirty-one days. 9. Rome has two consuls. 10. A Roman legion has five thousand foot-soldiers (*gen.*), three hundred horse-soldiers.

XV.—The Verb Sum, *I am.*

Sum, fŭī, essĕ,—*to be.* Stems: ĕs-, fu-.

VERB FINITE.
INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing.			Plur.	
sum	*I am*		Plur. sŭmŭs	*we are*
ĕs	*thou art*		estĭs	*ye are*
est	*he is.*		sunt	*they are.*

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing.			Plur.	
ĕram	*I was*		Plur. ĕrāmŭs	*we were*
ĕrās	*thou wast*		ĕrātĭs	*ye were*
ĕrăt	*he was.*		ĕrant	*they were.*

3. Future-Simple Tense.

Sing.			Plur.	
ĕro	*I shall be*		Plur. ĕrĭmŭs	*we shall be*
ĕrĭs	*thou wilt be*		ĕrĭtĭs	*ye will be*
ĕrĭt	*he will be.*		ĕrunt	*they will be.*

4. Perfect Tense.

Sing.			Plur.	
fŭī	*I have been, or I was*		Plur. fŭĭmŭs	*we have been, or we were*
fuistī	*thou hast been, or thou wast*		fuistĭs	*ye have been, or ye were*
fŭĭt	*he has been, or he was.*		fŭērunt or fŭērĕ }	*they have been, or they were.*

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. fŭĕram	*I had been*	*Plur.* fŭĕrāmŭs	*we had been*
fŭĕrās	*thou hadst been*	fŭĕrātĭs	*ye had been*
fŭĕrăt	*he had been.*	fŭĕrant	*they had been.*

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. fŭĕro	*I shall have been*	*Plur.* fŭĕrimŭs	*we shall have been*
fŭĕris	*thou wilt have been*	fŭĕritĭs	*ye will have been*
fŭĕrĭt	*he will have been.*	fŭĕrint	*they will have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. ĕs	*be thou.*	*Plur.* estĕ	*be ye.*

2. FUTURE TENSE.

Sing. estŏ	*thou shalt or must be*	*Plur.* estōtĕ	*ye shall or must be*
estŏ	*he shall or must be, or let him be.*	suntŏ	*they shall or must be, or let them be.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

(N.B.—Concerning the translation of the Subjunctive Mood, see p. 40, Note 3.)

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. sim	*I may be*	*Plur.* sīmŭs	*we may be, or let us be*
sīs	*thou mayst be*	sītĭs	*ye may be*
sĭt	*he may be, or let him be.*	sint	*they may be, or let them be.*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. essem or		*Plur.* essēmŭs or	
fŏrem }	*I might be*	fŏrēmŭs }	*we might be*
essēs or		essētĭs or	
fŏrēs }	*thou mightst be*	fŏrētĭs }	*ye might be*
essĕt or		essent or	
fŏrĕt }	*he might be.*	fŏrent }	*they might be.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. fŭĕrim	*I may have been*	*Plur.* fŭĕrimŭs	*we may have been*
fŭĕris	*thou mayst have been*	fŭĕritĭs	*ye may have been*
fŭĕrĭt	*he may have been.*	fŭĕrint	*they may have been.*

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. fuissem	*I should* }	*Plur.* fuissēmŭs	*we should* }
fuissēs	*thou wouldst* } have been.	fuissētĭs	*ye would* } have been.
fuissĕt	*he would*	fuissent	*they would*

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Imperfect	essĕ	to be.
Perfect and Pluperfect	fuissĕ	to have been.
Future . . .	fŭtūrŭs essĕ, or fŏrĕ	to be about to be.

PARTICIPLE.

Future . . .	fŭtūrŭs, -ă, -um,	about to be.

EXERCISE XX.

The Verb Sum.—Indicative Mood.

A.—1. Sum laetus. 2. Es tristis. 3. Non diligens fuisti, Tite. 4. Probi filii gaudium patris erunt. 5. Opera tua multis hominibus erunt utilia. 6. Dux vester ero: victores erimus. 7. Si contenti eritis, pauperes non eritis. 8. Multi erant pauperes, qui (*who*) divites fuerant. 9. Cives urbis liberae sumus. 10. Custodes miserae puellae fuistis.

1. We are joyful. 2. Ye are sad. 3. I am a Roman citizen. 4. The contented (*pl.*) are always joyful; the rich (*pl.*) are often sad. 5. If ye are good, ye are rich. 6. If thou wilt be diligent, thou wilt be learned. 7. The wicked man is not free. 8. They had been unlearned, now they are learned. 9. Ye will be rich and free. 10. The Roman state was renowned.

Imperative Mood.

B.—1. Judex custos severus juris esto. 2. Probi este, pueri, et felices eritis. 3. Discipuli sunto attenti. 4. Judices justi sunto. 5. Reipublicae salus civibus cara esto. 6. Amici fideles sunto. 7. Reges patres patriae sunto. 8. Attenti este, discipuli. 9. Contenti estote sorte vestrā. 10. Praeceptorum memores este.

1. Be diligent, scholars. 2. Let praise be the reward of diligence. 3. Be faithful, friends! 4. The judge must be just. 5. They are contented; they shall be rich. 6. (There) must be no cause of enmity; we are faithful friends. 7. Be just, be upright; thou wilt be (*fut. ind.*) successful. 8. Be brave, soldiers! 9. Let the citizens be free, let them be happy! 10. The city shall be the booty of the soldiers.

XVI.—COMPOUNDS OF SUM.

Absum, abfŭĭ, ăbessĕ,	*I am absent, away, distant.*
adsum, adfŭĭ, ădessĕ,	*I am present, side with, help.*
desum, dēfŭĭ, deessĕ (pron. dēssĕ),	*I am wanting.*

insum, infŭī, ĭnessĕ,	*I am in* or *among.*
intersum, interfŭī, intĕressĕ,	*I am among, present at.*
obsum, obfŭī, ŏbessĕ,	*I am in the way, am hurtful to, injure.*
praesum, praefŭī, praeessĕ,	*I am before, am at the head of.*
prōsum, prōfŭī, prōdessĕ,	*I am serviceable, do good to.*
subsum (no *perf.*), sŭbessĕ,	*I am under,* or *at hand.*
sŭpersum, sŭperfŭī, sŭpĕressĕ,	*I remain over, survive.*

All these compounds are conjugated like sum, but prōsum takes *d* before forms beginning with *e* : as,

<div align="center">

INDICATIVE.

Present.

</div>

Sing.	prō-sum	*Plur.*	prō-sŭmŭs
	prōd-ēs		prōd-estĭs
	prōd-est.		prō-sunt.

Imperfect.	*Future.*
prōd-ĕram, &c.	prōd-ĕro, &c.

<div align="center">

SUBJUNCTIVE—*Imperfect.*

prōd-essem, &c.

INFINITIVE—*Present.*

prōd-essĕ.

</div>

RULE 9.—The compounds of sum are followed by the Dative Case : as, prōdessĕ cīvĭtātī, *to do good to the State.*

<div align="center">

EXERCISE XXI.

</div>

1. Bonis hominibus non deerunt amici. 2. Cicero reipublicae profuit. 3. Legionibus Romanis duces praefuerunt fortes. 4. Alexander Magnus multis proeliis interfuit. 5. Equitum multitudo exercitui nostro proderit. 6. Miles fortis omnibus aderit periculis. 7. Variae cupiditates animo insunt. 8. Frigus multis plantis non prodest. 9. Militibus deerat animus. 10. Auxilium meum reipublicae non profuit.

1. To good men friends are not wanting. 2. He was not serviceable to the commonwealth. 3. A good citizen sides-with his native country in the time of danger. 4. Indolence is hurtful to all men. 5. Alexander the Great survived many battles. 6. The general was among his soldiers in the battle. 7. Light is serviceable to all animals. 8. The general is-at-the-head-of the army. 9. Anger has been hurtful to many. 10. The soul survives the body.

XVII.—The Pronouns.

I. Personal Pronouns.

1. *Pronoun of the First Person.*

Sing.		Plur.	
Nom. **Ĕgŏ**	*I*	**nōs**	*we*
Acc. **mē**	*me*	**nōs**	*us*
Gen. **mĕī**	*of me*	**nostrī** *or* **nostrum**	*of us*
Dat. **mĭhi**	*to or for me*	**nōbīs**	*to or for us.*
Abl. **mē**	*by, with,* or *from me.*	**nōbīs**	*by, with,* or *from us.*

2. *Pronoun of the Second Person.*

Sing.		Plur.	
N.V. **Tū**	*thou (you*	**vōs**	*ye, you*
Acc. **tē**	*thee*	**vōs**	*you*
Gen. **tŭī**	*of thee*	**vestrī** *or* **vestrum**	*of you*
Dat. **tĭbĭ**	*to or for thee*	**vōbīs**	*to or for*
Abl. **tē**	*by, with,* or *from thee.*	**vōbīs**	*by, with, or*

3. *Pronoun of the Third Person.*

For the Pronoun of the Third Person, the former part ĭd, and illĕ, illă, illŭd, are employed.

II. Reflexive Pronoun of the Third Person.

The Reflexive Pronoun refers to the Subject of the sentence, and cannot therefore have a Nominative case.

Sing. and Plur.	
Acc. **sē** *or* **sēsē**	*himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*
Gen. **suī**	*of himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*
Dat. **sĭbĭ**	*to or for himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*
Abl. **sē** *or* **sēsē**	*by or from himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*

The different cases of *ego* and *tu* are also used reflexively: as, mĕī, *of myself;* tĭbĭ, *to thyself (yourself),* etc.

III. Possessive Pronouns.

These are formed from the Personal and Reflexive Pronouns, and are declined like Adjectives in -ŭs and -ĕr (see p. 7), except that meus makes mī in Voc. Sing. Masc.

Mĕus	**mĕa**	**mĕum**	*my* or *mine.*
tŭus	**tŭa**	**tŭum**	*thy* or *thine (your, yours).*
noster	**nostra**	**nostrum**	*our, ours.*
vester	**vestra**	**vestrum**	*your, yours.*
sŭus	**sŭa**	**sŭum**	*his own, her own, its own, their own.*

Obs. Suus, like se, refers back to the Subject of the sentence: as, Tĭtus librum suum frātrī suo dat, *Titus gives his (own) book to his (own) brother.* When the English *his, her, its, their,* do not refer

to the Subject, they are often omitted in Latin, but may be expressed by the Genitive of *is* or *ille*: as, Tĭtum vīdī et sŏrōrem ējus, *I saw Titus and his sister* (lit. *the sister of him*).

Exercise XXII.

NOTE.—The Personal Pronouns ĕgŏ, tū, &c. must be expressed along with the Verb when there is an emphasis on them.

1. Ego sum laetus, tu es tristis.   2. Pater mihi librum dat utilem.   3. In me et in te et in nobis omnibus est animus immortalis. 4. Patria mihi carior est quam vita.   5. Omnia tua consilia nobis nota sunt.   6. Parentes vobis cari sunto.   7. Memores sumus tui. 8. Amicus memor est vestri.   9. Memoria vestri nŏbis grata est. 10. Mihi mea vita cara est.

1. Thy father is dear to thee; mĭne to me.   2. Wisdom is ᵇing to you, citizens !   3. In thee is all our hope of safety. hy native-land must be most-dear to thee.   5. Thine indolence ᵉ-way, Titus !   6. A true friend will be with thee in danger. ᵛy of our works survives us.   8. The general was ᵖs.   9. He was serviceable to his friends.   10. To ᵧful, to you it is sad.

ᴵᵛ. Demonstrative Pronouns.

..aec, hoc, *this* (*near me*) ; pl. *these* (*of ours*).

	Sing.			Plur.	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Hĭc	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Gen.	hūjus (of all genders)			hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huĭc (of all genders)			hīs (of all genders)		
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs (of all genders)		

2. Istĕ, istă, istŭd, *that* (*near you*), *that of yours* ; pl. *those*.

Nom.	Istĕ	istă	istŭd	istī	istae	istă
Acc.	istum	istam	istŭd	istōs	istās	istă
Gen.	istīus (of all genders)			istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	istī (of all genders)			istīs (of all genders)		
Abl.	istō	istā	istō	istīs (of all genders)		

3. Illĕ, illă, illŭd, *that, that yonder* ; pl. *those*.

Nom.	Illĕ	illă	illŭd	illī	illae	illă
Acc.	illum	illam	illŭd	illōs	illās	illă
Gen.	illīus (of all genders)			illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī (of all genders)			illīs (of all genders)		
Abl.	illō	illă	illō	illīs (of all genders)		

Exercise XXIII.

1. Haec carmina suavissima sunt.   2. Hi montes altissimi sunt. 3. Liberi agricolarum illorum diligentes fuerunt.   4. Dat tibi illud carmen pulcherrimum.   5. Hic puer industrius est, ille iners.   6. De-

mosthenes et Cicero clarissimi oratores fuerunt; *ille erat Graecus, *hic autem Romanus. 7. Iste amicus est vir optimus. 8. Ista auctoritas est maxima. 9. Memoria harum rerum nobis jucundissima est. 10. Nomen illius poëtae clarissimum est.

1. These mountains are very-high and very-rugged. 2. That indolence (of yours) is hurtful to you (*sing.*), Titus. 3. The immortal soul will survive this body (*dat.*). 4. That man has always been hurtful to the commonwealth. 5. The memory of that one day was to Cicero most delightful. 6. That song (of yours) is to me most pleasant. 7. This my son is careful and industrious. 8. This life (of ours) is short; but that-one (illa) is immortal. 9. Those hands (of yours) are always busy. 10. These citizens are serviceable to the commonwealth; those are hurtful.

* When **hic** and **ille** are contrasted, **hic** often means *the latter,* **ille** *the former.*

V. Determinate, Relative, and Interrogative Pronouns.

1. Ĭs, ĕă, ĭd, *he, she, it, that,* referring to the former part of a sentence.

| | Sing. | | | | Plur. | |
	M. F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Ĭs ĕă	ĭd		ĕī *or* ĭī	ĕae	ĕă
Acc.	ĕum ĕam	ĭd		ĕōs	ĕās	ĕă
Gen.	ĕjus (of all genders)			ĕōrum	ĕārum	ĕōrum
Dat.	ĕī (of all genders)			ĭīs *or* ĕīs (of all genders)		
Abl.	ĕō ĕă	ĕō		ĭīs *or* ĕīs (of all genders)		

2. Īdem, ĕădem, ĭdem, *the same.*

Nom.	Īdem	ĕădem	ĭdem	ĕīdem (ĭdem) ĕaedem	ĕădem
Acc.	ĕundem	ĕandem	ĭdem	ĕōsdem	ĕāsdem	ĕădem
Gen.	ĕjusdem (of all genders)			ĕōrundem	ĕārundem ĕōrundem	
Dat.	ĕīdem (of all genders)			ĕīsdem (īsdem) (of all genders)		
Abl.	ĕōdem	ĕădem	ĕōdem	ĕīsdem (īsdem) (of all genders)		

3. Ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsum, *self, himself, herself, itself.*

Nom.	Ipsĕ	ipsă	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsă
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsă
Gen.	ipsīus (of all genders)			ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī (of all genders)			ipsīs (of all genders)		
Abl.	ipsō	ipsă	ipsō	ipsīs (of all genders)		

4. Relative—Quī, quae, quŏd, *who* or *which.*

Nom.	Quī	quae	quŏd	quī	quae	quae
Acc.	quem	quam	quŏd	quōs	quās	quae
Gen.	cūjus (of all genders)			quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cuī (of all genders)			quĭbus *or* quīs (of all genders)		
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quĭbus *or* quīs (of all genders)		

5. Interrogative—Quĭs or quī, quae, quĭd or quŏd, *who ? which ? what ?*

Nom.	Quĭs *or* quī	quae	quĭd *or* quŏd	quī	quae	quae
Acc.	quem	quam	quĭd *or* quŏd	quōs	quās	quae
Gen.	cūjus (of all genders)			quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cuī (of all genders)			quĭbus *or* quīs (of all genders)		
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quĭbus *or* quīs (of all genders)		

The forms quĭs and quĭd are used by themselves, without a Noun : as, quĭs es? *who art thou?* quĭd est? *what is it?* The forms quī and quŏd are used interrogatively with a Noun : as, quī hŏmo ĕs? *what man art thou?* quŏd mărĕ, *what sea ?*

RULE 10.—The Relative Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but not in Case : as, fēlix est rex (*Nom.*) quem (*Acc.*) omnēs cīvēs laudant, *fortunate is the king whom all citizens praise.*

laudăt (*he, she, it*) *praises.*   laudant (*they*) *praise.*

EXERCISE XXIV.

A.—1. Felix est puer quem magister laudat. 2. Fēlix est ea civitas cujus leges bonae sunt. 3. Felix est is discipulus cui magister praemium dat. 4. Ei (ii) sunt boni cives qui civitati prosunt. 5. Labor ipse jucundus est. 6. Fons voluptatis in nobis est. 7. Melior pars nostri animus est. 8. Cimbrorum mulieres ipsae erant fortes. 9. Idem dies initium erit alterius vitae. 10. Eaedem res non omnibus hominibus prosunt.

1. Fortunate are the boys whom the master praises. 2. Fortunate are those countries whose (*gen. pl. fem.*) laws are good. 3. Fortunate are those pupils to whom the masters give rewards. 4. His (*ejus*) brother himself is an elegant writer. 5. (He) who praises bad men, injures all. 6. (He) who injures a friend, injures himself (*sibi*). 7. A just judge praises good men, not bad (men). 8. The same things are not pleasing to all. 9. All the masters praise the same pupils. 10. Sallust and Livy are very-elegant writers.

B.—1. Quis habet exercitum? Quis est dux? 2. Cujus est equus? Cujus sunt arma? 3. Quae civitas habet optimas leges? 4. Quod animal est maximum et validissimum? 5. Quorum animalium sunt vires maximae? 6. Qui color pulcherrimus est? 7. Qui orator optimus et dulcissimus est? 8. Quorum arma sunt optima? 9. Cui dat (*does he give*) coronam? 10. Quod tempus felicius est quam praesens?

1. Which constellation is the most beautiful? 2. Which poet

is the sweetest? 3. Who is he? what has he? 4. Who gives the book to thee? 5. To whom does he give the greatest praise? 6. Whose (*gen. sing.*) is the victory? Whose (*gen. pl.*) is the booty? 7. Which tax is the greatest? 8. Which king has the greatest taxes? 9. What animal is more sagacious (prudens) than the elephant? 10. What animal is more rapacious than the lion?

XVIII.—THE VERB.

Latin Verbs have two Voices :

<div style="text-align:center">

I. ACTIVE.   II. PASSIVE.

</div>

Verbs have two Parts :

<div style="text-align:center">

I. FINITE.   II. INFINITE.

</div>

I. The VERB FINITE has Three Moods :

  (1.) The INDICATIVE MOOD.
  (2.) The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
  (3.) The IMPERATIVE MOOD.

II. The VERB INFINITE consists of Verbal Nouns and Adjectives :

  (1.) The INFINITIVE MOOD, the tenses of which are Verbal Nouns.
  (2.) PARTICIPLES, which are Verbal Adjectives.
  (3.) SUPINES, } which are Verbal Nouns.
  (4.) GERUNDS, }

Verbs have SIX TENSES :

  I. Three expressing unfinished action :

<div style="text-align:center">

Present.
Imperfect.
Future-Simple.

</div>

  II. Three expressing finished action :

<div style="text-align:center">

Perfect.
Pluperfect.
Future-Perfect.

</div>

Obs. The Perfect has the meaning of both a Present-Perfect and of an Indefinite-Past : thus, ămāvī signifies, *I have loved*, and *I loved*.

Verbs have two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural, and three PERSONS in each number.

Latin Verbs are arranged in four Classes, called CONJU-GATIONS, distinguished by the final letter of the Stem, which is seen in the Present Infinitive Active. The Stem of

Present Infinitive.

I. The First Conjugation ends in **A** : . . as, ămā-rĕ, *to love.*
II. The Second „ „ **E** : . . as, mŏnē-rĕ, *to advise.*
III. The Third „ „ { **a Consonant** or **U** : } as, { rĕg-ĕrĕ, *to rule.* nŭ-ĕrĕ, *to nod.* flŭ-ĕrĕ, *to flow.* }
III. The Fourth „ „ **I** : . . as, audī-rĕ, *to hear.*

The Present Indicative, the Perfect Indicative, the Present Infinitive, and the Supine are called the *Principal Parts* of the Verb ; because it is necessary to know these in order to conjugate a Verb. The formation of the other Tenses from them is explained on p. 134.

XIX.—FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Ămo, ămāvī, ămātum, ămārĕ,—*to love.* Stem : ăma-.
(ămo is contracted from ăma-o.)

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. **Ămo**	*I love* or *am loving*	*Plur.* **ăm-ămŭs**	*we love* or *are loving*
ăm-ās	*thou lovest* or *art loving*	**ăm-ătĭs**	*ye love* or *are loving*
ăm-ăt	*he loves* or *is loving.*	**ăm-ant**	*they love* or *are loving.*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. **ăm-ābam**	*I was loving*	*Plur.* **ăm-ābāmŭs**	*we were loving*
ăm-ābās	*thou wast loving*	**ăm-ābātĭs**	*ye were loving*
ăm-ābăt	*he was loving*	**ăm-ābant**	*they were loving.*

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Sing. **ăm-ābo**	*I shall love*	*Plur.* **ăm-ābĭmŭs**	*we shall love*
ăm-ābĭs	*thou wilt love*	**ăm-ābĭtĭs**	*ye will love*
ăm-ābĭt	*he will love.*	**ăm-ābunt**	*they will love.*

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. **ăm-āvī**	*I have loved* or *I loved*	*Plur.* **ăm-āvĭmŭs**	*we have loved* or *we loved*
ăm-āvistī	*thou hast loved* or *thou lovedst*	**ăm-āvistĭs**	*ye have loved* or *ye loved*
ăm-āvĭt	*he has loved* or *he loved.*	**ăm-āvērunt,** or **ăm-āvērĕ**	*they have loved* or *they loved.*

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. ăm-ăvĕram	*I had loved*	*Plur.* ăm-ăvĕrāmŭs	*we had loved*
ăm-ăvĕrās	*thou hadst loved*	ăm-ăvĕrātĭs	*ye had loved*
ăm-ăvĕrăt	*he had loved.*	ăm-ăvĕrant	*they had loved.*

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. ăm-ăvĕro	*I shall* ⎫ *have*	*Plur.* ăm-ăvĕrimŭs	*we shall* ⎫ *have*
ăm-ăvĕris	*thou wilt* ⎬ *loved.*	ăm-ăvĕritĭs	*ye will* ⎬ *loved.*
ăm-ăvĕrĭt	*he will* ⎭	ăm-ăvĕrint	*they will* ⎭

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| *Sing.* ăm-ā | *love thou.* | *Plur.* ăm-ātĕ | *love ye.* |

FUTURE TENSE.

| *Sing.* ăm-āto | *thou shalt or must love* | *Plur.* ăm-ātōtĕ | *ye shall or must love* |
| ăm-āto | *he must love or let him love.* | ăm-anto | *they must love or let them love.* |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. ăm-em	*I may love*	*Plur.* ăm-ēmŭs	*we may love or let us love*
ăm-ēs	*thou mayst love*	ăm-ētĭs	*ye may love*
ăm-ĕt	*he may love or let him love.*	ăm-ent	*they may love or let them love.*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. ăm-ārem	*I might love*	*Plur.* ăm-ārēmŭs	*we might love*
ăm-ārēs	*thou mightst love*	ăm-ārētĭs	*ye might love*
ăm-ārĕt	*he might love.*	ăm-ārent	*they might love.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. ăm-āvĕrim	*I may* ⎫ *have*	*P.* ăm-āvĕrimŭs	*we may* ⎫ *have*
ăm-āvĕris	*thou mayst* ⎬ *loved.*	ăm-āvĕritĭs	*ye may* ⎬ *loved.*
ăm-āvĕrĭt	*he may* ⎭	ăm-āvĕrint	*they may* ⎭

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. ăm-āvissem	*I should* ⎫ *have loved.*	*P.* ăm-āvissēmŭs	*we should* ⎫ *have loved.*
ăm-āvissēs	*thou wouldst* ⎬	ăm-āvissētĭs	*ye would* ⎬
ăm-āvissĕt	*he would* ⎭	ăm-āvissent	*they would* ⎭

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. and IMP. ⎱	ăm-ārĕ	*to love.*
PERF. and PLUP. ⎰	ăm-āvissĕ	{ *to have loved.*
FUTURE.	{ ăm-ātūrŭs essĕ	{ *to be about to love.*

GERUNDS.

Acc.	ăm-andum	*loving*
Gen.	ăm-andī	*of loving*
Dat.	ăm-andō	*for loving*
Abl.	ăm-andō	*by loving.*

SUPINES.

| ăm-ātum | *to love* |
| ăm-ātū | *in loving,* or *to be loved.* |

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. ăm-ans, -antis, *loving*
FUTURE. ăm-ātūrŭs (ă, um), *about to love.*

Notes.

1. The Imperfect Indicative may often be rendered by '*used to* . .': as, saepĕ ambŭlābăt ĭn hortō, *he often used to walk in the garden.*

2. The two meanings of the Perfect Indicative should be most carefully distinguished. When it is to be rendered by *have*, it is a Present-complete Tense, or Present-perfect: as, jam aedĭfĭcāvī dŏmum, *I have now built a house:* otherwise it is a Past-indefinite, as ōlim dŏmum aedĭfĭcāvī, *once upon a time I built a house.*

3. The force of the Subjunctive may sometimes be best expressed by *may, might,* and at other times by *should* or *would.* In some cases it must be translated in English by the Indicative. See Rule 13, page 48; also Ex. xxx, B, English, Nos. 2, 3.

4. The Future Participle may be used with any tense of sum: as, aedĭfĭcātūrŭs sum, *I am about to build.* See also Ex. xxv, E, 3.

XX.—Second or E Conjugation.—Active Voice.

Mŏnĕo, mŏnŭī, mŏnĭtum, mŏnērĕ,—*to advise.* Stem: mŏne-.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S. Mŏn-eo	*I advise* or *am advising*	*P.* mŏn-ēmŭs	*we advise* or *are advising*
mŏn-ēs	*thou advisest* or *art advising*	mŏn-ētĭs	*ye advise* or *are advising*
mŏn-ĕt	*he advises* or *is advising.*	mŏn-ent	*they advise* or *are advising.*

2. Imperfect Tense.

S. mŏn-ēbam	*I was advising*	*P.* mŏn-ēbāmŭs	*we were advising*
mŏn-ēbās	*thou wast advising*	mŏn-ēbātĭs	*ye were advising*
mŏn-ēbăt	*he was advising.*	mŏn-ēbant	*they were advising.*

3. Future-Simple Tense.

S. mŏn-ēbo	*I shall advise*	*P.* mŏn-ēbĭmŭs	*we shall advise*
mŏn-ēbĭs	*thou wilt advise*	mŏn-ēbĭtĭs	*ye will advise*
mŏn-ēbĭt	*he will advise.*	mŏn-ēbunt	*they will advise.*

4. Perfect Tense.

S. mŏn-uī	*I have advised* or *I advised*	*P.* mŏn-ŭĭmŭs	*we have advised* or *we advised*
mŏn-uistī	*thou hast advised* or *advisedst*	mŏn-uistĭs	*ye have advised* or *ye advised*
mŏn-uĭt	*he has advised* or *he advised.*	mŏn-ŭērunt, or -ŭērĕ	*they have advised* or *they advised.*

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. mŏn-uĕram	*I had advised*	*P.* mŏn-uĕrāmŭs	*we had advised*
mŏn-uĕrās	*thou hadst advised*	mŏn-uĕrātĭs	*ye had advised*
mŏn-uĕrăt	*he had advised.*	mŏn-uĕrant	*they had advised.*

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. mŏn-uĕro	*I shall*	*P.* mŏn-uĕrimŭs	*we shall*
mŏn-uĕris	*thou wilt* ⎱ *have*	mŏn-uĕritĭs	*ye will* ⎱ *have*
mŏn-uĕrĭt	*he will* ⎰ *advised.*	mŏn-uĕrint	*they will* ⎰ *advised.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. mŏn-ē	*advise thou.*	*P.* mŏn-ētĕ	*advise ye.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S. mŏn-ēto	*thou shalt* or *must advise*	*P.* mŏn-ētōtĕ	*ye shall* or *must advise*
mŏn-ēto	*he must advise* or *let him advise.*	mŏn-ento	*they must advise* or *let them advise.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. mŏn-eam	*I may advise*	*P.* mŏn-eāmŭs	*we may advise* or *let us advise*
mŏn-eās	*thou mayst advise*	mŏn-eātĭs	*ye may advise*
mŏn-eăt	*he may advise* or *let him advise.*	mŏn-eant	*they may advise* or *let them advise.*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. mŏn-ērem	*I might advise*	*P.* mŏn-ērēmŭs	*we might advise*
mŏn-ērēs	*thou mightst advise*	mŏn-ērētĭs	*ye might advise*
mŏn-ērĕt	*he might advise.*	mŏn-ērent	*they might advise.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. mŏn-uĕrim	*I may*	*P.* mŏn-uĕrimŭs	*we may*
mŏn-uĕris	*thou mayst* ⎱ *have*	mŏn-uĕritĭs	*ye may* ⎱ *have*
mŏn-uĕrĭt	*he may* ⎰ *advised.*	mŏn-uĕrint	*they may* ⎰ *advised.*

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. mŏn-uissem	*I should*	*P.* mŏn-uissēmŭs	*we should*
mŏn-uissēs	*thou wouldst* ⎱ *have*	mŏn-uissētĭs	*ye would* ⎱ *have.*
mŏn-uissĕt	*he would* ⎰ *advised.*	mŏn-uissent	*they would* ⎰ *advised.*

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVE.		GERUNDS.	
PRES. and IMP. ⎱ mŏn-ērĕ	*to advise.*	*Acc.* mŏn-endum	*advising*
PERF. and PLUP. ⎱ mŏn-uissĕ	*to have advised.*	*Gen.* mŏn-endī	*of advising*
		Dat. mŏn-endō	*for advising*
FUTURE. ⎰ mŏn-ĭtūrŭs ⎰ essĕ	*to be about to advise.*	*Abl.* mŏn-endō	*by advising.*

SUPINES.		PARTICIPLES.
mŏn-ĭtum	*to advise*	PRESENT. **mŏn-ens, -entis,** *advising*
mŏn-ĭtŭ	*in advising,* or *to be advised.*	FUTURE. **mŏn-ĭtūrŭs** (a, um), *about to advise.*

N.B.—The Notes given on p. 40 apply equally to all the Conjugations.

XXI.—THIRD OR Consonant AND U CONJUGATION.— ACTIVE VOICE.

Rĕgo, rexī, rectum, rĕgĕrĕ,—*to rule.*   Stem: **rĕg-.**

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. **Rĕg-o**	*I rule* or *am* ⎱	P. **rĕg-ĭmŭs**	*we rule* or *are* ⎱	
rĕg-ĭs	*thou rulest* or *art* ⎰ ruling	**rĕg-ĭtĭs**	*ye rule* or *are* ⎰ ruling	
rĕg-ĭt	*he rules* or *is*	**rĕg-unt**	*they rule* or *are*	

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. **rĕg-ēbam**	*I was ruling*	P. **rĕg-ēbāmŭs**	*we were ruling*
rĕg-ēbās	*thou wast ruling*	**rĕg-ēbātĭs**	*ye werĕ ruling*
rĕg-ēbăt	*he was ruling.*	**rĕg-ēbant**	*they were ruling*

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

S. **rĕg-am**	*I shall rule*	P. **rĕg-ēmŭs**	*we shall rule*
rĕg-ēs	*thou wilt rule*	**rĕg-ētĭs**	*ye will rule*
rĕg-ĕt	*he will rule.*	**rĕg-ent**	*they will rule.*

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. **rex-ī**	*I have ruled* or *I ruled*	P. **rex-ĭmŭs**	*we have ruled* or *we ruled*
rex-istī	*thou hast ruled* or *thou ruledst*	**rex-istĭs**	*ye have ruled* or *ye ruled*
rex-ĭt	*he has ruled* or *he ruled.*	**rex-ērunt** or **rex-ērĕ**	*they have ruled* or *they ruled.*

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. **rex-ĕram**	*I had ruled*	P. **rex-ĕrāmŭs**	*we had ruled*
rex-ĕrās	*thou hadst ruled*	**rex-ĕrātĭs**	*ye had ruled*
rex-ĕrăt	*he had ruled.*	**rex-ĕrant**	*they had ruled.*

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. **rex-ĕro**	*I shall have ruled*	P. **rex-ĕrimŭs**	*we shall have ruled*
rex-ĕris	*thou wilt have ruled*	**rex-ĕritĭs**	*ye will have ruled*
rex-ĕrĭt	*he will have ruled.*	**rex-ĕrint**	*they will have ruled.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. rĕg-ĕ   *rule thou.* | *P.* rĕg-ĭtĕ   *rule ye.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S. rĕg-ĭto   *thou shalt* or *must rule* | *P.* rĕg-ĭtōtĕ   *ye shall* or *must rule*
rĕg-ĭto   *he must rule* or *let* | rĕg-unto   *they must rule* or
him rule. | *let them rule.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. rĕg-am   *I may rule* | *P.* rĕg-āmŭs   *we may rule* or *let*
| *us rule*
rĕg-ās   *thou mayst rule* | rĕg-ātĭs   *ye may rule*
rĕg-ăt   *he may rule* or *let* | rĕg-ant   *they may rule* or *let*
him rule. | *them rule.*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. rĕg-ĕrem   *I might rule* | *P.* rĕg-ĕrēmŭs *we might rule*
rĕg-ĕrēs   *thou mightst rule* | rĕg-ĕrētĭs *ye might rule*
rĕg-ĕrĕt   *he might rule.* | rĕg-ĕrent *they might rule.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. rex-ĕrim   *I may* ⎱ *have* | *P.* rex-ĕrimŭs *we may* ⎱ *have*
rex-ĕris   *thou mayst* ⎰ *ruled.* | rex-ĕritĭs *ye may* ⎰ *ruled.*
rex-ĕrĭt   *he may* | rex-ĕrint *they may*

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. rex-issem   *I should* ⎱ *have* | *P.* rex-issēmŭs *we should* ⎱ *have*
rex-issēs   *thou wouldst* ⎰ *ruled.* | rex-issētĭs *ye would* ⎰ *ruled.*
rex-issĕt   *he would* | rex-issent *they would*

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. and ⎱ rĕg-ĕrĕ   *to rule.*
IMP. ⎰
PERF. and ⎱ rex-issĕ ⎰ *to have*
PLUP. ⎰ ⎰ *ruled.*
FUTURE. ⎱ rec-tūrŭs ⎰ *to be about*
⎰ essĕ ⎰ *to rule.*

GERUNDS.

Acc. rĕg-endum   *ruling*
Gen. rĕg-endī   *of ruling*
Dat. rĕg-endō   *for ruling*
Abl. rĕg-endō   *by ruling.*

SUPINES.

rec-tum   *to rule*
rec-tū   *in ruling,* or *to be*
ruled.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. rĕg-ens, -entis, *ruling*
FUTURE. rec-tūrŭs (ă, um), *about*
to rule.

NOTE.—The formation of the Perfect in this Conjugation varies
much more than in the others: see pp. 138–143. But whatever the
form of the Perfect may be, the other Perfect Tenses are formed
from it: as, rumpo, *I burst*; Perf. rūpī; Pluperf. rūperam; Fut.-Perf.
rūpĕro, &c. See p. 134, C.

XXII.—Fourth or I Conjugation.—Active Voice.

Audĭo, audīvī, audītum, audīrĕ,—*to hear.* Stem: **audi-.**

VERB FINITE.
INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S.	**Aud-io**	*I hear or am*	P.	**aud-īmŭs**	*we hear or are*
	aud-īs	*thou hearest or art*		**aud-ītĭs**	*ye hear or are*
	aud-ĭt	*he hears or is*		**aud-iunt**	*they hear or are*

(hearing. / hearing.)

2. Imperfect Tense.

S.	**aud-iēbam**	*I was hearing*	P.	**aud-iēbāmŭs**	*we were hearing*
	aud-iēbās	*thou wast hearing*		**aud-iēbātĭs**	*ye were hearing*
	aud-iēbăt	*he was hearing.*		**aud-iēbant**	*they were hearing.*

3. Future-Simple Tense.

S.	**aud-iam**	*I shall hear*	P.	**aud-iēmŭs**	*we shall hear*
	aud-iēs	*thou wilt hear*		**aud-iētĭs**	*ye will hear*
	aud-iĕt	*he will hear.*		**aud-ient**	*they will hear.*

4. Perfect Tense.

S.	**aud-īvī**	*I have heard or I heard*	P.	**aud-īvĭmŭs**	*we have heard or we heard*
	aud-īvistī	*thou hast heard or thou heardst*		**aud-īvistĭs**	*ye have heard or ye heard*
	aud-īvĭt	*he has heard or he heard.*		**aud-īvērunt, or -īvērĕ**	*they have heard or they heard.*

5. Pluperfect Tense.

S.	**aud-īvĕram**	*I had heard*	P.	**aud-īvĕrāmŭs**	*we had heard*
	aud-īvĕrās	*thou hadst heard*		**aud-īvĕrātĭs**	*ye had heard*
	aud-īvĕrăt	*he had heard.*		**aud-īvĕrant**	*they had heard.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S.	**aud-īvĕro**	*I shall*	P.	**aud-īvĕrĭmŭs**	*we shall*
	aud-īvĕris	*thou wilt* have heard.		**aud-īvĕritĭs**	*ye will* have heard.
	aud-īvĕrĭt	*he will*		**aud-īvĕrint**	*they will*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Present Tense.

S.	**aud-ī**	*hear thou.*	P.	**aud-ītĕ**	*hear ye.*

Future Tense.

S.	**aud-īto**	*thou shalt or must hear*	P.	**aud-ītōtĕ**	*ye shall or must hear*
	aud-īto	*he must hear or let him hear.*		**aud-iunto**	*they must hear or let them hear*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S.	aud-iam	*I may hear*	P. aud-iāmŭs *we may hear* or *let us hear*
	aud-iās	*thou mayst hear*	aud-iātĭs *ye may hear*
	aud-iăt	*he may hear* or *let him hear.*	aud-iant *they may hear* or *let them hear.*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S.	aud-īrem	*I might hear*	P. aud-īrēmŭs *we might hear*
	aud-īrēs	*thou mightst hear*	aud-īrētĭs *ye might hear*
	aud-īrĕt	*he might hear.*	aud-īrent *they might hear.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S.	aud-īvĕrim	*I may* ⎱ *have heard.*	P. aud-īvĕrimus *we may* ⎱ *have heard.*
	aud-īvĕris	*thou mayst*	aud-īvĕritĭs *ye may*
	aud-īvĕrĭt	*he may*	aud-īvĕrint *they may*

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S.	aud-īvissem	*I should* ⎱ *have heard.*	P. aud-īvissēmŭs *we should* ⎱ *have heard.*
	aud-īvissēs	*thou wouldst*	. aud-īvissētĭs *ye would*
	aud-īvissĕt	*he would*	aud-īvissent *they would*

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. and IMP.	aud-īrĕ	*to hear.*
PERF. and PLUP.	aud-īvissĕ	{*to have heard.*
FUTURE.	{aud-ītūrŭs essĕ	{*to be about to hear.*

SUPINES.

aud-ītum	*to hear*
aud-ītŭ	*in hearing,* or *to be heard.*

GERUNDS.

Acc.	aud-iendum	*hearing*
Gen.	aud-iendī	*of hearing*
Dat.	aud-iendō	*for hearing*
Abl.	aud-iendō	*by hearing.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	aud-iens, -entis, *hearing*
FUTURE.	aud-ītūrŭs (ă, um), *about to hear.*

NOTE.—In all the Perfect Tenses of the 4th Conjugation *v* may be omitted before *e* and *i.* *ii* is often contracted into *i*: as,

audīvistī becomes	{audīistī *or* audistī	audīvĕram becomes	audĭĕram
		audīvĕrim	„ audĭĕrim
audīvistĭs	„ {audīistĭs *or* audistĭs	audīvissem	„ {audīissem *or* audissem
audīvĭt	„ audiĭt		
audīvērunt	„ audĭĕrunt	audīvissĕ	„ {audīissĕ *or* audissĕ.
audīvĕro	„ audĭĕro		

Similarly in the 1st Conjugation, ămāvisti often becomes ămâstī; ămāvĕrat, ămârat, &c.

FIRST CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXV.

The Present, Imperfect, and Future-Simple Tenses, Indicative.

NOTE.—When an adjective in the masculine gender is used without a substantive, the word *man* or *person* must be supplied in translating; and when a neuter adjective is so used, the word *thing* must be supplied: as, laudat bonos, *he praises the good*, i.e. *good men;* difficilĕ est, *it is difficult*, i.e. *a difficult thing;* ĕădem, *the same things;* multă, *many things.*

A.—1. Ego te laudabam, tu me vituperabas. 2. Ego te laudabo, tu me vituperabis. 3. Bonos semper laudabo, improbos semper vituperabo. 4. Si virtutem amabitis, omnes boni vos amabunt. 5. Dum nos placidus somnus recreabat, vos vigilabatis. 6. Cum milites urbem intrabant, omnes cives timoris pleni erant. 7. Hieme in urbe habitamus, aestate autem in hortis habitabimus. 8. Probitate, non fraude amicos parabis. 9. Graeci partem praedae Diis dabant. 10. Multi homines aedificant domos, in quibus non habitabunt.

1. He was building a house in the city. 2. Thou wilt always praise the good, thou wilt always blame the bad. 3. The Romans gave (*imperf.* of do is dăbam) honours to good citizens. 4. By virtue ye will gain true glory. 5. While the soldiers were refreshing themselves (*se* or *sese*) the enemy (*pl.*) were watching. 6. We adorn houses with gold and silver. 7. The general will give the booty to the soldiers. 8. You (*sing.*) blame yourself, I blame you not. 9. All (persons) praise diligence and honesty. 10. While the citizens were watching, the soldiers were preparing (their) arms.

The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Tenses, Indic.

RULE 11.—When two Nouns refer to the same person or thing, they are said to be in *Apposition*, and are put in the same case : as, Rōmŭlŭs rex, *Romulus, the king.*

B.—1. Ego ambulavi, tu vigilavisti, ventus flavit. 2. Ego ambulaveram, tu vigilaveras, ventus flaverat. 3. Ego te laudavero, tu me vituperaveris, frater judicaverit. 4. Praeceptores meos semper amavi. 5. Romani Corinthum, opulentam Graeciae urbem, expugnaverunt. 6. Cum milites urbem intraverant, omnes cives timoris pleni erant. 7. Si unum castigaveris, centum emendabis. 8. Si animum virtutibus ornaveris, semper beatus eris. 9. Cum exercitus urbem oppugnavit, nos jam emigraveramus. 10. Cum hostes agros vastaverint, urbem oppugnabunt.

1. The Romans assaulted the city. 2. The soldiers laid-waste the lands (*agros*) and assaulted the city. 3. Cicero, the orator, got for himself a renowned name. 4. They had adorned the city (of) Corinth with most splendid buildings. 5. When the army has (say, *shall have*) laid-waste the lands, the general will assault the city. 6. When thou hast (shalt have) improved thy life, thou wilt have gained for thyself (*dative*) true praise. 7. I have built for myself a splendid house; I have gained very many friends. 8. I have praised you (*sing.*); I have not blamed you (*sing.*). 9. The army had entered the city and had laid-waste all (things). 10. If thou hast gained for thyself true friends, thou art happy.

Imperative Mood.

N.B. In commands *not* is expressed by ne; after which the Perfect Subjunctive is preferred to the Imperative: as, ne intrāvĕris, *do not enter.*

C.—1. Amato patrem et matrem! 2. Omnes homines ama! 3. Mores vestros mutate, amici! 4. Diligenter cura, amice, valetudinem tuam! 5. Amate litteras, o pueri! 6. Discipulus amato praeceptores! 7. Laudatote probos homines, vituperatote improbos! 8. Omnes homines amanto Deum! 9. Ne nomen mutaveris; muta mores.

1. Enter (*pl.*), O friends! 2. Improve (*pl.*) those ill manners of yours (those-of-yours, *istos*), scholars! 3. O my son, love (thy) mother! 4. Change not this law, citizens. 5. Praise thou the just and good (*pl.*). 6. Change not (your) friends. 7. While the soldiers are fighting, the citizens must watch. 8. Good and upright citizens must be-at-the-head-of the commonwealth (*dat.*). 9. Get not to thyself a name by guilt.

The Subjunctive Mood.

The Indicative Mood states a thing positively; the Subjunctive speaks of it conditionally : *see* p. 131.

A Verb in the Subjunctive Mood cannot properly be the principal Verb in a sentence. There are, however, two exceptions to this rule :—

1. The Present Subjunctive may be the principal Verb when it expresses a command or a wish : as, mūtēmus haec, *let us change these things;* sint cīves beāti, *may my countrymen be happy!*

2. The Perfect Subjunctive may be the principal Verb in a sentence when it is used after nē to express a prohibition : as, nē pŭtāvĕris, *do not suppose.*

Sequence of Tenses.—The Tense of a Verb in the Subjunctive Mood depends upon that of the principal Verb. A Present Tense Indicative cannot be followed by an Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive, nor a Past Tense Indicative by a Present Subjunctive. See Rule 26, page 96.

RULE 12.—The Conjunctions ŭt, *that, in-order-that,* and nē, *lest, that . . . not, in-order-that . . . not,* are constructed with the Subjunctive Mood.

The Present and Imperfect Tenses, Subjunctive.

D.—1. Laudat puerum, ut litteras amet. 2. Laudavit puerum, ut litteras amaret. 3. Omnes parentes optant, ut filii litteras diligenter tractent. 4. Saepe majores nostri dimicaverunt, ut patriam suam liberarent. 5. Amo te, ut me redames. 6. Amavi te, ut me redamares. 7. Dux imperavit ut milites stationes suas servarent. 8. Ita judicat judex justus, ut in omni re rectam conscientiam servet. 9. Heri ambulabam, ut tristem animum exhilararem. 10. Exercitus noster pugnabat, ne urbem hostes expugnarent.

1. I often walked in the fields that I might refresh my mind. 2. Who does not fight that he may preserve his country? 3. They were fighting that they might preserve their freedom. 4. He chastises the boy in-order-that he may improve him. 5. He was chastising the boy in-order-that he might improve him. 6. We fight lest the enemy (*pl.*) may lay-waste our lands. 7. The husbandmen were preparing arms *that* the soldiers might *not* enter their lands. 8. We prepare (our) arms that we may save the city. 9. We often walked in the garden in-order-that we might refresh ourselves (nos). 10. They are building houses, in-order-that others may dwell in them.

RULE 13.—Quīn is used with the Subjunctive after such phrases as, nōn dŭbĭto, *I do not doubt, I have no doubt;* quĭs dŭbĭtăt? *who doubts?* nōn est dŭbĭum, *it is not doubtful,* or, *there is no doubt;* and is translated in English by *that.*

After such expressions as these, the Subjunctive must be translated into English by the corresponding tense of the Indicative: as, nēmo dŭbĭtăt quīn sĭt justum, *no one doubts that it is just.*

The Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses, Subjunctive.

E.—1. Non dubito, quin milites nostri hostes superaverint. 2. Non dubitabam, quin milites nostri hostes superavissent. 3. Non dubito, quin milites nostri hostes superaturi sint.* 4. Quis dubitat, quin bonos semper laudaverimus? 5. Non est dubium, quin fidem semper servaveritis. 6. Nemo dubitabat quin hostes urbem expugnavissent. 7. Non est dubium, quin malos semper vituperaverimus. 8. Nemo dubitabat, quin nostri fortissime pugnavissent.

* The Future Participle with *sum* forms a kind of Future Subjunctive.

9. Non est dubium, quin terror omnium civium animos occupaverit.
10. Non erat dubium, quin terror omnium civium animos occupavisset.

> N.B.—In the following Exercise the verbs in italics are to be rendered in Latin by the corresponding Tenses of the Subjunctive.

1. There was no doubt that the enemy *had entered* the city.
2. There is no doubt that our soldiers *have fought* bravely. 3. I do not doubt that *ye have* always *praised* the good. 4. There is no doubt that our (men) *overcame* the enemy. 5. There was no doubt that they *had prepared* arms. 6. Who doubts that the enemy *have prepared* arms? 7. I have no doubt that our soldiers *have taken-by-storm* the city. 8. Who doubts that our (men) *fought* bravely? 9. There is no doubt that *he has improved* his manners.
10. Who doubts that a good citizen always fights (*pres. subj.*) for (prō with abl.) his native-land?

Infinitive Mood and Participles.

RULE 14.—The latter of two verbs is put in the Infinitive Mood : as, Caesǎr hostēs sǔpěrārě pǒtest, *Caesar is able to overcome the enemy.*

pǒtest, (*he, she, it*) *is able.*   **possunt,** (*they*) *are able.*

F.—1. Milites urbem expugnare possunt. 2. Vir bonus sibi amicos parare potest. 3. Naturam mutare difficile est. 4. Errare humanum est. 5. Luscinia cantans animos nostros delectat. 6. Hostes adventant expugnaturi urbem nostram.

1. Caesar was able to take-by-storm the city. 2. Our (men) are able to overcome the enemy. 3. It is difficult to change bad manners. 4. It is easy to overcome these enemies. 5. The soldiers entered the city, carrying booty. 6. They were walking in the garden, singing and adorning themselves with flowers.

SECOND CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXVI.

Indicative and Imperative Moods.

A.—1. Ego te monebam, tu flebas. 2. Ego te monebo, tu flebis.
3. Arbores vere florent. 4. Tempus omnia opera hominum delet.
5. Romani primis temporibus regibus parebant. 6. Gaudebam quod tu valebas. 7. Praeceptor gaudebat, quod vos praeceptis ejus parebatis. 8. Tibi placebas, aliis displicebas. 9. Omnes boni legibus divinis semper parebunt. 10. Vires vestras semper exercete, pueri !

PR. L. I.

1. *We* (see p. 34, Note) shall rejoice, *you* will weep.   2. The young-man obeys not the laws.   3. The commonwealth rejoices. 4. A good king is not always pleasing to his citizens.   5. I rejoice, because the state flourishes.   6. The same (things) do not always please the same persons.   7. The commonwealth was flourishing. 8. The good citizens were rejoicing; the bad were weeping.   9. Obey the laws of your country, citizens.   10. The enemy was destroying the houses.

B.—1. Graecia omnibus artibus floruit.   2. Multum iis debemus, qui nos virtutem docuerunt.   3. Fortes milites! laudem meruistis. 4. Cantus avium maximam nobis praebueruñt voluptatem.   5. Bonae leges Solonis Atheniensibus placuerunt.   6. Divitiæ multis hominibus nocuerunt.   7. Magistri vos linguam Latinam docuerunt. 8. Equites Caesaris Pompeium ejusque amicos terruerunt.   9. Haec civitas diu floruerat, quia semper legibus paruerat.   10. Tu nobis nocueras, quia temeritatem tuam non coercueras.

1. Rashness has often been hurtful to generals.   2. We owe very-many-things to our parents.   3. Who taught you the Latin language, boy?   4. Curb the tongue; the tongue has been hurtful to very many (persons).   5. Cicero exhibited to his (fellow) citizens a memorable example of integrity.   6. Set (*praebeo*) a good example to thy (fellow) citizens.   7. Destroy ye not the city, soldiers!   8. Solon the Athenian furnished most excellent laws for his (fellow) citizens.   9. The wise man curbs his tongue.   10. To whom do not the songs of birds afford pleasure?   •

Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods and Participles.   .

C.—1. Curo ut pueri corpus exerceam.   2. Curabam ut pueri corpus exercerem.   3. Cura ut pueri corpus exerceas.   4. Curabam ut pueri corpus exerceres.   5. Nemo dubitat quin ego puerum semper bene monuerim.   6. Nemo dubitabat quin ego puerum semper bene monuissem.   7. Non dubito quin dux temeritatem militum coercuerit.   8. Non dubito, quin dux temeritatem militum coerciturus sit.   9. Miserum est habuisse, et nihil habere.   10. Bonis placuisse maxima laus est.

1. Who doubts that rashness has been hurtful to generals?   2. It is difficult (i.e. a difficult *thing*; see p. 46, Note) to curb the tongue.   3. There is no doubt that to curb anger is most difficult. 4. There is no doubt that they entered the city weeping.   5. To do good to very many is true glory.   6. That tongue of yours (*iste*) is destined-to-hurt (*fut. part.*) yourself.   7. I will take care to* set a good example to my children.   8. A son ought to obey (his) father.   9. There is no doubt that the laws of Solon were serviceable to the Athenians.   10. Who doubts that anger has hurt very many?

* *Obs.*—*To set=that I may set:* ut with Subjunctive. When the English Infinitive Mood expresses a purpose, it must be translated in Latin by ut and the Subjunctive.

THIRD CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXVII.

Indicative and Imperative Moods.

A.—1. Omnem hunc mundum Deus regit. 2. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam ducet. 3. Ego id dicam quod verum est. 4. Dum ego scribebam, tu legebas et frater meus pingebat. 5. Miles corpus pallio suo teget. 6. Hostes aciem instruebant. 7. Disce, puer! 8. Caelestia semper spectato, humana contemnito. 9. Vos, viri fortissimi, urbem templaque deorum defendetis. 10. Tu exercitum duces, multasque urbes expugnabis.

1. Hannibal will lead his army into the Roman territory (agri, *pl.*). 2. We were leading the army into the Roman territory. 3. We were defending the city and the temples of the gods. 4. I was writing; you were reading; my brother was painting. 5. A good citizen will never abandon the commonwealth. 6. The state defends us. 7. I will cover the bodies of the boys with (my) cloak. 8. Learn the song, boys; (it) is very beautiful. 9. Brave men despise death and danger. 10. Tell * me (*dat.*), (my) son; what has hurt you?

B.—1. Tarquinius Priscus urbem Romam muris cinxit. 2. Xerxes, Persarum rex, Hellespontum ponte junxit. 3. Imperator exercitum duxit, multasque urbes expugnavit. 4. Cicero multas et pulcherrimas orationes scripserat. 5. Cicero conjurationem Catilinae detexerat. 6. Simulac litteras scripserimus, ambulabimus. 7. Incendium totam fere urbem absumpserat. 8. Camillum triumphantem albi traxerunt equi. 9. Xerxes, Persarum rex, innumeras copias contraxit. 10. Vix Caesar aciem instruxerat, cum hostes in unum locum convolaverunt.

1. The fire consumed the third part of the city. 2. The general led a great army into Italy. 3. The Cimbri brought-together innumerable forces. 4. Caesar arranged his line-of-battle. 5. Caesar threw a bridge across the river (say, joined the river by a bridge). 6. As soon as I have written (*fut.-perf.*) the letter, I shall take-a-walk. 7. We discovered the conspiracy of Catiline. 8. I defended the commonwealth (when) a young man. 9. White horses had drawn Camillus triumphing. 10. We have despised human (things).

---

* The verbs dīco, dūco, făcio, drop the final e in 2 *sing. pres. imper.*: thus, dīc, *tell thou;* dūc, *lead thou;* făc, *do thou.*

E 2

Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods and Participles.

C.—1. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam ducit, ut cum Romanis in hac terra pugnet. 2. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam duxit, ut cum Romanis in hac terra pugnaret. 3. Cura ut pueri animum excolas. 4. Curabam ut pueri animum excoleres. 5. Nemo dubitat quin ego puerum diligenter correxerim. 6. Nemo dubitabat quin ego puerum diligenter correxissem. 7. Narrate nobis, quid parentes scripserint. 8. Quis dubitat, quin hostes urbem obsidione cincturi sint? 9. Difficile est regere hominum animos. 10. Emere facilius est quam solvere.

1. I will take care to cultivate (*ut* and *Subj.*) the boy's mind. 2. There is no doubt that he has carefully cultivated his mind. 3. Take care to be well (*ut* and *Subj.*). 4. Who doubts that it is very difficult to rule the minds of men? 5. Who doubts that we have obeyed the laws? 6. Caesar drew together his forces with-the-intention-of-assaulting (*fut. part.*) the town. 7. White horses drew the chariot of Camillus (when) triumphing. 8. It is difficult to learn many things. 9. There is no doubt that we ought always to-be-learning (*pres. inf.*). 10. I will take care to correct (*ut* and *Subj.*) the boys.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

Indicative and Imperative Moods.

A.—1. Mors finiet nostram vitam. 2. Leones non reperitis in Gallia. 3. Discipulos diligentes non puniemus. 4. Persae castra muniebant et custodiebant. 5. Dum tu dormiebas, ego te custodiebam. 6. Scio multas res, quas olim nesciebam. 7. Dum tu dormies, ego te custodiam. 8. Praeceptor puerorum mentes erudito. 9. Liberi parentibus obediunto. 10. Qui puer Deo obedit, is etiam parentibus obediet.

1. The soldiers were fortifying the camp. 2. Cornelia trained her children carefully. 3. My son, obey thy mother. 4. While the citizens were keeping-guard, the soldiers were sleeping. 5. We shall keep-guard, and you will sleep. 6. Now I know these things; yesterday I was-ignorant-of (them). 7. You will not easily find a lion in Europe. 8. Death puts-an-end-to all the hopes (*acc.*) of this life. 9. Carefully train your children; praise the good; punish the bad. 10. Thou shalt not (*ne*) bury (*fut. imper.*) a dead man within (in) the city.

B.—1. Natura Italiam Alpibus munivit. 2. Cicero domum suam muniverat et firmaverat. 3. Magister puniebat eos discipulos, qui non obediverant. 4. Vincīte eos, qui non obediverunt. 5. Claram vocem hujus avis audivisti? eam non audivi. 6. Servi dominum sepeliverunt. 7. Vix milites castra muniverant, quum Caesar aciem instruxit. 8. Cum milites castra muniverint, dormient. 9. Natura oculos membranis tenuissimis vestivit. 10. Parentes mei pauperem hunc puerum nutriverant.

1. A good father will nurture, clothe, (and) train-up his children. 2. Who did not hear that very clear (*superl.*) song of the nightingale? 3. Nature has fortified the earth with mountains. 4. They bound the men with the hardest chains. 5. Lictor, bind the man! 6. Very delicate membranes clothe the eyes. 7. Punish thou the bad; give honour to the good; in-that-way thou wilt be serviceable to the commonwealth. 8. He will bind the wicked citizens with the strongest chains. 9. That cruel mother did not nurture her own children. 10. Bind not the man, soldier! he is a Roman citizen.

Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods and Participles.

C.—1. Curo ut pueri mentem erudiam. 2. Curabam, ut pueri mentem erudirem. 3. Obedit aliis, ut sibi quoque alii obediant. 4. Obediebam aliis, ut mihi quoque alii obedirent. 5. Nemo dubitat quin ego puerum gnaviter custodi(v)erim. 6. Nemo dubitabat quin puerum gnaviter custodi(v)isses. 7. Non dubito quin longinquitas temporis dolorem tuum mollitura sit. 8. Milites urbem custodire debent. 9. Nihil scire turpe est. 10. Venio auditurus, quid pater tuus scripserit.

1. There is no doubt that length of time will assuage (*Fut. Participle* with sim) their grief. 2. It is easy to exercise the body; it is difficult to train the mind. 3. Who doubts that the father carefully trained the mind of his son? 4. I will take pains to assuage (*ut* and *Subj.*) the pain of the wound. 5. I have no doubt that he is going-to-train-up (*Fut. Participle* with sim) the boy most carefully. 6. To punish is not to train-up. 7. He bound the men with chains, that they might learn to obey. 8. It is easy to obey the feelings (animus*). 9. There is no doubt that length of time assuages both grief and anger (et . . . et). 10. (He) who knows not (nescio) (how) to obey, knows not (how) to command.

* Use the Singular.

XXIII.—FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—Passive Voice.

ămŏr, ămātŭs sum, ămārī,—*to be loved.*   Stem : ăma-.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S. **Ăm-ŏr**   *I am being loved or*   *P.* **ăm-āmŭr**   *we are being loved*
     I am loved   *or we are loved*
   ăm-ārĭs *or* *thou art being loved*   **ăm-āmĭnī**   *ye are being loved*
   ăm-ārĕ   *or thou art loved*   *or ye are loved*
   ăm-ātŭr   *he is being loved or*   **ăm-antŭr**   *they are being loved*
     he is loved.   *or they are loved.*

2. Imperfect Tense.

S. **ăm-ābăr**   *I was being loved*   *P.* **ăm-ābāmŭr**   *we were being loved*
      or I was loved   *or we were loved*
   ăm-ābārĭs   *thou wast being loved*   **ăm-ābāmĭnī** *ye were being loved*
  or **ăm-ābārĕ**   *or thou wast loved*   *or ye were loved*
   ăm-ābātŭr   *he was being loved*   **ăm-ābantŭr** *they were being loved*
      or he was loved.   *or they were loved.*

3. Future-Simple Tense.

S. **ăm-ābŏr**   *I shall be loved*   *P.* **ăm-ābĭmŭr**   *we shall be loved*
   ăm-ābĕrĭs   *thou wilt be loved*   **ăm-ābĭmĭnī**   *ye will be loved*
  or **ăm-ābĕre**
   ăm-ābĭtŭr   *he will be loved.*   **ăm-ābuntŭr** *they will be loved.*

4. Perfect Tense.

S. **ăm-ātŭs**   *I have been loved or*   *P.* **ăm-ātī**   *we have been loved*
   sum   *I was loved*   **sŭmŭs**   *or we were loved*
   ăm-ātŭs ĕs   *thou hast been loved*   **ăm-ātī estĭs** *ye have been loved*
      or thou wast loved   *or ye were loved*
   ăm-ātŭs est *he has been loved or*   **ăm-ātī sunt** *they have been loved*
      he was loved.   *or they were loved.*

5. Pluperfect Tense.

S. **ăm-ātŭs ĕram** *I had been loved*   *P.* **ăm-ātī ĕrămŭs**   *we had been loved*

   ăm-ātŭs ĕrās *thou hadst been loved*   **ăm-ātī ĕrātĭs** *ye had been loved*

   ăm-ātŭs ĕrăt *he had been loved.*   **ăm-ātī ĕrant** *they had been loved.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S. **ăm-ātŭs ĕro** *I shall have been loved*   *P.* **ăm-ātī ĕrĭmŭs** *we shall have been loved*

   ăm-ātŭs ĕrĭs *thou wilt have been loved*   **ăm-ātī ĕrĭtĭs** *ye will have been loved*

   ăm-ātŭs ĕrĭt *he will have been loved.*   **ăm-ātī ĕrunt** *they will have been loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.
PRESENT TENSE.

S. ăm-ārĕ	*be thou loved.*	*P.* ăm-āmĭnī	*be ye loved.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S. ăm-ātŏr	*thou shalt* or *must be loved*		
ăm-ātŏr	*he shall* or *must be loved* or *let him be loved.*	*P.* ăm-antŏr	*they shall* or *must be loved* or *let them be loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD
1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. ăm-ĕr	*I may be loved*	*P.* ăm-ēmŭr	*we may be loved* or *let us be loved*
ăm-ērĭs *or* ăm-ērĕ	*thou mayst be loved*	ăm-ĕmĭnī	*ye may be loved*
ăm-ētŭr	*he may be loved* or *let him be loved.*	ăm-entŭr	*they may be loved* or *let them be loved.*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. ăm-ārĕr	*I might be loved*	*P.* ăm-ārēmŭr	*we might be loved*
ăm-ārērĭs *or* ăm-ārērĕ	*thou mightst be loved*	ăm-ārēmĭnī	*ye might be loved*
ăm-ārētŭr	*he might be loved.*	ăm-ārentŭr	*they might be loved.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. ăm-ātŭs sim	*I may have been loved*	*P.* ăm-ātī sīmŭs	*we may have been loved*
ăm-ātŭs sīs	*thou mayst have been loved*	ăm-ātī sītĭs	*ye may have been loved*
ăm-ātŭs sĭt	*he may have been loved.*	ăm-ātī sint	*they may have been loved.*

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. ăm-ātŭs essem	*I should have been loved*	*P.* ăm-ātī essēmŭs	*we should have been loved*
ăm-ātŭs essēs	*thou wouldst have been loved*	ăm-ātī essētĭs	*ye would have been loved*
ăm-ātŭs essĕt	*he would have been loved.*	ăm-ātī essent	*they would have been loved.*

VERB INFINITE.
INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP.	ăm-ārī	*to be loved*
PERF. and PLUP.	ăm-ātŭs (ă um) essĕ	*to have been loved*
FUTURE.	ăm-ātum (same for all genders) īrī	*to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	ăm-ātŭs ă um	*loved* or *having been loved*
GERUNDIVE	ăm-andŭs ă um	*fit to be loved* or *that must be loved.*

XXIV.—SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—

PASSIVE VOICE.

mŏnĕŏr, mŏnĭtŭs sum, mŏnērī,—*to be advised.*   Stem : **mŏne-.**

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. **Mŏn-eŏr**	*I am being advised or I am advised*	*P.* **mŏn-ēmŭr**	*we are being advised or we are advised*
mŏn-ērĭs *or* **mŏn-ērĕ**	*thou art being advised or thou art advised*	**mŏn-ēmĭnī**	*ye are being advised or ye are advised*
mŏn-ētŭr	*he is being advised or he is advised.*	**mŏn-entŭr**	*they are being advised or they are advised.*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. **mŏn-ēbăr**	*I was being advised or I was advised*	*P.* **mŏn-ēbāmŭr**	*we were being advised or we were advised*
mŏn-ēbāris *or* **mŏn-ēbārĕ**	*thou wast being advised or thou wast advised*	**mŏn-ēbāmĭnī**	*ye were being advised or ye were advised*
mŏn-ēbātŭr	*he was being advised or he was advised.*	**mŏn-ēbantŭr**	*they were being advised or they were advised.*

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

S. **mŏn-ēbŏr**	*I shall be advised*	*P.* **mŏn-ēbĭmŭr**	*we shall be advised*
mŏn-ēbĕrĭs *or* **mŏn-ēbĕrĕ**	*thou wilt be advised*	**mŏn-ēbĭmĭnī**	*ye will be advised*
mŏn-ēbĭtŭr	*he will be advised.*	**mŏn-ēbuntŭr**	*they will be advised.*

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. **mŏn-ĭtŭs sum**	*I have been advised or I was advised*	*P.* **mŏn-ĭtī sumŭs**	*we have been advised or we were advised*
mŏ₁-ĭtŭs ĕs	*thou hast been advised or thou wast advised*	**mŏn-ĭtī estĭs**	*ye have been advised or ye were advised*
mŏn-ĭtŭs est	*he has been advised or he was advised.*	**mŏn-ĭtī sunt**	*they have been advised or they were advised.*

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. **mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕram**	*I had been advised*	*P.* **mŏnĭtī ĕrāmŭs**	*we had been advised*
mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrās	*thou hadst been advised*	**mŏn-ĭtī ĕrātĭs**	*ye had been advised*
mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrăt	*he had been advised.*	**mŏn-ĭtī ĕrant**	*they had been advised.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S. **mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕro**   *I shall have been advised* | *P.* **mŏn-ĭtī ĕrĭmŭs** *we shall have been advised*

mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrĭs   *thou wilt have been advised* | **mŏn-ĭtī ĕrĭtĭs** *ye will have been advised*

• **mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrĭt**   *he will have been advised.* | **mŏn-ĭtī ĕrunt** *they will have been advised.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S. **mŏn-ērĕ**   *be thou advised.* | *P.* **mŏn-ēmĭnī**   *be ye advised.*

Future Tense.

S. **mŏn-ētŏr**   *thou shalt or must be advised*

mŏn-ētŏr   *he shall or must be advised or let him be advised.* | *P.* **mŏn-entŏr**   *they shall or must be advised or let them be advised.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S. **mŏn-eăr**   *I may be advised* | *P.* **mŏn-eāmŭr**   *we may be advised or let us be advised*

mŏn-eārĭs *or* **mŏn-eārĕ**   *thou mayst be advised* | **mŏn-eāmĭnī**   *ye may be advised*

• **mŏn-eātŭr**   *he may be advised or let him be advised.* | **mŏn-eantŭr**   *they may be advised or let them be advised.*

2. Imperfect Tense.

S. **mŏn-ērĕr**   *I might be advised* | *P.* **mŏn-ērēmŭr**   *we might be advised*

mŏn-ērērĭs *or* **mŏn-ērērĕ**   *thou mightst be advised* | **mŏn-ērēmĭnī**   *ye might be advised*

mŏn-ērētŭr   *he might be advised.* | **mŏn-ērentŭr**   *they might be advised.*

3. Perfect Tense.

S. **mŏn-ĭtŭs sim**   *I may have been advised* | *P.* **mŏn-ĭtī sīmŭs**   *we may have been advised*

mŏn-ĭtŭs sīs   *thou mayst have been advised* | **mŏn-ĭtī sītĭs**   *ye may have been advised*

mŏn-ĭtŭs sĭt   *he may have been advised.* | **mŏn-ĭtī sint**   *they may have been advised.*

4. Pluperfect Tense.

S. **mŏn-ĭtŭs essem**   *I should have been advised* | *P.* **mŏn-ĭtī essēmŭs** *we should have been advised*

mŏn-ĭtŭs essēs   *thou wouldst have been advised* | **mŏn-ĭtī essētĭs**   *ye would have been advised*

mŏn-ĭtŭs essĕt   *he would have been advised.* | **mŏn-ĭtī essent**   *they would have been advised.*

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. and Imp.	mŏn-ērī	*to be advised*
Perf. and Plup.	mŏn-ĭtŭs (ă um) essĕ	*to have been advised*
Future.	mŏn-ĭtum (same for all genders) īrī	*to be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	mŏn-ĭtŭs ă um	*advised* or *having been advised*
Gerundive.	mŏn-endŭs ă um	*fit to be advised* or *that must be advised.*

XXV.—THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U CONJUGATION.—Passive Voice.

rĕgŏr, rectŭs sum, rĕgī,—*to be ruled.*   Stem: rĕg-.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S. Rĕg-ŏr	*I am being ruled* or *I am ruled*		*P.* rĕg-ĭmŭr	*we are being ruled* or *we are ruled*
rĕg-ĕrĭs *or* rĕg-ĕrĕ	*thou art being ruled* or *thou art ruled*		rĕg-ĭminī	*ye are being ruled* or *ye are ruled*
rĕg-ĭtŭr	*he is being ruled* or *he is ruled.*		rĕg-untŭr	*they are being ruled* or *they are ruled.*

2. Imperfect Tense.

S. rĕg-ēbăr	*I was being ruled* or *I was ruled*		*P.* rĕg-ēbāmŭr	*we were being ruled* or *we were ruled*
rĕg-ēbārĭs *or* rĕg-ēbārĕ	*thou wast being ruled* or *thou wast ruled*		rĕg-ēbāminī	*ye were being ruled* or *ye were ruled*
rĕg-ēbātŭr	*he was being ruled* or *he was ruled.*		rĕg-ēbantŭr	*they were being ruled* or *they were ruled.*

3. Future-Simple Tense.

S. rĕg-ăr	*I shall be ruled*		*P.* rĕg-ēmŭr	*we shall be ruled*
rĕg-ērĭs *or* rĕg-ērĕ	*thou wilt be ruled*		rĕg-ēminī	*ye will be ruled*
rĕg-ētŭr	*he will be ruled.*		rĕg-entŭr	*they will be ruled.*

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. rec-tŭs sum.   *have been ruled* | *P.* rec-tī sŭmŭs *we have been ruled*
   or I was ruled | *or we were ruled*

rec-tŭs ĕs   *thou hast been ruled or thou wast ruled* | rec-tī estīs   *ye have been ruled or ye were ruled*

rectŭs est   *he has been ruled or he was ruled.* | rec-tī sunt   *they have been ruled or they were ruled.*

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. rec-tŭs ĕram   *I had been ruled* | *P.* rec-tī ĕrāmŭs   *we had been ruled*

rec-tŭs ĕrās   *thou hadst been ruled* | rec-tī ĕrātīs   *ye had been ruled*

rec-tŭs ĕrăt   *he had been ruled.* | rec-tī ĕrant   *they had been ruled.*

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. rec-tŭs ĕro   *I shall have been ruled* | *P.* rec-tī ĕrĭmŭs   *we shall have been ruled*

rec-tŭs ĕrĭs   *thou wilt have been ruled* | rec-tī ĕrītīs   *ye will have been ruled*

rec-tŭs ĕrĭt   *he will have been ruled.* | rec-tī ĕrunt   *they will have been ruled.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.
PRESENT TENSE.

S. rĕg-ĕrĕ   *be thou ruled.* | *P.* rĕg-ĭmĭnī   *be ye ruled.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S. rĕg-ĭtŏr   *thou shalt or must be ruled*

rĕg-ĭtŏr   *ne shall or must be ruled or let him be ruled.* | *P.* rĕg-untŏr   *they shall or must be ruled or let them be ruled.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. rĕg-ăr   *I may be ruled* | *P.* rĕg-āmŭr   *we may be ruled or let us be ruled*

rĕg-ārĭs *or* rĕg-ārĕ   *thou mayst be ruled* | rĕg-āmĭnī   *ye may be ruled*

rĕg-ātŭr   *he may be ruled or let him be ruled.* | rĕg-antŭr   *they may be ruled or let them be ruled.*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. rĕg-ĕrĕr   *I might be ruled* | *P.* rĕg-ĕrēmŭr   *we might be ruled*

rĕg-ĕrērĭs *or* rĕg-ĕrērĕ   *thou mightst be ruled* | rĕg-ĕrēmĭnī   *ye might be ruled*

rĕg-ĕrētŭr   *he might be ruled.* | rĕg-ĕrentŭr   *they might be ruled.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. rec-tŭs sim	*I may have been ruled*	*P.* rec-tī sīmŭs	*we may have been ruled*
rec-tŭs sīs	*thou mayst have been ruled*	rec-tī sītīs	*ye may have been ruled*
rec-tŭs sĭt	*he may have been ruled.*	rec-tī sint	*they may have been ruled.*

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. rec-tŭs essem	*I should have been ruled*	*P.* rec-tī essēmŭs	*we should have been ruled*
rec-tŭs essēs	*thou wouldst have been ruled*	rec-tī essētis	*ye would have been ruled*
rec-tŭs essĕt	*he would have been ruled.*	rec-tī essent	*they would have been ruled.*

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP.	rĕg-ī	*to be ruled*
PERF. and PLUP.	rec-tŭs (ă um) essĕ	*to have been ruled*
FUTURE.	rec-tum (same for all genders) īrī	*to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT	rec-tŭs ă um	*ruled or having been ruled*
GERUNDIVE.	rĕg-endŭs ă um	*fit to be ruled or that must be ruled.*

XXVI.—FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—
PASSIVE VOICE.

audĭŏr, audītŭs sum, audīrī,—*to be heard.*   Stem: audĭ-.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-iŏr	*I am being heard or I am heard*	*P.* aud-īmŭr	*we are being heard or we are heard*
aud-īrĭs or aud-īrĕ	*thou art being heard or thou art heard*	aud-īmĭnī	*ye are being heard or ye are heard*
aud-ītŭr	*he is being heard or he is heard.*	aud-ĭuntŭr	*they are being heard or they are heard.*

2. Imperfect Tense.

S. aud-iēbăr	*I was being heard or I was heard*	*P.* aud-iēbāmŭr	*we were being heard or we were heard*
aud-iēbārĭs *or* aud-iēbārĕ	*thou wast being heard or thou wast heard*	aud-iēbāmĭnī	*ye were being heard or ye were heard*
aud-iēbātŭr	*he was being heard or he was heard.*	aud-iēbantŭr	*they were being heard or they were heard.*

3. Future-Simple Tense.

S. aud-iăr	*I shall be heard*	*P.* aud-iēmŭr	*we shall be heard*
aud-iērĭs *or* aud-iērĕ	*thou wilt be heard*	aud-iēmĭnī	*ye will be heard*
aud-iētŭr	*he will be heard.*	aud-ientŭr	*they will be heard.*

4. Perfect Tense.

S. aud-ītŭs sum	*I have been heard or I was heard*	*P.* aud-ītī sŭmŭs	*we have been heard or we were heard*
aud-ītŭs ĕs	*thou hast been heard or thou wast heard*	aud-ītī estĭs	*ye have been heard or ye were heard*
aud-ītŭs est	*he has been heard or he was heard.*	aud-ītī sunt	*they have been heard or they were heard.*

5. Pluperfect Tense.

S. aud-ītŭs ĕram	*I had been heard*	*P.* aud-ītī ĕrāmŭs	*we had been heard*
aud-ītŭs ĕrās	*thou hadst been heard*	aud-ītī ĕrātĭs	*ye had been heard*
aud-ītŭs ĕrăt	*he had been heard.*	aud-ītī ĕrant	*they had been heard.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S. aud-ītŭs ĕro	*I shall have been heard*	*P.* aud-ītī ĕrĭmŭs	*we shall have been heard*
aud-ītŭs ĕrĭs	*thou wilt have been heard*	aud-ītī ĕrĭtĭs	*ye will have been heard*
aud-ītŭs ĕrĭt	*he will have been heard.*	aud-ītī ĕrunt	*they will have been heard.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S. aud-īrĕ	*be thou heard.*	*P.* aud-īmĭnī	*be ye heard.*

Future Tense.

S. aud-ītŏr	*thou shalt or must be heard*		
aud-ītŏr	*he shall or must be heard or let him be heard.*	*P.* aud-iuntŏr	*they shall or must be heard or let them be heard.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. aud-iăr — *I may be heard* — | *P.* aud-iāmŭr — *we may be heard or let us be heard*

aud-iārĭs *or* aud-iārĕ — *thou mayst be heard* — aud-iāmĭnī — *ye may be heard*

aud-iātŭr — *he may be heard or let him be heard* — aud-iantŭr — *they may be heard or let them be heard.*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. aud-īrēr — *I might be heard* — | *P.* aud-īrēmŭr — *we might be heard*

aud-īrērĭs *or* aud-īrērĕ — *thou mightst be heard* — aud-īrēmĭnī — *ye might be heard*

aud-īrētŭr — *he might be heard.* — aud-īrentŭr — *they might be heard.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. aud-ītŭs sim — *I may have been heard* — | *P.* aud-ītī sīmŭs — *we may have been heard*

aud-ītŭs sīs — *thou mayst have been heard* — aud-ītī sītĭs — *ye may have been heard*

aud-ītŭs sĭt — *he may have been heard.* — aud-ītī sint — *they may have been heard.*

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. aud-ītŭs essem — *I should have been heard* — | *P.* aud-ītī essēmŭs — *we should have been heard*

aud-ītŭs essēs — *thou wouldst have been heard* — aud-ītī essētĭs — *ye would have been heard*

aud-ītŭs essēt — *he would have been heard.* — aud-ītī essent — *they would have been heard.*

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP.   aud-īrī   *to be heard*

PERF. and PLUP.   aud-ītus (ă um) essĕ   *to have been heard*

FUTURE.   aud-ītum (same for all genders) īrī   *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.   aud-ītŭs ă um   *heard* or *having been heard*

GERUNDIVE. aud-iendŭs ă um   *fit* to be heard or *that must be heard.*

Obs. The Gerundive Participles of all Passive Verbs may be conjugated with all the tenses of sum: as, audiendŭs sum, *I am fit to be heard;* audiendŭs ĕram, *I was fit to be heard.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

RULE 15.—A statement in the active voice may also be expressed by the passive voice, the accusative being changed into the nominative, and the nominative of the agent into the ablative. If the agent is a living being, the preposition ā or ăb is prefixed; the former before a consonant and the latter before a vowel (or h). Thus măgistĕr puĕrum laudăt, *the master praises the boy*, becomes in the passive, puĕr ā măgistrō laudātŭr, *the boy is praised by the master.*

EXERCISE XXIX.

NOTE.—In all Tenses compounded of the Perfect Participle and the verb sum, the Participle agrees in Gender and Number with the subject of the verb: as,

puĕr ămāt-*ŭs* est,	*the boy was loved.*
puellă ămāt-*ă* est,	*the girl was loved.*
bellum ămāt-*um* est,	*war was loved.*
puĕrī ămāt-*ī* sunt,	*the boys were loved.*
puellae ămāt-*ae* sunt,	*the girls were loved.*
bellă ămāt-*ă* sunt,	*wars were loved.*

A.—1. Multi milites in proelio vulnerabantur. 2. Pueri attenti a magistris laudabantur. 3. Troja a Graecis expugnata est. 4. Leges egregiae a Lycurgo datae sunt. 5. Duces exercitus nostri in proelio vulnerati sunt. 6. Antiocho regi pax a Romanis data est. 7. Non est dulce ab hoste superari. 8. Puer bene educator. 9. Puer bene educatus omnibus placet. 10. Cum rex urbem intravit, omnium civium domus floribus ornatae erant.

1. The good (men) are praised; the bad are blamed. 2. He was severely wounded. 3. In the first battle the Romans were overcome. 4. Immense forces had been raised (paro) by the enemy. 5. The temple of Vesta was built by Numa Pompilius. 6. Antiochus was overcome by the Roman general. 7. The town was assaulted. 8. The city was not taken-by-storm by Hannibal. 9. It is a small-thing to be adorned with gold and silver. 10. The whole land (ager) was laid-waste by the enemy.

B.—1. Pater curat ut ego bene edŭcer. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego bene educarer. 3. Curo, ut puer bene educetur. 4. Curabam, ut puer bene educaretur. 5. Non dubito quin hostes a militibus nostris superati sint. 6. Non dubitabam, quin hostes a militibus nostris superati essent. 7. Nemo dubitat quin urbs ab hostibus expugnata sit. 8. Nemo dubitabat, quin urbs ab hostibus expugnata esset. 9. Exercitus noster pugnat, ut urbs servetur. 10. Exercitus noster pugnabat, ut urbs servaretur.

1. Cornelia took-care that her children should be well educated. 2. Who doubts that the boy has been carefully educated? 3. I

will take-care that the girl may be adorned with good-qualities.
4. There is no doubt that the city has been assaulted. 5. To be
put-to-flight is not always to be overcome. 6. Arms must be pre-
pared (*Imper.*) ; the gates of the city must be strengthened (*Imper.*).
7. The general takes-care that the gates may be strengthened. 8.
Let not the good be blamed ; let not the bad be praised. 9. We
were put to flight, but we were not overcome. 10. There is no
doubt that Pompey was overcome by Caesar.

SECOND CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXX.

A.—1. Discipuli a magistro docentur. 2. Amari major est laus
quam timeri. 3. Fortis vir nullis periculis movebitur. 4. Nero
ab omnibus Romanis timebatur. 5. Incolae illius urbis hostium
adventu territi sunt. 6. Moniti sumus ut diligentiores essemus.
7. Puer strenue exercetor. 8. Hostes territi in urbe manserunt.
9. Pueri in litterarum studiis gnaviter exerciti sunt. 10. Monemini
ut diligentiores sitis.

1. The pupil is taught by the master. 2. The walls were de-
stroyed. 3. The citizens had been terrified. 4. You have been
taught by your father. 5. It is a great-thing to be well taught.
6. All the citizens were terrified by his (ejus) arrival. 7. Nero
was grievously feared (*imperf.*) by all the citizens. 8. It is not
pleasant to be feared by the good ; it is very-pleasant to be feared
by the bad. 9. The bodies of the children must be actively exercised
(*Imper.*). 10. You had been warned, but you did not obey.

B.—1. Pater curat, ut ego strenue exercear. 2. Pater curabat, ut
ego strenue exercerer. 3. Curo, ut strenue exerceare. 4. Curabam,
ut strenue exercerere. 5. Curo ut puer strenue exerceatur. 6.
Curabam ut puer strenue exerceretur. 7. Nemo dubitat quin puer
a me semper bene monitus sit. 8. Nemo dubitavit quin puer a me
semper bene monitus esset. 9. Non est dubium quin milites subito
periculo territi sint. 10. Non erat dubium quin milites subito peri-
culo territi essent.

1. He was taking-care that his body might be vigorously exercised.
2. I will take-care that the boys are taught (*subj.*) carefully. 3. A
good mother will take-care that her daughter is carefully taught (*subj.*).
4. I do not doubt that the whole city was terrified by his arrival.
5. There is no doubt that the citizens were alarmed by the sudden
danger. 6. Let not the citizens be troubled (moved) by the arrival
of the enemy. 7. (Our) father took-care that we might be care-
fully taught. 8. I have taken-care that my sons should (*pres. subj.*)
be carefully taught. 9. Brave men will not be suddenly terrified.
10. Virtue is the most beautiful (*fem.*) of (all) things ; take-care
that it is diligently exercised (*pres. subj.*).

THIRD CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXI.

A.—1. Omnis hic mundus a Deo regitur. 2. Respublica Romana a consulibus regebatur. 3. Ripae Rheni ponte junguntur. 4. Urbs muro cincta erat. 5. Graecia perversis suis consiliis afflicta est. 6. Si semper bene vixeris, ab omnibus diligēre. 7. Cum urbs ab hostibus oppugnabatur, a civibus defendebatur. 8. Conjuratio Catilinae a Cicerone detecta est. 9. Multae fabulae a poetis fictae sunt. 10. Vix acies a Caesare instructa erat, cum hostes in unum locum convolaverunt.

1. Hannibal was conquered by Scipio. 2. The commonwealth was severely cast-down. 3. He was esteemed and was loved by all. 4. This story was invented by the poets. 5. The memory of the man will always be cherished (colo) by his fellow-citizens. 6. The conspiracy is discovered; the commonwealth is preserved. 7. You will be loved by many. 8. The town is being assaulted indeed (quidem) but it is not taken. 9. In that most celebrated (nobilis) battle Carthage was cast-down. 10. A bridge was thrown over the river Rhine by Caesar. (Say, the river Rhine was joined with a bridge by Caesar.)

B.—1. Pater curat, ut ego probe excolar. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego probe excolerer. 3. Curo, ut puer probe excolatur. 4. Curabam, ut puer probe excoleretur. 5. Phaëthon vehementer optat, ut patris curru vehatur. 6. Phaëthon vehementer optavit, ut patris curru veheretur. 7. Dicit mihi, quid ad te a sorore scriptum sit.* 8. Dixit mihi, quid ad te a sorore scriptum esset.* 9. Puer probe excolitor. 10. Sapientes semper ratione rēgi student.

1. I will take-care that he may be rightly cultivated. 2. He took-care that the boy might be rightly cultivated. 3. We vehemently wish that the enemy may be conquered. 4. Cicero vehemently desired that all (things) might be discovered. 5. Let-us-be-zealous to be ruled by reason. 6. All are zealous to rule, not to be ruled. 7. Tell me (*dat.*) what (quae, *neuter plural*) was written (*perfect subj.**) to thee. 8. He told me (*dat.*) what (quae) had been written (*pluperf. subj.**). 9. The boy wishes that he may ride in the chariot. 10. The boy was wishing that he might ride in the chariot.

* The rule for this use of the Subjunctive is given subsequently See p. 96. The Indicative must be used in translating into English.

PR. L. I.   F

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXII.

A.—1. Pueri a magistris erudiuntur. 2. Improbi homines a Deo punientur. 3. Bellum Punicum secundum finitum est a Scipione Africano. 4. Omnes dolores morte finientur. 5. Pisces in mari, aves in aëre a Deo nutriuntur. 6. Oculi tenuissimis membranis a natura vestiti sunt. 7. Veteres Britanniae incolae pellibus vestiebantur. 8. Corpora eorum, qui in pugna ceciderunt, sepeliuntur. 9. Urbes munitae ab hostibus non expugnabantur. 10. Non prius dormiemus, quam negotia vestra finita erunt (*prius quam*, before that).

1. The Britons used-to-clothe-themselves (*imperf. pass.*) with skins. 2. The cities had been fortified with stone (*adj.*) walls. 3. The sons of Tiberius Gracchus had been carefully trained by their mother. 4. The bodies were buried with the highest honours. 5. The generals were punished because they had not buried the bodies. 6. These two boys had been trained by their mother carefully. 7. The camp had not been fortified. 8. This life of-ours (nostra) will be found exceedingly-short (*superl.*). 9. When the city has been fortified (*fut.-perf.*), the citizens will defend it. 10. The city is fortified and strengthened with guards.

B.—1. Pater curat, ut ego diligenter erudiar. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego diligenter erudirer. 3. Curo, ut diligenter erudiare. 4. Curabam, ut diligenter erudirere. 5. Curabam, ut puer bene educaretur, strenue exerceretur, probe excoleretur, diligenter erudiretur. 6. O puer, diligenter eruditor! 7. Bonus discipulus litterarum cognitione erudiri studet. 8. Homo eruditus non solum sibi, sed etiam aliis prodest. 9. Nemo dubitat, quin puer a me gnaviter custoditus sit. 10. Nemo dubitavit (see p. 47, *Sequence of Tenses*), quin puella a me gnaviter custodita sit.

1. The boys must be carefully trained (*Imper.*). 2. Let not the boys be trained (*Imper.*) by wicked men. 3. I will take care that my son is carefully trained (*pres. subj.*). 4. I took care that my son should be trained by a good master. 5. There is no doubt that the boys have been carefully trained. 6. Who doubts that it is better to be trained by a good master than by a bad (one)? 7. Who doubts that Socrates was unjustly punished? 8. It is not disgraceful to be unjustly punished. 9. Take care that the boy is well trained (*pres. subj.*). 10. Well trained boys love their master.

XXVII.—Third Conjugation (with I in certain Tenses).

Căpio, cēpī, captum, căpĕrĕ,—*to take.* Stem : căp- or căpi-.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Căp-io	*I take*		căp-ĭmŭs	*we take*
	căp-ĭs	*thou takest*		căp-ĭtĭs	*ye take*
	căp-ĭt	*he takes.*		căp-iunt	*they take.*
Imperfect.	căp-iēbam		*I was taking.*		
Future.	căp-iam		*I shall take.*		

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.	căp-iam	*I may take.*
Imperfect.	căp-ĕrem	*I might take.*

Imperative Mood.

Present.	căp-ĕ	*take thou.*
Future.	căp-ĭto	*thou shalt* or *must take.*

Infinitive.

Present.	căp-ĕrĕ	*to take.*

Participle.

Present.	căp-iens	*taking.*

Gerunds.

Acc.	căp-iendum, &c.	*taking.*

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Căp-ĭŏr	*I am taken*		căp-ĭmŭr	*we are taken*
	căp-ĕrĭs	*thou art*		căp-ĭmĭnī	*ye are taken*
	or -ĕrĕ	*taken*			
	căp-ĭtŭr	*he is taken.*		căp-iuntŭr	*they are taken.*
Imperfect.	căp-iēbar		*I was being taken*		
Future.	căp-iăr		*I shall be taken.*		

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.	căp-iăr	*I may be taken.*
Imperfect.	căp-ĕrĕr	*I might be taken.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present.	**cǎp-ĕrĕ**	*be thou taken.*
Future.	**cǎp-ĭtŏr**	*thou must be taken.*

INFINITIVE.

Present.	**cǎp-ī**	*to be taken.*

NOTE.—The Perfect Tenses are not given, as their conjugation is quite regular : cēp-ī, cēp-ĕram, cēp-ĕro, etc.; passive, captus sum, captus ĕram, etc.

The following Verbs are conjugated like cǎpio : see p. 144.

fǎcio,	fēcī,	factum,	fǎcĕrĕ,	*to make.*
jǎcio,	jēcī,	jactum,	jǎcĕrĕ,	*to throw.*
fūgio,	fūgī,	fūgĭtum,	fūgĕrĕ,	*to flee.*
fŏdio,	fōdī,	fossum,	fŏdĕrĕ,	*to dig.*
rǎpio,	rǎpuī,	raptum,	rǎpĕrĕ,	*to seize.*
pǎrio,	pĕpĕrī,	partum,	pǎrĕrĕ,	*to bring forth.*
quǎtio,	(no perfect,)	quassum,	quǎtĕrĕ,	*to shake.*
cǔpio,	cǔpīvī (ĭī),	cǔpītum,	cǔpĕrĕ,	*to desire.*
sǎpio,	sǎpīvī (ĭī),	—	sǎpĕrĕ,	*to savour of, be wise.*

EXERCISE XXXIII.

1. Urbs capitur; fugiunt cives; rapiuntur omnia. 2. Curabit dux strenuus ne milites sui fugiant. 3. Scribebam ego versus, tu pingebas, frater tuus in horto fodiebat. 4. Quis dubitat quin absurdum sit malos versus facere? 5. Poeta versus faciebat cum hostes urbem intrabant. 6. Ne fugiant milites : saepe tutius est pugnare quam fugere. 7. Non omnes eadem cupimus. 8. Curavit ut oratio sua Ciceronem saperet. 9. Quis dubitat quin milites bona nostra rapturi sint? 10. Ne feceritis absurda, cives ! Sapite et iram coercete.

1. Birds make their nests in trees. 2. An eagle had made her nest in a high rock. 3. We desire very many things which are not needful to us. 4. It is easy to make verses; it is not easy to make good (ones). 5. The enemy flee, and the camp is taken. 6. Flee not, soldiers ! It is safer to fight than to flee. 7. We shall dig in the earth, in order that we may find metals. 8. Men do not dig in the ground to (ut) find (*subj.*) pearls. 9. A strong wind was shaking the trees. 10. That whole oration savours-of the poets (*acc.*).

XXVIII.—Deponent Verbs.

Exercise XXXIV.

Deponent Verbs of the First Conjugation : see p. 70.

1. Admiramur cantum avium illarum. 2. Admiramini Dei potentiam. 3. Animalia quaedam vocem humanam imitantur. 4. Caesar milites hortatus est, ut fortiter pugnarent. 5. Hannibal Alpes superare conatus est. 6. Hortabor patrem ut pueri mentem probe excolat. 7. Quid meditaris, carissime amice ? 8. Contemplor pulchram hanc imaginem. 9. Venerare Deum, venerare parentes. 10. Tum demum beatus eris, cum aspernatus eris voluptatem.

1. Who does not admire the song of the nightingale ? 2. Meditate on these things. 3. Observe (carefully) this beautiful image. 4. It does-good to the mind to contemplate lofty things. 5. Contemplate, citizens, the examples of the ancients ! 6. Then at length will ye be happy when ye have learnt (*fut.-perf.*) to despise pleasure. 7. I will encourage the boy to (ut) contemplate those things. 8. Attempt great things ; thou wilt do great things. 9. I will take care that my son may admire those things (ea, *n. pl.*) which are fit-to-be-admired. 10. There is no doubt that the Romans admired Cicero.

Exercise XXXV.

Deponent Verbs of the Second Conjugation : see p. 70.

RULE 16.—Verbs signifying *to remember, to forget, to pity,* are in Latin commonly followed by the Genitive.

1. Veremini, O pueri, senectutem ! 2. Darius Alexandro magnam partem Asiae pollicitus est. 3. Plinius scribit : nunc pueri omnia sciunt, neminem verentur, imitantur neminem. 4. Tuebimur miseros, quorum agros vastavistis. 5. Incolae hoc facinus fatebuntur. 6. Comites, qui salutem regis tuiti erant, maximum praemium acceperunt. 7. Scelerum suorum recordabuntur. 8. Reus facinus confessus est. 9. Jucundum est mare a terra intueri. 10. Semper miserorum hominum miserebimur.

1. We reverence the power of God. 2. Guard the king, soldiers ! 3. Confess the truth (true things), boy ; it is better to be punished than to deceive. 4. Look-into these things carefully. 5. The general has promised rewards to the soldiers. The generals have promised rewards to the soldiers. 6. He has confessed the crime, and will be punished. 7. It is pleasant to call-to-mind past dangers. 8. Ye will call-to-mind these things (*acc. neut.*) when I am cast forth (*fut.-perf.*) from the city. 9. Have-pity-on the accused (man), judges ! 10. He reverences the gods.

Deponent Verbs have a Passive form,

I. **Hortŏr, hortātŭs sum, hortārī,** *to exhort,* like **ămŏr.**

II. **Vĕreŏr, vĕrĭtŭs sum, vĕrērī,** *to fear,* „ **mŏneŏr.**

		I.		II.	
INDICATIVE MOOD.	*Present.*	Hort-ŏr,	{ *I exhort or am exhorting.*	Vĕr-eŏr,	{ *I fear or am fearing.*
		hort-ārĭs or -ārĕ, &c.	{ *thou exhortest,* &c.	vĕr-ērĭs or ērĕ, &c.	{ *thou fearest,* &c.
	Imperfect.	hort-ābăr,	*I was exhorting.*	vĕr-ēbăr,	*I was fearing.*
	Future-Simple.	hort-ābŏr,	*I shall exhort.*	vĕr-ēbŏr,	*I shall fear.*
	Perfect.	hort-ātŭs sum,	{ *I have exhorted, or I exhorted.*	vĕr-ĭtŭs sum,	{ *I have feared, or I feared.*
	Pluperfect.	hort-ātŭs ĕram,	{ *I had exhorted.*	vĕr-ĭtŭs ĕram,	{ *I had feared.*
	Fut.-Perfect.	hort-ātŭs ĕro,	{ *I shall have exhorted.*	vĕr-ĭtŭs ĕro,	{ *I shall have feared.*
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	*Present.*	hort-ĕr,	*I may exhort.*	vĕr-eăr,	*I may fear.*
	Imperfect.	hort-ārĕr,	*I might exhort.*	vĕr-ērĕr,	*I might fear.*
	Perfect.	hort-ātŭs sim,	{ *I may have exhorted.*	vĕr-ĭtŭs sim,	{ *I may have feared.*
	Pluperfect.	hort-ātŭs essem,	{ *I should have exhorted.*	vĕr-ĭtŭs essem,	{ *I should have feared.*
IMPERATIVE.	*Present.*	hort-ārĕ,	*exhort thou.*	vĕr-ērĕ,	*fear thou.*
	Future.	hort-ātŏr,	{ *thou shalt or must exhort.*	vĕr-ētŏr,	{ *thou shalt or must fear.*
INFINITIVE.	*Pres. & Imperf.*	hort-ārī,	*to exhort.*	vĕr-ērī,	*to fear.*
	Perf. & Plup.	hort-ātŭs essĕ,	{ *to have exhorted.*	vĕr-ĭtŭs essĕ,	{ *to have feared.*
	Future.	hort-ātūrŭs essĕ,	{ *to be about to exhort.*	vĕr-ĭtūrŭs essĕ,	{ *to be about to fear.*
PARTICIPLES.	*Present.*	hort-ans,	*exhorting.*	vĕr-ens,	*fearing.*
	Future.	hort-ātūrŭs,	*about to exhort.*	vĕr-ĭtūrŭs,	*about to fear.*
	Perfect.	hort-ātŭs,	*having exhorted.*	vĕr-ĭtŭs,	*having feared.*
	Gerundive.	hort-andŭs	{ *meet or fit to be exhorted.*	vĕr-endŭs,	{ *meet or fit to be feared.*
SUPINES.		hort-ātum,	*to exhort.*	vĕr-ĭtum,	*to fear.*
		hort-ātū,	*to be exhorted.*	vĕr-ĭtū,	*to be feared,*
GERUNDS.		hort-andum, &c.	*exhorting,* &c.	vĕr-endum, &c.	*fearing,* &c.

Besides the Passive forms, Deponents have the two Active Participles, the Supines, and the Gerunds.

Deponents are the only Latin Verbs that have a Perfect Participle Active; as, hortātŭs, *having exhorted.*

but an Active meaning.

III. Lŏquŏr, lŏcūtŭs sum, lŏquī, *to speak*, like rĕgŏr.
IV. Partiŏr, partītŭs sum, partīrī, *to divide*, „ audiŏr.

	III.		IV.		
Present.	Lŏqu-ŏr,	{ *I speak or am speaking.*	Part-iŏr,	{ *I divide or am dividing*	INDICATIVE MOOD.
	lŏqu-ĕrĭs ŏr -ĕrĕ, &c.	} *thou speakest, &c.*	part-īrĭs or -īrĕ, &c.	} *thou dividest, &c.*	
Imperfect.	lŏqu-ēbăr,	*I was speaking.*	part-iēbăr,	*I was dividing.*	
Fut.-Simple.	lŏqu-ăr,	*I shall speak.*	part-iăr,	*I shall divide.*	
Perfect.	lŏcū-tŭs sum,	} *I have spoken, or I spoke.*	part ītŭs sum,	} *I have divided, or I divided.*	
Pluperfect.	lŏcū-tŭs ĕram,	} *I had spoken.*	part-ītŭs ĕram,	} *I had divided.*	
Fut.-Perfect.	lŏcū-tŭs ĕro,	} *I shall have spoken.*	part-ītŭs ĕro,	} *I shall have divided.*	
Present.	lŏqu-ăr,	*I may speak.*	part-iăr,	*I may divide.*	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
Imperfect.	lŏqu-ĕrĕr,	*I might speak.*	part-īrĕr,	*I might divide.*	
Perfect.	lŏcū-tŭs sim,	} *I may have spoken.*	part-ītŭs sim,	} *I may have divided.*	
Pluperfect.	lŏcū-tŭs essem,	} *I should have spoken.*	part-ītŭs, essem,	} *I should have divided.*	
Present.	lŏqu-ĕrĕ,	*speak thou.*	part-īrĕ,	*divide thou.*	IMPERATIVE.
Future.	lŏqu-ĭtŏr,	{ *thou shalt or must speak.*	part-ītŏr,	{ *thou shalt or must divide.*	
Pres. & Imp.	lŏqu-ī,	*to speak.*	part-īrī,	*to divide.*	INFINITIVE.
Perf. & Plup.	lŏcū-tŭs essĕ,	} *to have spoken.*	part-ītŭs essĕ,	} *to have divided.*	
Future.	lŏcū-tūrŭs essĕ,	{ *to be about to speak.*	part-ītūrŭs essĕ,	{ *to be about to divide.*	
Present.	lŏqu-ens,	*speaking.*	part-iens,	*dividing.*	PARTICIPLES.
Future.	lŏcū-tūrŭs,	*about to speak.*	part-ītūrŭs,	*about to divide.*	
Perfect.	lŏcū-tŭs,	*having spoken.*	part-ītŭs,	*having divided.*	
Gerundive.	lŏqu-endŭs,	{ *meet or fit to be spoken.*	part-iendŭs,	{ *meet or fit to be divided.*	
SUPINES.	lŏcū-tum,	*to speak.*	part-ītum,	*to divide.*	
	lŏcū-tū,	*to be spoken.*	part-ītū,	*to be divided.*	
GERUNDS.	lŏqu-endum, &c.	*speaking, &c.*	part-iendum, &c.	*dividing, &c.*	

The Gerundive, and occasionally the Perf. Participle, are the only forms in the Deponent that ever have a passive meaning.

Intransitive Deponents have no Supine in *u*.

Deponent Verbs of the Third Conjugation.

RULE 17.—Ūtor, fruor, vescor, fungor, govern the Ablative
Case : also pŏtior (4), *I gain-possession-of* (sometimes Gen.).

A.—1. Si morimur, corpus tantum moritur, non animus. 2. Dux
maximam adeptus est gloriam. 3. Cives, libertatem adepti, summa
laetitia fruentur. 4. Virtutis viam semper sequemur. 5. Cura ut
bene moriaris. 6. Audi multa, loquere pauca. 7. Per multos
annos pace usi sunt. 8. Lacte, caseo, carne vescuntur. 9. Munere
tuo bene fungĕre! 10. Aliquando oculi non funguntur munere suo.

1. By this death he obtained the freedom of his country. 2. By
this death he has obtained immortal glory. 3. It is a small-thing
to enjoy life ; it is a great-thing to discharge the duties of life. 4.
Take-care that you always follow (*subj.*) the path (way) of virtue.
5. You will enjoy all these good (things). 6. When the body has
died (*fut.-perf.*), then indeed shall we enjoy true life. 7. The
Britons used-to-feed (*imperfect*) on milk, flesh, (and) cheese. 8.
He used the greatest freedom in his oration. 9. Use riches, do not
abuse (them). 10. Follow us ; *we* will protect you.

B.—1. Sapienter utimini tempore. 2. Clarissimus hic dux con-
sulatu functus est. 3. Qui nimis cupit honores, raro eos adipiscitur.
4. Caesar duas legiones ad Labienum proficisci jubet, ipse in Mena-
piorum fines profectus est. 5. Bellum gerimus, ut pace fruamur.
6. Alexander immortalitatis gloriam adeptus est. 7. Augustus
omnes cives benigne alloquebatur. 8. Eodem die, quo Dianae
templum deflagravit, Alexander Magnus natus est. 9. Regulus
omnes cruciatus Poenorum fortiter passus est. 10. Hannibal mili-
tes adhortatus est, ut reminiscerentur pristinae virtutis suae, neve
(*and not*) liberorum obliviscerentur.

1. Thou hast wisely discharged thine office-of-consul. 2. Generals
often exhort their soldiers to (ut) remember their wives and children.
3. Remember (your) ancient valour, soldiers! 4. Caesar orders
these two legions to set out. 5. It is a small-thing to speak kindly
(benigne) to one's fellow-citizens. 6. That most famous (nobilis)
battle was fought near the lake Trasimenus. 7. Caesar himself set
out for (into) the territories of the Menapii. 8. Now we enjoy
peace ; shortly we shall carry-on war. 9. Regulus endured bravely
the utmost tortures. 10. On the same day (see Latin No. 8), on
which that most famous battle was fought, the poet Euripides was
born.

Deponent Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

1. Milites belli fortunam experiuntur. 2. Epaminondas nunquam
mentiebatur. 3. Senes multa experti sunt in longa vita. 4. Magnos
viros virtute metimur, non fortunā. 5. Voluptas blanditur sensibus

nostris. 6. Frons, oculi, vultus saepe mentiuntur. 7. Tarquinius Superbus potitus est regno. 8. Puniemini, quod mentiti estis. 9. Bellum civile in Italia orsum est. 10. Patres bona sua cum liberis partiuntur.

1. We shall try the fortune of war. 2. The Romans often tried the fortune of war. 3. It is extremely-base (*superl.*) to lie. 4. We will share our goods with our children. 5. There is no doubt that the enemy (*pl.*) have-obtained-possession-of the city. 6. Let us try our valour; let us obtain-possession-of the camp of the enemy. 7. There is no doubt that pleasure wins-upon our senses. 8. We ought to measure men by (their) virtue, not by (their) fortune. 9. Very many (people) measure all things by fortune. 10. The consuls will measure (out) lands to the soldiers.

XXIX.—PREPOSITIONS.

Of the Prepositions some govern the Accusative Case, some the Ablative, and some either the Accusative or Ablative.

I. *With the Accusative alone.*

ăd	to, near, against.	ŏb	{ in front of, on account of.
adversŭs adversum }	towards, against.	pĕnĕs	in the power of.
antĕ	before.	pĕr	through.
ăpŭd	at, near, among.	pōnĕ	behind.
cirĕā, circum	around.	post	after.
circĭtĕr	about.	praetĕr	beside.
cis & citrā	on this side of.	prŏpĕ	near.
contrā	against, contrary to.	proptĕr	on account of.
ergā	{ towards (only of the feelings).	sĕcundum	{ following, in accordance with.
extrā	outside of.	suprā	above.
infrā	below.	trans	across.
intĕr	between, among.	ultrā	on the farther side of.
intrā	inside of, within.	versŭs	towards (only of place
juxtā	near, hard by, next to.		or direction).

Versŭs is put after the word it governs.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

1. Exercitus hostium ad portas urbis venit. 2. Multi homines contra naturam vivunt. 3. Judices secundum leges hunc hominem puniverunt. 4. Multae aves ante hiemem in alias terras migrant. 5. Hac aestate extra urbem habitabimus. 6. Romani trans Rhenum multa oppida vastaverunt. 7. Hoc bellum intra paucos dies finitum erit. 8. Vir sapiens non propter metum legibus parebit. 9. Rhodanus primo occidentem versus fluit. 10. Equitatum praeter fluminis ripas contra hostem ducit.

1. Hannibal led (his) army to the gates of the city. 2. Who doubts that it is contrary-to virtue to lie? 3. All these things are in-the-power-of the consuls. 4. The general led his army towards the river. 5. Very many birds migrate into Britain in the summer. 6. The river Rhone flows through the lake. 7. A good judge will judge in-accordance-with the laws. 8. We (nos) shall dwell within the city, but you (vos) will depart into the country (agri). 9. The camp of Hannibal was near the walls of the city. 10. The nightingale migrates across the sea in winter.

II. *With the Ablative alone.*

ā, ăb, *or* abs	*by* or *from.*	ex *or* ē	*out of, from.*
absquĕ (rare)	*without.*	prae	*before, in comparison with.*
cōram	*in the presence of.*	prō	*before, for, on behalf of.*
cum	*with.* [*concerning.*	sĭnĕ	*without.*
dē	*down from, from,*	tĕnŭs	*reaching to, as far as.*

Tĕnŭs often takes the Gen. of plural nouns : it is put after the word it governs.

Exercise XXXIX.

1. Magnā cum voluptate avium cantum audivimus. 2. A Cicerone liber de senectute scriptus est. 3. Rhenus agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit. 4. Romani ex Gallia trans Rhenum veniunt. 5. Pro salute reipublicae et pro liberis pugnabimus. 6. Magna gloria nemini venit sine virtute. 7. Coram parentibus dixi quae scripseram. 8. Incolae urbis de pace legatos ad Caesarem miserunt. 9. Cato in senectute prae ceteris floruit. 10. Alexander omnes terras Oceano tenus vicit.

1. The songs of birds are heard with pleasure by all. 2. Cicero has written a very beautiful book concerning old age. 3. The sea separates Britain from Gaul. 4. He said these things in-the-presence-of all the soldiers. 5. The general marched (duco) his army out of the city. 6. Before all others Demosthenes and Cicero are the most renowned orators. 7. There is no true glory without virtue. 8. Along with thee (tecum *) we will depart into another land. 9. We are fighting for (pro) our country, for our wives, for our children. 10. He has said this in-the-presence-of his father.

III. *With the Accusative or Ablative.*

ĭn, *in* (abl.); *into* (of motion towards), *against* (acc.).	sŭper, *over, above;* usually acc.
	sŭbter, *beneath,* usually acc.
sŭb, *under* (of place *where,* abl.; of motion *towards,* acc.); of time, *towards* (acc.).	clam, *concealing (a thing) from; without the knowledge of,* acc. or, less frequently, abl.

---

* Mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, quōcum (quīcum), nōbiscum, vōbiscum, quĭbuscum, are used instead of cum me, cum te, &c.

Exercise XL.

1. Multi homines in varias terras itinera faciunt. 2. In magno flumine magni capiuntur pisces. 3. In hortum meum non venisti, in urbe autem fuisti. 4. Sub terra est magna rerum utilium multitudo. 5. Equitatus hostium sub noctem in castra venit. 6. Plurimae aves sub hiemem in alias terras volant. 7. Pompeius in Aegypto sub oculis uxoris et liberorum mortuus est. 8. Caesar ultra Indos proferet imperium. 9. Super tabernaculum Darii imago solis fulgebat. 10. Etiam sub marmore et auro habitat servitus.

1. We were coming into the city; you were dwelling in it. 2. The camp of Hannibal was under the walls of Rome. 3. We were walking in the garden. 4. It is not pleasant to all to dwell in the city. 5. Large fishes are not caught in a small river. 6. The nightingale does not always remain in the same lands. 7. They slay Pompey beneath the very (ipse) eyes of his wife. 8. The Romans will extend their empire beyond the boundaries of Europe. 9. Beneath the earth (there) are many beautiful (say, many *and* beautiful) things. 10. Towards (sub) winter these birds migrate into other lands.

XXX.—Adverbs.

Adverbs are formed from Adjectives, by means of the terminations -ē and -tĕr. Adverbs derived from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions end in -ē, as doctē, *learnedly*, from doctŭs. Adverbs derived from Adjectives of the Third Declension end in -tĕr, as fortĭtĕr, *bravely*, from fortĭs.

The *Comparative* of the Adverb is the same as the Neuter Nominative Singular of the Comparative Adjective, and consequently ends in ĭŭs: as, fortius, *more bravely*.

The *Superlative* of the Adverb is formed from the Superlative of the Adjective by changing the final syllable of the latter into ē: as, fortissĭmē, *most bravely*.

ADJECTIVES.		ADVERBS.			
		Positive.		*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
doctus	*learned.*	doctē	*learnedly.*	doctius	doctissĭmē
lībĕr	*free.*	lībĕrē	*freely.*	lībĕrius	lĭberrĭmē
pulchĕr	*beautiful.*	pulchrē	*beautifully.*	pulchrius	pulcherrĭmē
fortis	*brave.*	fortĭtĕr	*bravely.*	fortius	fortissĭmē
sĭmĭlis	*like.*	sĭmĭlĭtĕr	*alike.*	sĭmĭlius	sĭmillĭmē
ācĕr	*keen.*	ācrĭtĕr	*keenly.*	ācrius	ācerrĭmē
fēlix	*lucky.*	fēlĭcĭtĕr	*luckily.*	fēlĭcius	fēlĭcissĭmē
prūdens	*prudent.*	prūdentĕr	*prudently.*	prūdentius	prūdentissĭmē

Adverbs derived from Adjectives which are compared irregularly follow their formation in the Comparative and Superlative : as, făcĭlis, *easy*, Superlative făcillĭmus, with corresponding adverb făcillĭmē, *very easily ;* magnĭfĭcus, *magnificent*, Superlative magnĭfĭcentissĭmus, with corresponding adverb magnĭfĭcentissĭmē, *most magnificently.* The following are the principal Adverbs which have irregularities of formation :—

Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
běnĕ	*well,*	mĕlĭus	optĭmē
mălē	*badly, ill.*	pējus	pessĭmē
multum	*much.*	plūs	plūrĭmum
[magnŏpĕre]	*greatly.*	măgĭs	maxĭmē
părum	*little.*	mĭnus	mĭnĭmē
paulum, -o	*a little.*		
prŏpĕ	*near.*	prŏpius	proxĭmē
[prae]	*before.*	prĭus	prīmum

EXERCISE XLI.

A.—1. Germani cum Romanis fortiter pugnaverunt.   2. Milites audacius resistere ac fortius pugnare incipiunt.   3. Miles hostibus fortissime restitit.   4. Galli Italiam longe lateque vastaverunt. 5. Cicero Roscium audacissime defendit.   6. Qui male fecerunt ii judicem timere debent.   7. Deus mundum sapientissime regit. 8. Leones facilius vincuntur quam tigres.   9. Nunquam jucundius viximus quam nunc.   10. Orationes Desmosthenis ab Atheniensibus attentissime audiebantur.

1. Fight bravely, soldiers ; ye are fighting for your country. 2. Now we shall live most delightfully.   3. The Germans fought very bravely.   4. Hear the speech more attentively, citizens !   5. The Gauls laid waste the lands (ager) of the Romans far and wide. 6. Ye have acted most wisely, citizens !   7. Who doubts that the soldiers have fought most bravely ?   8. In this matter (res) Cicero acted most prudently.   9. The Gauls were not easily conquered. 10. Who doubts that God rules the world most wisely ?

B.—1. Non satis est vivere, debemus bene vivere.   2. Multum prodest juventuti libros veterum legere.   3. Eo tempore Cicero maxime omnium reipublicae profuit.   4. Quis reipublicae plus quam Cicero profuit ?   5. Orator est (*he is*) magis quam poeta.   6. Hannibal, dux Poenorum, proxime ad urbem accessit.   7. Primum Latinam linguam discere incipiam.   8. Propius ad portas urbis accessit Hannibal.   9. Pessime omnium fecisti ! bonos cives perdidisti ; improbos laudavisti.   10. Prius linguam Latinam quam Graecam didicit.

1. It is easy to write ; it is not easy to write well.   2. (He) who does not read attentively, reads ill.   3. It was difficult to approach near to the gates.   4. Hannibal approached very near to (ad) the

gates of Rome. 5. There is no doubt that you have acted very-ill. 6. You have acted worse than all the others. 7. It is not a great-thing to write much, it is a very-great-thing to write well. 8. First of all (things) reverence the celestial gods. 9. We have lived most pleasantly. 10. There is no doubt that to write well is extremely-difficult (superl.).

XXXI.—IRREGULAR VERBS.

1. Possum, pŏtuī, possĕ, *to be able; can.*

[**Possum** is compounded of **pot** (pŏtis, *able*) and sum, *I am*, the *t* in *pot* being changed into *s* before another *s*.]

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
1. *Present.*		**4. *Perfect.***	
S. Pos-sum	pos-sim	*S.* pŏt-uī	pŏt-uĕrim
pŏt-ĕs	pos-sīs	pŏt-uistī	pŏt-uĕris
pŏt-est	pos-sĭt	pŏt-uĭt	pŏt-uĕrĭt
P. pos-sŭmŭs	pos-sīmŭs	*P.* pŏt-uĭmŭs	pŏt-uĕrimŭs
pŏt-estĭs	pos-sītĭs	pŏt-uistĭs	pŏt-uĕritĭs
pos-sunt	pos-sint	pŏt-uĕrunt (uĕrĕ)	pŏt-uĕrint
2. *Imperfect.*		**5. *Pluperfect.***	
S. pŏt-ĕram	pos-sem	*S.* pŏt-uĕram	pŏt-uissem
pŏt-ĕrās	pos-sēs	pŏt-uĕrās	pŏt-uissēs
pŏt-ĕrăt	pos-sĕt	pŏt-uĕrăt	pŏt-uissĕt
P. pŏt-ĕrāmŭs	pos-sēmŭs	*P.* pŏt-uĕrāmŭs	pŏt-uissēmŭs
pŏt-ĕrātĭs	pos-sētĭs	pŏt-uĕrātĭs	pŏt-uissētĭs
pŏt-ĕrant	pos-sent	pŏt-uĕrant	pŏt-uissent
3. *Future-Simple.*		**6. *Future-Perfect.***	
S. pŏt-ĕro	(wanting.)	*S.* pŏt-uĕro	(wanting.)
pŏt-ĕris		pŏt-uĕris	
pŏt-ĕrĭt		pŏt-uĕrĭt	
P. pŏt-ĕrĭmŭs		*P.* pŏt-uĕrimŭs	
pŏt-ĕrĭtĭs		pŏt-uĕritĭs	
pŏt-ĕrunt		pŏt-uĕrint	

INFINITIVE.

Pres. and Imp.—possĕ. *Perf. and Plup.*—pŏtuissĕ. *Future*—wanting. (Participle wanting : pŏtens being used only as Adjective, *powerful.*)

EXERCISE XLII.

1. Ego possum legere, tu potes scribere, soror nostra potest acu pingere. 2. Tyrannus animum sapientis infringere non poterat. 3. Cur heri nobiscum ambulare non poteras? 4. Cura, ut possis aequo animo vitam relinquere. 5. Nemo dubitat, quin milites urbem defendere possint. 6. Mores tyranni ei amicos parare non

potuerunt.   7. Non dubitamus, quin urbs a civibus defendi
potuerit.   8. Vix Caesar milites e castris educere potuerat, quum
hostes impetum fecerunt.   9. Quid melius hominibus dari potuit
quam ratio ?   10. Virtutis splendor nunquam obscurari poterit.
   1. We are all able to be serviceable to (our) friends.   2. You will
not be able to be a friend to all.   3. Hannibal was not able to
obtain-possession-of the city.   4. Cornelia was able to train her
sons most wisely.   5. No one doubted that the soldiers were able to
defend the city.   6. We cannot all be kings ; we can all be good
citizens.   7. You will not be able to read Sallust easily : he is a
difficult author.   8. Caesar was able to conquer (his) enemies ; he
was not able to conquer envy.   9. Those wicked men will not be
able to leave life with even mind.   10. Restrain (thy) tongue ; so
thou wilt be able to restrain also thy temper (animus).

2. **Vŏlo, vŏluī, vellĕ,**   *to be willing, to wish.*
3. **Nōlo, nōluī, nollĕ,**   *to be unwilling, not to wish* [non vŏlo].
4. **Mālo, māluī, mallĕ,** *to be more willing, to prefer, to have rather*
                                        [măgĭs or măgĕ vŏlo].

Indicative.

1. *Present.*

Sing.	Vŏlo	Nōlo	Mălo
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
Plur.	vŏlŭmŭs	nōlŭmŭs	mālŭmŭs
	vultĭs	nōn vultĭs	māvultĭs
	vŏlunt	nōlunt	mālunt

2. *Imperfect.*

Sing.	vŏl-ēbam	nōl-ēbam	māl-ēbam
	vŏl-ēbās	nōl-ēbās	māl-ēbās
	vŏl-ēbăt	nōl-ēbăt	māl-ēbăt
Plur.	vŏl-ēbāmŭs	nōl-ēbāmŭs	māl-ēbāmŭs
	vŏl-ēbātĭs	nōl-ēbātĭs	māl-ēbātĭs
	vŏl-ēbant	nōl-ēbant	māl-ēbānt

3. *Future-Simple.*

Sing.	vŏl-am	nōl-am	māl-am
	vŏl-ēs	nōl-ēs	māl-ēs
	vŏl-ĕt	nōl-ĕt	māl-ĕt
Plur.	vŏl-ēmŭs	nōl-ēmŭs	māl-ēmŭs
	vŏl-ētĭs	nōl-ētĭs	māl-ētĭs
	vŏl-ent	nōl-ent	māl-ent

4. *Perfect.*

Sing.	vŏl-uī	nōl-uī	māl-uī
	vŏl-uistī	nōl-uistī	māl-uistī
	vŏl-uĭt	nōl-uĭt	māl-uĭt
Plur.	vŏl-uĭmŭs	nōl-uĭmŭs	māl-uĭmŭs
	vŏl-uistĭs	nōl-uistĭs	māl-uistĭs
	vŏl-uērunt *or* -uĕrĕ	nōl-uērunt *or* -uĕrĕ	māl-uērunt *or* -uĕrĕ

5. *Pluperfect.*

Sing. vŏl-uĕram	nōl-uĕram	māl-uĕram
vŏl-uĕrās	nōl-uĕrās	māl-uĕrās
vŏl-uĕrăt	nōl-uĕrăt	māl-uĕrăt
Plur. vŏl-uĕrāmŭs	nōl-uĕrāmŭs	māl-uĕrāmŭs
vŏl-uĕrātĭs	nōl-uĕrātĭs	māl-uĕrātĭs
vŏl-uĕrant	nōl-uĕrant	māl-uĕrant

6. *Future-Perfect.*

Sing. vŏl-uĕro	nōl-uĕro	māl-uĕro
vŏl-uĕris	nōl-uĕris	māl-uĕris
vŏl-uĕrĭt	nōl-uĕrĭt	māl-uĕrĭt
Plur. vŏl-uĕrimŭs	nōl-uĕrimŭs	māl-uĕrimŭs
vŏl-uĕritĭs	nōl-uĕritĭs	māl-uĕritĭs
vŏl-uĕrint	nōl-uĕrint	māl-uĕrint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. *Present.*

Sing. vĕl-im	nōl-im	māl-im
vĕl-īs	nōl-īs	māl-īs
vĕl-ĭt	nōl-ĭt	māl-ĭt
Plur. vĕl-īmŭs	nōl-īmŭs	māl-īmŭs
vĕl-ītĭs	nōl-ītĭs	māl-ītĭs
vĕl-int	nōl-int	māl-int

2. *Imperfect.*

Sing. vel-lem	nol-lem	mal-lem
vel-lēs	nol-lēs	mal-lēs
vel-lĕt	nol-lĕt	mal-lĕt
Plur. vel-lēmŭs	nol-lēmŭs	mal-lēmŭs
vel-lētĭs	nol-lētĭs	mal-lētĭs
vel-lent	nol-lent	mal-lent

3. *Perfect.*

Sing. vŏl-uĕrim	nōl-uĕrim	māl-uĕrim
vŏl-uĕris	nōl-uĕris	māl-uĕris
vŏl-uĕrĭt	nōl-uĕrĭt	māl-uĕrĭt
Plur. vŏl-uĕrimŭs	nōl-uĕrimŭs	māl-uĕrimŭs
vŏl-uĕritĭs	nōl-uĕritĭs	māl-uĕritĭs
vŏl-uĕrint	nōl-uĕrint	māl-uĕrint

4. *Pluperfect.*

Sing. vŏl-uissem	nōl-uissem	māl-uissem
vŏl-uissēs	nōl-uissēs	māl-uissēs
vŏl-uissĕt	nōl-uissĕt	māl-uissĕt
Plur. vŏl-uissēmŭs	nōl-uissēmŭs	māl-uissēmŭs
vŏl-uissētĭs	nōl-uissētĭs	māl-uissētĭs
vŏl-uissent	nōl-uissent	māl-uissent

IMPERATIVE.

Present.

(wanting.)	nōl-ī		(wanting.)
	nōl-ītĕ		

Future.

(wanting.)	nōl-īto	nōl-ītōtĕ	(wanting.)
	nōl-īto	nōl-unto	

N.B.—The Imperative of nolo is very often used to express a prohibition : as, nōlī crēdĕrĕ, *do not believe* (lit. *be unwilling to believe*).

INFINITIVE.

Pres. and Imperf.	vel-lĕ	nōl-lĕ	māl-lĕ
Perf. and Pluperf.	vŏl-uissĕ	nōl-uissĕ	māl-uissĕ

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

vŏl-ens	nōl-ens	(wanting.)

GERUNDS.

vŏlendum, -dī, -dō	nōlendum, -dī, -dō	(wanting.)

EXERCISE XLIII.

A.—1. Ego volo legere, tu vis scribere, frater vult pingere. 2. Ego domi sedere nolo, tu ambulare non vis. 3. Tu ambulare mavis quam domi sedere. 4. Soror saltare mavult quam ambulare. 5. Oro te, ut me comitari malis. 6. Dic, cur me comitari nolis. 7. Orabam te, ut mecum ludere velles. 8. Nesciebam, cur me comitari nolles. 9. Si beati esse volumus, sorte nostra contenti esse debemus. 10. Si vis amari, ama !

1. We do not wish to walk in the fields; we prefer to remain at home. 2. We wished to read, you wished to write, (our) brother wished to paint. 3. I knew-not (how) to dance; I preferred to write and to read. 4. I wished to read; but my sister wished to sing and to dance. 5. If you wish to be happy, imitate the examples of good men. 6. Alexander wished to extend his empire beyond the Indi. 7. We do not all obtain those-things which we wish. 8. I had-rather (*pres.*) fight (*inf.*) against enemies than against envy. 9. Pompey was unwilling to depart from the city. 10. I entreat you to (ut) be willing to accompany me.

B.—1. Ego tibi prodesse malo quam obesse. 2. Non dubito, quin mihi prodesse malis quam obesse. 3. Non dubitabam, quin prodesse mihi malles quam obesse. 4. Amicus mavult diligi quam metui. 5. Secundum naturam volent vivere. 6. Cato esse quam videri bonus malebat. 7. Boni esse mavultis quam nobiles et divites. 8. Pythagoras Apollini hostiam immolare noluit. 9. Nolite dolori nimis indulgere. 10. Amici eadem velle debent.

1. I prefer to be good (rather) than to seem (so). 2. Do not *
deceive; do not * lie; those things (res) very greatly injure friend-
ship. 3. Epaminondas was unwilling to lie. 4. You wish the
same (things) which I (wish). 5. We had-rather (*pres.*) be (*inf.*)
useful to our country than be (*inf.*) rich. 6. A good man will
prefer to be loved (rather) than to be feared. 7. I had-rather
(*pres.*) be loved by true friends than be rich. 8. The ancient
Romans sacrificed very many victims to the gods. 9. Pythagoras
was unwilling to indulge anger: he preferred to restrain it. 10. Do
not* follow bad examples, my son!

* Say, *be unwilling to* . . . . Compare No. 9 of the Latin sentences.

5. Fĕro, tŭlī, ferrĕ, lātum, *to bear, bring, carry, endure.*

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
1. *Present.*		**4. *Perfect.***	
S. Fĕr-o	fĕr-am	*S.* tŭl-ī	tŭl-ĕrim
fer-s	fĕr-ās	tŭl-istī	tŭl-ĕris
fer-t	fĕr-ăt	tŭl-ĭt	tŭl-ĕrĭt
P. fĕr-ĭmŭs	fĕr-āmŭs	*P.* tŭl-ĭmŭs	tŭl-ĕrimŭs
fer-tĭs	fĕr-ātĭs	tŭl-istĭs	tŭl-ĕritĭs
fĕr-unt	fĕr-ant	tŭl-ērunt *or* ērĕ	tŭl-ĕrint
2. *Imperfect.*		**5. *Pluperfect.***	
S. fĕr-ēbam	fer-rem	*S.* tŭl-ĕram	tŭl-issem
fĕr-ēbās	fer-rēs	tŭl-ĕrās	tŭl-issēs
fĕr-ēbăt	fer-rĕt	tŭl-ĕrăt	tŭl-issĕt
P. fĕr-ēbāmŭs	fer-rēmŭs	*P.* tŭl-ĕrāmŭs	tŭl-issēmŭs
fĕr-ēbātĭs	fer-rētĭs	tŭl-ĕrātĭs	tŭl-issētĭs
fĕr-ēbant	fer-rent	tŭl-ĕrant	tŭl-issent
3. *Future-Simple.*		**6. *Future-Perfect.***	
S. fĕr-am	(wanting.)	*S.* tŭl-ĕro	(wanting.)
fĕr-ēs		tŭl-ĕris	
fĕr-ĕt		tŭl-ĕrĭt	
P. fĕr-ēmŭs		*P.* tŭl-ĕrimŭs	
fĕr-ētĭs		tŭl-ĕritĭs	
fĕr-ent		tŭl-ĕrint	

IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
Present.	fĕr	*Present.*	fĕr-ens
	fer-tĕ	*Future.*	lātūrŭs (ă, um)
Future.	fer-to		
	fer-to	SUPINES.	
	fer-tōtĕ		lātum
	fĕr-unto		lātū

INFINITIVE.		GERUNDS.	
Pres. and Imp.	fer-rĕ	*Acc.*	fĕr-endum
Perf. and Plup.	tŭl-issĕ		&c.
Future.	lātūrŭs essĕ		

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
1. Present.		*4. Perfect.*	

1. Present.

S. fĕr-ŏr   fĕr-ăr
    fer-rĭs, fer-rĕ   fĕr-ārĭs, -ārĕ
    fer-tŭr   fĕr-ātŭr
P. fĕr-ĭmŭr   fĕr-āmŭr
    fĕr-ĭmĭnī   fĕr-āmĭnī
    fĕr-untŭr   fĕr-antŭr

2. Imperfect.

S. fĕr-ēbăr   fer-rĕr
    fĕr-ēbārĭs, -ārĕ   fer-rērĭs, -ērĕ
    fĕr-ēbātŭr   fer-rētŭr
P. fĕr-ēbāmŭr   fer-rēmŭr
    fĕr-ēbāmĭnī   fer-rēmĭnī
    fĕr-ēbantŭr   fer-rentŭr

3. Future-Simple.

S. fĕr-ăr   (wanting.)
    fĕr-ērĭs, -ērĕ
    fĕr-ētŭr
P. fĕr-ēmŭr
    fĕr-ēmĭnī
    fĕr-entŭr

4. Perfect.

S. lātŭs sum   lātŭs sim
    lātŭs ĕs   lātŭs sīs
    lātŭs est   lātŭs sĭt
P. lātī sŭmŭs   lātī sīmŭs
    lātī estĭs   lātī sītĭs
    lātī sunt   lātī sint

5. Pluperfect.

S. lātŭs ĕram   lātŭs essem
    lātŭs ĕrās   lātŭs essēs
    lātŭs ĕrăt   lātŭs essĕt
P. lātī ĕrāmŭs   lātī essēmŭs
    lātī ĕrātĭs   lātī essētĭs
    lātī ĕrănt   lātī essent

6. Future-Perfect.

S. lātŭs ĕro   (wanting.)
    lātŭs ĕrĭs
    lātŭs ĕrĭt
P. lātī ĕrĭmŭs
    lātī ĕrĭtĭs
    lātī ĕrunt

IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
Present.	fer-rĕ	*Pres. and Imp.*	fer-rī
	fĕr-ĭmĭnī	*Perf. and Plup.*	lātŭs essĕ
		Future.	lātum īrī
Future.	fer-tŏr	PARTICIPLES.	
	fer-tŏr	*Perfect.*	lātŭs (ă, um)
	fĕr-untŏr	*Gerundive.*	fĕr-endŭs (ă, um)

The Compounds of fĕro are conjugated in the same way, *e.g.* :

affĕro	(ad)	attŭlī	allātum	afferrĕ	*bring (to).*
aufĕro	(ab)	abstŭlī	ablātum	auferrĕ	*carry away.*
confĕro	(cum)	contŭlī	collātum	conferrĕ	*bring together*
effĕro	(ex)	extŭlī	ēlātum	efferrĕ	*carry out.*
infĕro	(in)	intŭlī	illātum	inferrĕ	*carry into.*
offĕro	(ob)	obtŭlī	oblātum	offerrĕ	*present.*
perfĕro	(per)	pertŭlī	perlātum	perferrĕ	*bear through,*
praefĕro	(prae)	praetŭlī	praelātum	praeferrĕ	*prefer.* [*endure*
prōfĕro	(pro)	prōtŭlī	prōlātum	prōferrĕ	*extend.*
rĕfĕro	{ (red, re)	{ rētŭlī rettŭlī }	rĕlātum	rĕferrĕ	*bring back.*

Exercise XLIV.

1. Senectus affert prudentiam. 2. Laudo vos, quod miseris atque inopibus auxilium fertis. 3. Ferre laborem consuetudo docet. 4. Nihil potest praeferri virtuti. 5. Curabamus, ut vobis auxilium ferremus. 6. Rex curabat, ut inopibus civibus auxilium ferretur. 7. Non omnis ager qui seritur fert fruges. 8. Agricola paupertatis onus patienter tulit. 9. Fer patienter laborem. 10. Milites in itineribus multas aerumnas pertulerunt.

1. Socrates bore hardships most patiently. 2. Learn thou to bear well pleasure and pain. 3. Cato bore old age excellently-well (*superl.* of bene). 4. There is no doubt that old age brings many sorrows with it (secum). 5. Caesar ordered two cohorts to bring assistance to the cavalry. 6. I have learned to bring assistance to the wretched. 7. A sailor ought to be able to bear patiently the hardships of the sea. 8. A good man is able to bear with even mind the hardships of life. 9. Who can endure the discourse of this unlearned man? 10. The Romans knew (how) to bear with even mind the greatest disasters.

---

6. Ĕo, īvī or ĭī, īrĕ, ĭtum, *to go*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. *Present.*

		4. *Perfect.*	
S. Ĕ-o	e-am	*S.* ĭ-vī *or* ĭ-ī	ĭ-vĕrim *or* ĭ-ĕrim
ĭ-s	e-ās	ĭ-vistī &c.	ĭ-vĕris &c.
ĭ-t	e-ăt	ĭ-vĭt &c.	ĭ-vĕrĭt &c.
P. ĭ-mŭs	e-āmŭs	*P.* ĭ-vĭmŭs &c.	ĭ-vĕrimŭs &c.
ĭ-tĭs	e-ātĭs	ĭ-vistĭs &c.	ĭ-vĕritĭs &c.
e-unt	e-ant	ĭ-vērunt &c.	ĭ-vĕrint &c.
		or ĭ-vērĕ	

2. *Imperfect.*

		5. *Pluperfect.*	
S. ĭ-bam	ĭ-rem	*S.* ĭ-vĕram *or*	ĭ-vissem, ĭ-issem,
ĭ-bās	ĭ-rēs	ĭ-ĕram	*or* i-ssem
ĭ-băt	ĭ-rĕt	ĭ-vĕrās &c.	ĭ-vissēs &c.
P. ĭ-bāmŭs	ĭ-rēmŭs	ĭ-vĕrăt &c.	ĭ-vissĕt &c.
ĭ-bātĭs	ĭ-rētĭs	*P.* ĭ-vĕrāmŭs &c.	ĭ-vissēmŭs &c.
ĭ-bant	ĭ-rent	ĭ-vĕrātĭs &c.	ĭ-vissētĭs &c.
		ĭ-vĕrant &c.	ĭ-vissent &c.

6. *Future-Simple.*

		6. *Future-Perfect.*	
S. ĭ-bo	(wanting.)	*S.* ĭ-vĕro *or* ĭ-ĕro	(wanting.)
ĭ-bĭs		ĭ-vĕris &c.	
ĭ-bĭt		ĭ-vĕrĭt &c.	
P. ĭ-bĭmŭs		*P.* ĭ-vĕrimŭs &c.	
ĭ-bĭtĭs		ĭ-vĕritĭs &c.	
ĭ-bunt		ĭ-vĕrint &c.	

IMPERATIVE.

Present.	ī	*Future.*	ĭ-to
	ĭ-tĕ		ĭ-to
			ĭ-tōtĕ
			ĕ-unto

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
Pres. and Imp.	ĭ-rĕ [issĕ	*Present.*	ĭ-ens (*Gen.* ĕ-untĭs)
Perf. and Plup.	ĭ-vissĕ, ĭissĕ, *or*	*Future.*	ĭ-tūrŭs (ă, um)
Future.	ĭ-tūrus essĕ		

GERUND.		SUPINE.	
Acc.	ĕ-undum, &c.		ĭ-tum

The Compounds of *ĕo*, with *quĕo, I am able*, and *nĕquĕo, I am unable*, are conjugated in the same way. The following are the principal :—

ăb-ĕo,	-ĭi (rarely -īvi),	-ĭtum,	*to go away.*
ăd-eo,	,,	,,	*to go to.*
cŏ-eo,	,,	,,	*to join together.*
ex-eo,	,,	,,	*to go out.*
ĭn-eo, intrŏ-eo,	,,	,,	*to go into, enter; come on* (ĭnĕo).
intĕr-eo,	,,	,,	*to perish.*
ŏb-eo,	,,	,,	*to meet; esp. to meet death ; to die.*
pĕr-eo,	,,	,,	*to perish.*
prae-eo,	,,	,,	*to go before.*
praetĕr-eo,	,,	,,	*to pass by.*
rĕd-eo,	,,	,,	*to return.*
sŭb-eo,	,,	,,	*to go up to.*
trans-eo,	,,	,,	*to cross over, pass through.*
vēn-eo (=vēnum eo),	,,	,,	*to go for sale, be sold.*

EXERCISE XLV.

1. Ego abeo, tu ex itinere redis.   2. Post mortem corpus interit, animus nunquam interibit.   3. Cum animi nostri ex corporibus exierint, non interibunt.   4. Hac pugnā atrocissimā multi et fortissimi milites perierunt.   5. Curare debemus, ne vitam ignave transeamus.   6. Milites e castris redeuntes occisi sunt.   7. Socrates aequo atque hilari animo diem supremum obiit.   8. Magna pars militum fame et frigore interiit.   9. Alpes nemo unquam ante Hannibalem cum exercitu transierat.   10. Alexander adire ad Jovis oraculum statuit.

1. Very many (persons) pass through (*transeo*) life indolently.   2. Let us go-out (*pres. subj.*) from the camp; let us return (*pres. subj.*) into the city.   3. Caesar threw a bridge over the river, in-order-that his soldiers might cross on foot (pedibus).   4. A brave man will meet his last day with even mind.   5. Fifteen thousand of the Romans perished in that sanguinary battle.   6. We ought all to be able to meet (our) last day with even mind.   7. After the battle very many perished of hunger (*abl.*) and cold (*abl.*).   8. Let us go-to (*pres. subj.*) the temples of the gods.   9. I pass-by very many (things) in silence.   10. Italy is fortified by the Alps, (those) most lofty mountains, which an army will not easily cross-over.

7. Fīo, factŭs sum, fĭĕrī, *to become* or *be made, to happen, to be done.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
1. Present.			*3. Future.*	
S. Fī-o	fī-am	*S.* fī-am	(wanting.)	
fī-s	fī-ās	fī-ēs		
fī-t *or* fĭ-t	fī-ăt	fī-ĕt		
P. [fī-mŭs]	fī-āmŭs	*P.* fī-ēmŭs		
[fī-tĭs]	fī-ātĭs	fī-ētĭs		
fī-unt	fī-ant	fī-ent		
2. Imperfect.			*4. Perfect.*	
S. fī-ēbam	fī-ĕrem	factŭs sum, &c.	factŭs sim, &c.	
fī-ēbās	fī-ĕrēs			
fī-ēbăt	fī-ĕrĕt	*5. Pluperfect.*		
P. fī-ēbāmŭs	fī-ĕrēmŭs	factŭs ēram, &c.	factŭs essem, &c.	
fī-ēbātĭs	fī-ĕrētĭs			
fī-ēbant	fī-ĕrent	*6. Future-Perfect.*		
		factŭs ēro, &c.	(wanting.)	

IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
Present.	fī, fī-tŏ	*Pres. and Imp.*	fĭ-ĕrī
PARTICIPLES.		*Perf. and Plup.*	factŭs essĕ
Perfect.	factŭs (ă, um)		
Gerundive.	făciendŭs (ă, um)	*Future.*	factum īrī

8. Ĕdo, ĕdī, ēsum, ĕdĕrĕ or **essĕ,** *to eat.*

This Verb has the following contracted forms :

Pres. Indic.		*Imperf. Subj.*	
2 Sing.	ĕdĭs *or* ēs	*1 Sing.*	ĕdĕrem *or* essem
3 ,,	ĕdĭt *or* est	*2 ,,*	ĕdĕrēs *or* essēs, &c.
2 Plur.	ĕdĭtĭs *or* estĭs.		

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. 2 Sing.	ĕdĕ *or* ēs	*Plur.* ĕdĭtĕ *or* estĕ
Fut. 2 ,,	ĕdĭto *or* esto	*Plur.* ĕdĭtōtĕ *or* estōtĕ
3 ,,	ĕdĭto *or* esto	
Pres. Inf.	ĕdĕrĕ *or* essĕ	

Also there are two forms of the *Pres. Subj.,* ēdam, ēdās, &c., and ĕdim, ĕdĭs, &c.

EXERCISE XLVI.

N.B.—**Fīo,** like *sum,* takes the same case after it as before it.

1. Nemo fit casu bonus. 2. Saepe ex inimico amicus fieri potest. 3. Senectute prudentior fis. 4. Nemo ignaviā immortalis factus est. 5. Deus dixit: fiat mundus, et mundus factus est. 6. Apud veteres Romanos ex agricolis fiebant consules. 7. Hoc Themistoclis consilio factum est. 8. Onus quod bene fertur leve fit. 9. Quod factum est, infectum fieri non potest. 10. Qui noxium adjuvabit, is fiet socius culpae.

1. No one becomes altogether-base (*superl.*) by chance. 2. This heavy burden was made light by patience. 3. There is no doubt that the heaviest griefs become lighter by patience. 4. Bear these things, citizens: (things) which have been done cannot become undone. 5. In time our soldiers will become more daring. 6. Two consuls were appointed (made). 7. There is no doubt that the danger has become more severe with time. 8. In the winter the days become shorter and the nights longer. 9. The Athenians had become the allies of the Romans. 10. Do not (noli) assist a guilty-person; in-that-way you will become a partner in (= of) his fault.

9. *Semi-Deponent Verbs.*

Some Intransitive Verbs form their Perfect tenses after the manner of Passives, and are called Semi-Deponents. They are the following :—

audeo, ausus sum, audēre	*to dare, venture.*
fīdo, fīsus sum, fīdĕre (usu. with *Dat.*) (with its compounds confīdo, *I trust;* diffīdo, *I distrust*).	*to trust.*
gaudeo, gāvīsus sum, gaudēre	*to rejoice.*
sŏleo, sŏlĭtus sum, sŏlēre	*to be accustomed.*

Also cēno (cae-), *to sup* or *dine,* has *Perf. Part.* cēnātus, *having supped,* and jūro, *to swear,* jūrātus, *having sworn.*

> NOTE.—The Future Infinitive of these Verbs is formed as in the Active voice : ausūrūs esse, &c.

EXERCISE XLVII.

1. Nonnullae aves prope ad domicilia hominum accedere audent. 2. Optimus ille vir mori ausus est; non autem mentiri. 3. Canes solebant currentes bibere in flumine Nilo. 4. Jam cenati, in horto ambulabamus. 5. Maxime gavisi sunt cives quod urbs servata erat. 6. In has leges jurati, debetis jusjurandum vestrum conservare. 7. Solitus est Solon aliquid quotidie addiscere. 8. Multum gavisi sunt Romani quod Poenos navali proelio vicerant. 9. Caesar confisus est fortunae suae. 10. Gavisus est consul quod illum tam fidelem socium reppererat.

1. The ancient Britons were accustomed to clothe themselves with skins. 2. Some animals are accustomed to dwell both (et) in the water and on (in) land. 3. The Helvetii were accustomed to receive hostages, not to give (them). 4. The Romans rejoiced when Cicero returned to the city. 5. The general trusted to himself. 6. Dare to die, citizens! 7. When you return (*fut.-perf.*), we shall already have dined. 8. All the magistrates had sworn to (*in* with *acc.*) the laws. 9. We ought to rejoice because the war has been brought-to-an-end (finio). 10. The whole city rejoiced that (quod) the conspiracy had been discovered.

XXXII.—Impersonal Verbs.

Impersonal Verbs are such as cannot have a Personal subject (I, thou, he), and are used only in the Third Person Singular.

The following are the principal Impersonal Verbs :—

I. Verbs which denote Mental States.

dĕcĕt, dĕcuĭt, dĕcērĕ	*it is seemly, becomes.*
dēdĕcĕt, dēdĕcuĭt, dēdĕcērĕ-	*it is unseemly, unbe-*
lĭbĕt, lĭbuĭt & lĭbĭtum est, lĭbērĕ	*it pleases.* [*coming.*
lĭcĕt, lĭcuĭt & lĭcĭtum est, lĭcērĕ	*it is lawful, it is allowed.*
lĭquĕt, lĭquērĕ	*it is clear.*
mĭsĕrĕt *or* mĭsĕrētŭr, mĭsĕrĭtum est, mĭsĕrērĕ	*it excites pity.*
ŏportĕt, ŏportuĭt, ŏportērĕ	*it behoves; (one) ought.*
pĭgĕt, pĭguĭt & pĭgĭtum est, pĭgērĕ	*it vexes.*
plăcĕt, plăcuĭt *or* plăcĭtum est, plăcērĕ	*it pleases.*
paenĭtĕt (poe-), paenĭtuĭt, paenĭtērĕ	*it causes sorrow, repents.*
pŭdĕt, pŭduĭt *or* pŭdĭtum est, pŭdērĕ	*it shames.*
taedĕt, taeduĭt *or* pertaesum est, taedērĕ	*it disgusts, wearies.*

The Persons are expressed in the following way :—

Indicative.

Present.	pŭdĕt mē	*it shames me,* or *I am ashamed.*
"	pŭdĕt tē	*it shames thee,* or *thou art ashamed.*
	pŭdĕt eum	*it shames him,* or *he is ashamed.*
	pŭdĕt nōs	*it shames us,* or *we are ashamed.*
	pŭdĕt vōs	*it shames you,* or *ye are ashamed.*
	pŭdĕt eōs	*it shames them,* or *they are ashamed.*
Imperfect.	pŭdēbăt mē, tē, eum, nōs, vōs, eōs, *it was shaming me, thee, him, us,* &c., or *I, thou, he, we,* &c., *were being ashamed.*	
Fut.-Simp.	pŭdēbĭt mē, tē, eum, nōs, vōs, eōs, *it will shame me, thee, him, us,* &c., or *I, thou, he, we,* &c., *shall be ashamed.*	
Perfect.	pŭduĭt mē, tē, eum, &c., *I, thou, he,* &c., *was ashamed.*	
Pluperfect.	pŭduĕrăt mē, tē, eum, &c., *I, thou, he,* &c., *had been ashamed.*	
Fut.-Perf.	pŭduĕrĭt mē, tē, eum, &c., *I, thou, he,* &c., *will have been ashamed.*	

Similarly for the Subjunctive Mood. The Imperative is not found, the Pres. of the Subjunctive being used instead ; as, pŭdeat te, *let it shame thee,* or *be ashamed !*

All these Verbs take the Subject in the Accusative Case, except lĭbet, lĭcet, lĭquet, and plăcet, which govern the Dative : as, mĭhi lĭbet, *it pleases me ;* mĭhi lĭcet, *it is lawful for me, I am at liberty,* &c.

II. Verbs which denote Atmospherical Phenomena.

grandĭnăt, -āvĭt, -ārĕ	*it hails.*
ningĭt, ninxĭt, ningĕrĕ	*it snows.*
plŭĭt, plŭĭt, plŭĕrĕ	*it rains.*
tŏnăt, tŏnŭĭt, tŏnărĕ	*it thunders.*
lūcescĭt, (illuxit,) lūcescĕrĕ	*it becomes light.*
vespĕrascĭt, vespĕrāvĭt, vespĕrascĕrĕ	*evening comes on.*

Exercise XLVIII.

1. Me pudet paenitetque stultitiae meae. 2. Eos homines infa-
miae suae neque pudet neque taedet. 3. Nos oportet hoc facere.
4. Nobis non licebit castris exire. 5. Me civitatis morum piget
taedetque. 6. Oratorem irasci minime decet. 7. Non libet mihi
deplorare vitam. 8. Placuit Caesari, ut ad Ariovistum legatos
mitteret. 9. Pueros decet tacere. 10. Si forte tonuerat, veteres
tribuere solebant Jovi.

1. That wicked man (*acc.*) repents not of his crime (scelus).
2. What does it behove us to do? 3. It behoved you to maintain
the laws. 4. It-is-unbecoming-in a citizen to deceive his fellow-
citizens. 5. I am vexed and disgusted at the folly (*gen.*) of these
men. 6. In the winter it seldom thunders; in the summer
it seldom snows. 7. Evening-is-coming-on; let us go-out-from
the fields and let us return to the city. 8. On the same day it
thundered, hailed, snowed, (and) rained. 9. You may (it is allowed
to you) go forth (*inf.*) from the city, citizens! 10. Dare to be free,
Romans! it is allowed to all to die!

PART II.

SOME SYNTACTICAL RULES.

The pupil should repeat the Syntactical Rules already given :—

XXXIII.—The Ablative after the Comparative.

RULE 18.—After Adjectives in the Comparative degree *quam* may be omitted and the Ablative used instead of the Nominative or Accusative : as, vīlius argentum est aurō, *silver is more common than gold.*

Exercise XLIX.

1. Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum. 2. Deus major et potentior est cunctis. 3. Nihil est majus amicitiā, nihil jucundius. 4. Homini Deus nihil mente praestabilius dedit. 5. Ignoratio futurorum malorum utilior esse videtur scientiā. 6. Elephanto nulla beluarum prudentior est. 7. Tullus Hostilius non solum proximo regi dissimilis, sed ferocior etiam Romulo fuit. 8. Humana omnia inferiora sunt virtute. 9. Phidiae simulacris nihil est perfectius. 10. Sol major et splendidior est lunā.

1. What is brighter than the sun? What more excellent than virtue? 2. Who doubts that the sun is larger than the moon? 3. The earth is greater than the moon; the sun than the earth. 4. Silver and gold are brighter (*pl. neut.*) than iron. 5. The elephant is more sagacious than all-other (ceteri) beasts. 6. The knowledge of these things is better than the ignorance (of them). 7. Caesar was more powerful than all (the rest of) the citizens. 8. What is commoner than water? yet (autem) what is more useful? 9. Hatred is better than pretence of friendship. 10. No-one of the Athenians is more renowned than Socrates.

XXXIV.—Ablative Absolute.

RULE 19.—When a subordinate clause has a different subject from the subject of the principal sentence, the English Noun and Verb in the subordinate clause are often expressed in Latin by a Noun and Participle in the Ablative Case. This construction is called the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE : as, sōlĕ ortō, Rōmānī hostēs vīdērunt, *when the sun had risen* [lit. *the sun having risen*], *the Romans saw the enemy*.

There is no Perfect Participle Active in Latin, except in the case of Deponent Verbs. But the English Perfect Participle Active may often be expressed by means of the Latin Perfect Participle Passive, in the Ablative Absolute : as, Caesăr, expŏsĭtō exercĭtū, ăd hostēs contendĭt, *Caesar, having landed the army* [lit. *the army having been landed*], *hastens against the enemy*.

EXERCISE L.

A.—1. Sole oriente, nox fugit. 2. Recuperata pace, artes efflorescunt. 3. Alpibus superatis, Hannibal in Italiam venit. 4. Labitur aetas, nobis non sentientibus. 5. Pompeius, ineunte vere, bellum suscepit. 6. His paratis rebus, Caesar milites naves conscendere jubet. 7. Cognito hostium adventu, Caesar naves ex portu educit. 8. Caesar, exposito exercitu, ad hostes contendet. 9. Nivibus solutis, intumescere solent flumina. 10. Solon et Pisistratus, Servio Tullio regnante, vixerunt.

NOTE.—In the two following Exercises, the words which are to be expressed by the Ablative Absolute are put in italics.

1. *When the sun rises (the sun rising)*, all (things) become brighter. 2. *When the moon had risen*, the night was made brighter. 3. *When Cato was slain*, the commonwealth perished. 4. *When these things were done*, Caesar orders his soldiers to embark. 5. Caesar, *after he had overcome the Gauls*, waged war with Pompeius. 6. *Having heard these things*, he led his army to the banks of the river. 7. *Whilst Servius Tullius was king (Serv. Tull. being-king)*, the city was fortified with a wall of-stone. 8. *Having learned these things*, he hastened into the territory of the enemy. 9. *Having thrown a bridge across the river (the river being joined by a bridge)*, he orders the soldiers to cross. 10. *Having disembarked his soldiers*, he began to lay waste the lands of the enemy.

B.—1. Bello Punico confecto, triumphavit Scipio cum summo honore. 2. Dario apud Arbela victo, Alexander Asiā potitus est. 3. His litteris perlectis, consul comprehendi eos jubet. 4. Conjuratione detecta, jam servata esse videbatur civitas. 5. Senatu convocato, Cicero litteras recitat quas de conjuratione acceperat. 6. His

rebus paratis, contendit Caesar maximis itineribus in agros Helvetiorum. 7. Delectu habito, consul ad exercitum statim proficiscitur. 8. Catone mortuo, nulla jam ¦erat respublica. 9. Caesare occiso, gravissime vexata est respublica bello civili. 10. Proelio commisso, conantur Galli aciem Romanorum perrumpere.

1. *Having learned these things,* Caesar orders his soldiers to embark immediately. 2. *Having learned their* (eorum) *plan,* Caesar led his army into the territories of Cassivellaunus. 3. Caesar, *having sent forward his cavalry,* ordered the legions immediately to follow up. 4. Our men, *having slain many of* (ex) *the enemy,* returned to the camp. 5. Cassivellaunus, *having heard (of) this disaster,* sends ambassadors to (ad) Caesar concerning peace. 6. *Having extended (his) empire* as far as the Indus, Alexander returned towards the west. ⁂ 7. *When this war is finished,* we shall be able to enjoy peace. 8. *(With) you (for) leader,** we shall be safe. 9. *When old age is attained* (adeptus†), our bodies become more feeble. 10. *Having slain many of* (ex) *the enemy,* he led his army into winter quarters.

* The participle *being* is implied in the Noun *dux.*

† *Adeptus,* with a few other Perf. Participles of Deponent Verbs, is used both in an Active and Passive sense: see p. 135.

XXXV.—The Accusative expressing Duration or Extent of Time, Distance, and Dimension.

RULE 20.—The answers to the questions, *How long? How far? How high? How deep? How broad? How old?* are put in Latin in the Accusative case : as, sex ĕt vīgintī annōs regnāvĭt, *he reigned twenty-six years ;* aggĕrem lātum pĕdēs trĕcentōs, altum pĕdēs quinquāgintā exstruxērunt, *they heaped up a mound 300 feet broad and 50 feet high.*

The Accusative, answering the question *How long?* is called the Accusative of *duration of time.*

EXERCISE LI.

1. Romulus septem et triginta annos regnavit. 2. Quaedam bestiolae unum diem vivunt. 3. Augustus septem horas dormiebat. 4. Troja decem annos a Graecis obsessa est. 5. Cato annos quinque et octoginta natus excessit e vita. 6. Dionysius annos quinque et viginti natus dominatum occupavit. 7. Turris pedes ducentos alta est. 8. Saguntini aggerem duxerunt trecentos pedes longum et viginti pedes altum. 9. Hanno tria passuum millia ab ipsa urbe castra posuit. 10. Campus Marathon abest ab oppido Atheniensium circiter milia passuum viginti.

1. Tarquinius Superbus, the seventh king of the Romans, reigned twenty-four years.   2. They build a wall fifty feet high, (and) eight feet broad. 3. The walls of Athens were–distant about four thousand paces (*gen.*) from the sea.   4. The towers were about a hundred feet high.   5. Socrates was put-to-death, aged seventy years.   6. Plato lived eighty-one years.   7. It is not enough to have lived many years ; it behoves (us) to have lived (them) well.   8. The city (of) Troy was besieged ten years on-account-of (ob) a single (unus) woman. 9. Socrates lived seventy years.   10. Some men live a hundred (use distrib. numeral, p. 127) years.

XXXVI.—CONSTRUCTION OF THE NAMES OF TOWNS.

RULE 21.—In answer to the question *Whither ?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative case without prepositions : as, Consul Rōmam prŏfectŭs est, *the' Consul set out for Rome.*

> In like manner are used, dŏmum (*to one's*) *home;* rūs, *to the country.*

In answer to the question *Whence ?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Ablative case without prepositions : as, Consŭl Rōmā Athēnās prŏfectŭs est, *the Consul set out from Rome to Athens.*

> In like manner are used, dŏmō, *from home ;* rūrĕ, *from the country.*

Exercise LII.

1. Curius primus Romam elephantos quattuor duxit.   2. Pompeius Luceriā proficiscitur Canusium.   3. Lycurgus Cretam profectus est, ibique perpetuum exilium egit.   4. Aeschines cessit Athenis et se Rhodum contulit.   5. Legati Atheniensium Lacedaemonem profecti sunt, ut auxilium contra Persas peterent.   6. Acceptis mandatis, Roscius cum Lucio Caesare Capuam pervenit.   7. Alcibiades, maximis rebus gestis, domum revertit.   8. Leonidas cum trecentis iis, quos eduxerat Spartā, se opposuit hostibus.   9. Tiberius domo cessit, et se rus contulit.   10. Alexander, Dario ad Arbela victo, Babylonem profectus est.

1. In the summer I shall set out for Venusia.   2. He departed from Athens and returned to Rome.   3. We (see Ex. xxii) will go to Crete, you to Rhodes, but the others will remain in the city. 4. Caesar having done these things (*ablative absolute*), returned immediately home. 5. He departed from Rome and set out for Luceria. 6. I shall betake myself to Lacedaemon; there I shall be safe.   7. Do not set out to the country.   8. The consuls had already arrived at Luceria

(*acc.*). 9. The ambassadors of the Carthaginians came to Rome in-order-to (ut) seek-for peace. 10. Pompeius having been slain (*abl. absol.*), Caesar was unwilling to return immediately to Rome.

RULE 22.—In answer to the question *Where?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Genitive if of the First or Second Declension and Singular; otherwise in the Ablative : as,

Rōmae, *at Rome.*   Cŏrinthĭ, *at Corinth.*
Athēnĭs, *at Athens.*   Carthāgĭnĕ, *at Carthage.*

See p. 114, concerning the Locative Case.

In like manner are used hŭmī, *on the ground;* dŏmī, *at home,* with dŏmī meae, tuae, etc., *at my house, at your house,* &c.; rūrī or rūrĕ, *in the country;* terrae, *on the ground;* mīlĭtĭae, *in warfare;* bellī, *in war*

EXERCISE LIII.

1. Pompeius hiemare Dyrrachii et Apolloniae constituerat. 2. Delphis Apollinis oraculum fuit. 3. Conon plurimum Cypri vixit, Timotheus Lesbi. 4. Multos annos domi nostrae vixit. 5. Alexander Magnus Babylone morbo consumptus est. 6. Dionysius multos annos Corinthi vixit. 7. Horatius Venusiae natus est. 8. Catilina humi jacet. 9. Talis (*such*) Romae Fabricius, qualis (*as*) Aristides Athenis fuit. 10. Lycurgus Cretae perpetuum exilium egit.

1. Marius and Cicero were born at Arpinum. 2. Atticus, a friend of Cicero, lived many years at Athens. 3. Your friend lived many years at my house. 4. Dionysius, having been driven-out-of Syracuse, used-to-teach (*imperf.*) boys at Corinth. 5. Many apples and pears lay on the ground. 6. At Cannae* a sanguinary battle was fought (committo) between the Romans and Hannibal. 7. I had-rather (*pres.*) dwell at home than in the country. 8. Tiberius retired from Rome and lived in exile at Rhodes. 9. Very many generals, few poets were born at Rome. 10. At Lacedaemon both (et) boys and girls were most carefully trained up (*imperf.*).

* The site of a battle is usually indicated by *ad* and *acc.*

XXXVII.—THE ACCUSATIVE CASE AND INFINITIVE.

RULE 23.—The Accusative Case and the Infinitive are used :

I. After words of *saying, hearing, seeing, feeling, perceiving, thinking, knowing :* as, Līvĭus narrăt Rōmam ā Rōmŭlō condĭtam essĕ, *Livy relates that Rome was founded by Romulus;* sentīmŭs călērĕ ignem, nĭvem essĕ albam, dulcĕ (essĕ) měl, *we*

perceive that fire is hot, that snow is white, that honey is sweet.

II. After such expressions as certum est, *it is certain ;* justum est, *it is just ;* vērīsĭmĭlĕ est, *it is probable ;* constăt, *it is agreed :* as, constăt Rōmam ā Gallīs captam essĕ, *it is agreed that Rome was taken by the Gauls.*

EXERCISE LIV.

A.—1. Equitatum Caesaris advenire videmus. 2. Thales aquam dixit esse initium rerum. 3. Solon rempublicam praemiis et poenis contineri dixit. 4. Nemo negabit mundum a Deo conservari. 5. Vox quondam audita est, Romam a Gallis captum iri. 6. Epaminondas animadvertebat, totum exercitum propter ducum imprudentiam periturum esse. 7. Pollicebaris te venturum esse. 8. Helvetii polliciti sunt se Caesari obsides daturos (esse). 9. Videmus aves autumno in alias terras migrare. 10. Scio haec vera esse.

1. We know that the sun is larger than the moon. 2. Caesar learns that the enemy are-gathering-together all their forces. 3. The oracle of Delphi said that Socrates was (*infin. pres.*) the wisest of all men. 4. We see that the flowers blossom forth. 5. We know that the body perishes, but that the soul is immortal. 6. Socrates thought (*imperf.*) that knowledge was more excellent than all (other) things. 7. Who has not heard that the Romans were conquered by Hannibal at (*ad*) Cannae? 8. We see that all things are done by the wisdom of God. 9. We know that the sun is very far distant (*absum*) from the earth. 10. We promise that we will be faithful to you.

B.—1. Credibile est hominum causā factum esse mundum. 2. Verum est amicitiam nisi inter bonos esse non posse. 3. Traditum est Homerum caecum fuisse. 4. Hannibalem in Asia mortuum esse constat. 5. Bestiis rationem deesse manifestum est. 6. Omnes cives legibus parere aequum est. 7. Certum est liberos a parentibus amari. 8. Sororem tuam hac aestate reversuram esse non verisimile est. 9. Constat Romanos eodem anno duas urbes florentissimas, Carthaginem et Corinthum, delevisse. 10. Memoriae traditum est, Latonam confugisse Delon atque ibi Apollinem Dianamque peperisse.

1. It is just that you (should) punish me. 2. It is probable that the stars are suns. 3. It is true that we have been conquered. 4. It has been handed down to us that Socrates was the wisest of all the Greeks. 5. It is manifest that the world was not made by chance. 6. It is agreed amongst all writers that Romulus was (*perf.*) the first king of the Romans. 7. It is manifest that you make-a-mistake. 8. It is handed down (*perf.*) to us by the poets that a woman was the cause of the Trojan war. 9. It is certain that the soul ought to obey reason. 10. It is manifest that we shall be conquered unless we remain (*fut.-perf.*) in the city.

XXXVIII.—Direct Questions.

RULE 24.—Questions are usually put in Latin with the help of Interrogative words or particles: as, Quĭd ăgĭs? *What are you doing?* Pŭtas-nĕ? *Do you think?* Non-nĕ pŭtās? *Do you not think?*

The principal Interrogative particles are -nĕ, num, utrum, ăn. Of these -nĕ is always written as an enclitic like the Conjunction -quĕ. Utrum and ăn are used only when two alternatives are spoken of; and ăn always with the second alternative.

-nĕ does not need to be expressed by any English word, as visnĕ? *Do you wish?* nonnĕ pŭtās? *Do you not think?*

Utrum . . . ăn may be translated by *whether . . . or,* as utrum sōl ăn lūnă mājŏr est? *Whether is the sun or the moon the greater?*

Num has a negative force, as num ĭtă pŭtās = *You don't think so, do you?* It is to be used when the answer *No* is looked for.

A.—1. Estne voluptas summum bonum? 2. Nonne fuit Socrates antiquorum sapientissimus? 3. Nonne sol longe major est luna? 4. Num tu ita audes dicere? 5. Utrum est aurum gravius an argentum? 6. Utrum Socrates an Plato sapientior fuit? 7. Suntne haec vera bona? 8. Num tu has res melius quam magister tuus intelligis? 9. Nonne omnes discere oportet vitam tranquillo animo relinquere? 10. Num putas argentum et aurum cariora esse virtute et prudentia?

1. Are these things true? 2. Do you believe that pain is the greatest evil? 3. Was not (begin with *nonne*) Pythagoras a very great (*summus*) philosopher? 4. You don't think that I am a liar, do you? 5. Is gold more excellent than wisdom? (No.) 6. Are you wiser than (your) father? (No.) 7. Whether is iron or gold more useful? 8. Is not (begin with *nonne*) iron far more useful than gold? 9. Whether do you prefer this or that? 10. Is not the world governed by the Divine wisdom?

B.—1. Nonne urbs Roma a Gallis capta et direpta est? 2. Nonne omnes consentiunt Scipionem primarium fuisse virum? 3. Num audes dicere haec benevolo animo facta esse? 4. Utrum Romae an ruri hibernis mensibus manere mavis? 5. Utrum est turpitudo omnium malorum maximum an non? 6. Utrum haec benevolo an malevolo animo fecisti? 7. Utrum Cato an Caesar tibi praestantior

et clarior vir esse videtur ? 8. Utrum esse an videri bonus mavis ?
9. Num audes dicere, Lucreti, haec casu facta esse ? tune ita credis ?
10. Estne verum, quod nonnulli dicunt, animos ex aliis (*corporibus*)
in alia corpora migrare ?

1. Is it true that the sun is made-of-fire ? 2. Is not Plato the
most eloquent of philosophers ? 3. Are not Livy and Sallust most
elegant writers ? 4. Does it not do good to all to read the works
[books] of that (*ille*) most excellent writer ? 5. Are you so foolish
that (*ut*) you believe all these things to have been made by
chance ? 6. Is the body mortal ? Is the soul immortal ? 7. Are
not the books of Plato full of these subjects (*res*) ? 8. Is Sallust or
Livy (begin with *utrum*) the more elegant writer ? Are-you-able
to answer ? 9. Does it (*num*) become a philosopher to lament-over
his life ? Does it not behove him to act bravely ? 10. Do all the
philosophers agree concerning these subjects ?

XXXIX.—Indirect Questions.

Rule 25.—An Indirect Question is one which is
dependent upon a previous verb or phrase : as, scĭo quĭd
factum sĭt, *I know what has been done;* mīrum est quae
fŭĕrĭt causă, *It is strange what the reason may have been;*
vĭdēbo num rĕdĭĕrĭt, *I will see whether he has returned.*
The dependent verb is always put in the Subjunctive
Mood.

Rule 26.—The Tense of the Verb in the Subjunctive
Mood is determined by that of the verb in the former part
of the sentence upon which it depends. (1.) If the verb
in the former clause expresses *Present* or *Future Time*, the
verb in the dependent clause is put in the Present or
Perfect Tense Subjunctive. (2.) If the verb in the
principal clause expresses *Past Time*, the verb in the de-
pendent clause is put in the Imperfect or Pluperfect Tense
Subjunctive.

Present, Perfect, and Future Time.

PRESENT.	Scio quĭd ăgās	*I know what you are doing.*
	scio quĭd ēgĕris	*I know what you have done.*
	scio quĭd actūrŭs sīs	*I know what you are going to do.*
PERFECT.	cognōvī quĭd ăgās	*I have learnt what you are doing.*
	cognōvī quĭd ēgĕris	*I have learnt what you have done*
	cognōvī quĭd actūrŭs sīs	*I have learnt what you are going to do.*

FUTURE.	audiam quĭd ăgās	*I shall hear what you are doing.*
	audiam quĭd ēgĕris	*I shall hear what you have done.*
	audiam quĭd actūrŭs sīs	*I shall hear what you are going to do.*

Past Time.

IMPERF.	sciēbam quĭd ăgĕrēs	*I knew what you were doing.*
	sciēbam quĭd ēgissēs	*I knew what you had done.*
	sciēbam quĭd actūrŭs essēs	*I knew what you were going to do.*
PERFECT.	cognōvī quĭd ăgĕrēs	*I learnt what you were doing.*
	cognōvī quĭd ēgissēs	*I learnt what you had done.*
	cognōvī quĭd•actūrŭs essēs	*I learnt what you were going to do.*
PLU-PERFECT.	cognōvĕram quĭd ăgĕrēs	*I had learnt what you were doing.*
	cognōvĕram quĭd ēgissēs	*I had learnt what you had done.*
	cognōvĕram quĭd actūrŭs essēs	*I had learnt what you were going to do.*

The same Rule is applicable to the sequence of Tenses in the Subjunctive Mood universally.

> N.B.—In single Indirect Questions *whether* is generally expressed by **num**, which then ceases to have a negative force. In double Indirect Questions it is expressed either by **utrum** or **-ne**.

EXERCISE LVI.

> N.B.—In the following Latin sentences the Subjunctive must in English be rendered by the Indicative; and in the English sentences, the dependent verb must in Latin be expressed by the Subjunctive.

A.—1. Rogo quid agatis. 2. Rogavit quid agerent. 3. Rogavit quid egissent. 4. Roga tu quid acturi sint. 5. Nescio quare me ex civitate expuleritis. 6. Cognoscere non potuit quantae essent hostium copiae. 7. Speculabimur quot homines in urbem ineant et quot exeant. 8. Dic mihi, Catilina, cur patriam prodere volueris. 9. Dic mihi, Blaese, ubi corpus abjeceris. 10. Chaerephon ex oraculo quaesivit quis omnium Graecorum sapientissimus esset.

1. I will ask how great the forces of the enemy *are*. 2. Xenophon inquired of (ex) the oracle what *it behoved* him to do. 3. I wish to learn where the camp of the enemy *is*. 4. I do-not-know what *it behoves* me to do. 5. Tell me, my son, what you *are* going-to-do. 6. The son was unwilling to tell what he *was* going-to-do. 7. Count how many darts *have been thrown* (*conjicio*) into the tent. 8. I will inquire which-of-the-two *has conquered*. 9. Socrates used-to-inquire (*imperf.*) what *was* just, what unjust. 10. It is a great-thing to know what things *are* just, what unjust.

B.—1. Quaeram num omnia feliciter evenerint. 2. Jussit eos speculari num hostes ex castris exirent. 3. Visam num advenient hostes. 4. Subdifficilis est quaestio num unquam novi amici sint

veteribus anteponendi. 5. Rogavit nonne haec improba et infamia essent. 6. Rogabo num credat omnia casu facta esse. 7. Quaesivit ex oraculo Croesus, utrum ipse an Cyrus superaturus esset. 8. Saepe-numero quaerebant antiqui philosophi mortalisne esset animus an immortalis. 9. Num dubium est casune an consilio factus sit mundus? 10. Plane incertum est vicerintne hostes an victi sint.

1. Inquire of (*ex*) him whether *he knows* these things. 2. It is doubtful whether these things *are* true. 3. It is uncertain whether (*utrum* or -*ne*) he *is* a good man or a wicked (one). 4. It is doubtful whether he *deserve* praise (*laudemne*) or blame. 5. He asked whether the dead *felt* cold and hunger. 6. I know not whether you *are-sleeping* or waking. 7. I doubt whether he *will return* (*subj.-pres.*) immediately. 8. He asked *whether the city was* very strongly fortified. 9. This I ask you, whether you *were* not (*nonne*) on that night in-the-house-of (*apud*) M. Laeca? 10. Do you doubt whether *it behoves* a good citizen to side-with his country in time of danger?

XL.—ADDITIONAL EXERCISES ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

RULE 27.—Besides ŭt, nē, and quīn (see Ex. xxv, &c.), the Conjunctions quō, *that*, and quōmĭnŭs, *that not*, are constructed with the Subjunctive Mood.

1. ŭt = *that, in order that, granting that,* is used to express either a *purpose* or a *consequence :* as, ĕo ŭt spectem lūdōs, *I am going in order that I may look at the games ;* accĭdĭt ŭt nōn dŏmī essem, *it happened that I was not at home.*

2. nē = *that not,* is used to express a *purpose,* but not a mere consequence : as, Haec făcĭo nē mē ĭnĭmīcum tĭbi pŭtēs, *these things I do that you may not think me your enemy ;* but, sĕquĭtŭr ŭt haec nōn vēră sint, *it follows that these things are not true.*

> *Obs.* After verbs of *fearing,* ŭt has the meaning of *that not,* and nē of *that :* as, tĭmĕo ŭt dux mīlĭtēs ē castrīs ēdŭcăt, *I fear that the general will not lead the soldiers out of the camp :* tĭmĕo nē dux mīlĭtēs ē castrīs ēdŭcăt, *I fear that the general will lead the soldiers out of the camp.*

3. quīn, *that not, but that,* is used only after negative or virtually negative clauses : as, dĭēs nullŭs est, quīn littĕrās scrībam, *there is no day that I do not write a letter ;* nōn dŭbĭto quīn vērum dixĕrĭs, *I do not doubt but that you have spoken the truth.* (See Ex. xxv, C, &c.)

4. quō is used for ŭt ĕō, and signifies *that thereby, in order that, so that :* haec lex dătă est, quō mălĕfĭcī dēterrērentŭr, *this law was given (enacted) that thereby evil-doers might be deterred ;* portās oppĭdī obstruxĭt, quō făcĭlĭŭs impĕtum hostium rĕtardārĕt, *he barricaded the gates of the town in order that he might more easily retard the attack of the enemy.*

quō is used in preference to ŭt when there is a comparative in the clause which it introduces.

5. quōmĭnŭs, *that not,* is used after verbs of *hindering, preventing, resisting,* &c., and must be frequently translated in English by *from* with a verbal substantive : as, aetās nōs non impĕdĭt quōmĭnŭs littĕras tractēmus, *age does not prevent us from cultivating literature.*

<div align="center">EXERCISE LVII.</div>

A.—1. Enitar ut in omnibus rebus tibi prosim. 2. Hoc te rogo atque oro, ne rempublicam deseras. 3. Contendit Caesar maximis itineribus in fines Nerviorum ut consilia eorum praeveniret. 4. Magnopere tibi suadeo ne improbis illis hominibus confidas. 5. Accidit ut milites impransi essent cum signum datum est. 6. Milites cohortatus est ut fortiter castra defenderent. 7. Nonne omnes cives oportet eniti ut reipublicae prosint ? 8. Accidit ut inter Labienum et hostes esset flumen praealtum. 9. Sequitur ut non possim tibi confidere. 10. Enitar ne possis mihi diffidere.

1. I will strive-hard to (*ut*) persuade him. 2. It follows that pleasure is not the highest good. 3. I entreat you to (*ut*) learn to bear patiently bad fortune. 4. We ought to strive-hard that we may be serviceable to (our) native-country. 5. The Helvetii determined to depart from their own territories, in order that they might obtain-possession-of all Gaul. 6. Does it not follow that these things are unjust ? 7. So it came to pass (*fio*) that no one of (them) all returned * to the city. 8. The Helvetii have been so trained (*instituo*) by their ancestors that they are accustomed * to receive hostages, not to give them. 9. I will strive earnestly that you may be able to think me a friend. 10. The Carthaginians sent ambassadors to Rome to (*ut*) beg-for peace.

* Remember that ut is followed by the Subjunctive Mood whether it denotes a purpose (= *in order that*) or only a consequence, as here.

B.—1. Constituit Caesar pontem in flumine facere, quo facilius copias suas transduceret. 2. Milites cohortatus est quo mortem fortius obirent. 3. Quid obstat quominus moenia statim oppugnemus ? 4. Nullo modo introire possum quin me videant. 5. Nullo modo exire potuit quin eum viderent. 6. Minimum abest quin

<div align="center">H 2</div>

sim miserrimus.   7. Dies fere nullus est quin Satrius domum meam ventitet.   8. Facere non possum quin tibi dolores meos enarrem. 9. Quis dubitat quin omnes oporteat patriae suae adesse ?   10. Recusare non possum quin me comiteris.

1. He resolved to carry a wall round the camp, that (*quo*) the army might be more secure (*tutus*).   2. He fortified the camp that he might the more easily keep off the enemy.   3. There is no day that I do not hear many (and) wonderful things.   4. Who can doubt that Hannibal was a very great (*summus*) general ?   5. There was nobody who did not (*quin*) rejoice greatly.   6. I cannot but hope that we shall be conquerors.   7. Nobody is so brave but (*quin*) he sometimes feels fear.   8. We are preparing arms, not that (*ut*) we may attack others, but that (*quo*) we may better defend our country. 9. There was nothing wanting *that* I should be very wretched. 10. Our soldiers could not go forth from the camp *but* (*quin*) they were overwhelmed with missiles.

C.—1. Per Trebonium stetit quominus oppido potirentur. 2. Me infirmitas valetudinis tenuit quominus ad ludos venirem.   3. Hiems prohibuit quominus a te litteras haberemus.   4. Bibulum deterruerunt quominus domo exiret.   5. Deterrent me latrones quominus in illam partem urbis eam.   6. Quid tibi obstabat quominus nobis adesses ?   7. Quis audebit miseros prohibere quominus fleant ? 8. Legem brevem esse oportet quo facilius ab imperitis teneatur. 9. Unum vereor ne senatus Pompeium nolit dimittere. 10. Quis est quin cernat quanta vis sit in sensibus ?

N.B.—In the following Exercise, express *from* by quōmĭnŭs.

1. It was owing to you *that* we did *not* (*quominus*) obtain-possession-of the town.   2. No weakness of health shall prevent me *from* coming to you.   3. Nothing ought to deter a citizen *from* siding-with his country in time of danger.   4. They attempted to deter Cato *from* appearing (*adsum*) in the forum.   5. Nothing shall prevent me *from* siding-with you.   6. Nobody can prohibit us *from* worshipping God.   7. Nothing ought to deter children *from* obeying their parents.   8. I fear *that* we may be cast out of the city.   9. I fear *that* we may *not* be able to defend ourselves and our country.   10. I cannot but think that Caesar was the greatest of the Romans.

XLI.—Use of the Supines.

RULE 28.—The Supine in **um** is used after verbs of motion : as, Lăcĕdaemŏnĭī Ăgēsĭlāum *bellātum* ĭn Ăsiam mīsērunt, *the Lacedaemonians sent Agesilaus into Asia to make war.*

The Supine in ū is used after many adjectives : as, făcĭlĭs, *easy*, diffĭcĭlĭs, *difficult*, dulcĭs, *sweet*, &c., and with fās est, *it is lawful*, nĕfās est, *it is unlawful*, ŏpŭs est, *it is necessary :* as, rēs diffĭcĭlĭs factū est, *the thing is difficult to be done ;* nĕfās est dictū, *it is* (or *it would be*) *impious to say* (*such a thing*).

EXERCISE LVIII.

1. Ingens hominum multitudo in urbem convenit, ludos publicos spectatum. 2. Veientes, pacem petitum, oratores Romam mittunt. 3. Aedui legatos ad Caesarem mittunt, rogatum auxilium. 4. Milites pabulatum et aquatum longius progressi erant. 5. Divitiacus Romam ad senatum venit, auxilium postulatum. 6. Athenienses oratores Delphos miserunt, consultum quidnam facerent de rebus suis. 7. Pira dulcia sunt gustatu. 8. Difficile dictu est. 9. Quod optimum factu videbitur, facies. 10. Nefas est dictu miseram fuisse Fabii Maximi senectutem.

1. We will set out for Rome, to look-at the games. 2. Croesus sent ambassadors to Delphi to inquire concerning the fortune of the war. 3. Chaerephon went-to (*adeo*) Delphi to ask who was (*subj.*) the wisest of men. 4. The general dismissed the soldiers to forage and get-water. 5. These things are very difficult to be done. 6. Very many things are easier to be said than done. 7. Old wines are not always sweet to taste. 8. The Romans sent ambassadors to Carthage to inquire concerning Hannibal and the Saguntines. 9. It would be impious to say that the life of a good man can be miserable. 10. We have come to consult you (as to) what may be best to be done.

XLII.—USE OF THE GERUND.

RULE 29.—The Gerund is a Neuter Verbal Noun, governing the same case as the Verb from which it comes. It corresponds to the English Verbal Nouns in *ing ;* as *writing, walking.*

It is declined in the Singular only, and is not used in the Nominative case, the Present of the Infinitive taking the place of the Nominative : as,

Nom. lĕgĕre pulchră carmĭnă suāve est — *reading (to read) beautiful poems is delightful.*

Acc. nātŭs ăd ăgendum — *born for action* (lit. *for doing*).

Gen. ars pŭĕrōs ēdŭcandī diffĭcĭlĭs est — *the art of educating boys is difficult.*

Dat. scrībendō ŏpĕram dăt — *he devotes his care to writing.*

Abl. littĕrās tractandō mens ăcŭĭtŭr — *the wits are sharpened by dealing with letters.*

Obs. The Accusative Case of the Gerund is used only with Prepositions; otherwise the Present Infinitive is used: as, disco nătāre, *I learn swimming.*

Exercise LIX.

1. Saepissime perniciosa est plura habendi cupiditas.   2. Vehementer ardebat juvenis studio omnia cognoscendi et experiendi. 3. Quidam canes venandi gratiā comparantur.   4. Beate vivendi studiosi sumus omnes.   5. Aqua marina haud utilis est bibendo. 6. Mores puerorum se inter ludendum detegunt.   7. Hominis mens discendo et cogitando alitur.   8. Caesari dare jucundissimum erat. 9. Inter bibendum de variis rebus colloquebamur.   10. Quid potest esse jucundius quam inter ambulandum libere de variis rebus colloqui?

1. Very many persons burn with the desire of having more (*n. pl.*). 2. Epaminondas was eager-after hearing (*gen.*).   3. All are not zealous of living well.   4. He got together very many horses and (que) dogs for-the-sake-of hunting.   5. Do not attempt to obtain friends by flattering.   6. Do not attempt to preserve your life by lying.   7. Bodies are nourished by eating and drinking.   8. The soul is nourished by thinking (*cogito*), feeling, acting.   9. Conversing (*infin.*) about (de) these things is most delightful.   10. It is becoming in a youth (*acc.*) to burn with a zeal for knowledge (*gen.* of *gerund*).

XLIII.—Use of the Gerundive.

Rule 30.—The Gerundive is a Passive Verbal Adjective: as, scrībendus, a, um, *to be written, necessary* or *fit to be written.*

The Gerundive may be conjugated with all the tenses of sum: as, ămandŭs sum, *I am to be loved,* or *I ought to be loved;* ămandŭs ĕram, *I was to be loved,* or *I ought to have been loved,* &c.

When the Verb from which the Gerundive comes governs an Accusative Case, the Gerundive agrees with the Nominative Case of its Noun: as, scrībenda est mĭhi ĕpistŏlă, *a letter must be* or *ought to be written by me,* or *I must* or *ought to write a letter.*

The person by whom the thing is *to be done* is usually put in the Dative (see preceding example).

Exercise LX.

1. Diligenter sunt emendandi puerorum mores.   2. Sapientia non solum paranda est nobis, sed etiam fruenda.   3. Prae omnibus rebus adhibenda est prudentia.   4. Agenda est omnibus aetas

non sine periculis. 5. Ciceroni in arduis temporibus gerenda erat respublica. 6. Strenue nobis excolenda sunt corpus, mens, animus. 7. Habendus est delectus, comparandae sunt naves. 8. Non sunt ea nobis contemnenda; sunt diligentissime providenda. 9. Prae ceteris observandi et colendi sunt pueris parentes. 10. Utrum amandi an timendi reges sunt?

1. Virtue must be cultivated. 2. Who doubts that the gods are to be feared? 3. A parent (*dat.*) ought so (ita) to train-up (his) son that he may obey the laws of virtue. 4. Those persons are to be admired who have dared to die for (pro) their-country. 5. (We) must preserve the state; (we) must crush the conspiracy. 6. Virtue must not only be cultivated, but also loved. 7. These things must not be passed over by us (*dat.*). 8. Before (prae) all other things (res) the war must be carried on vigorously. 9. We (*dat.*) ought to read the orators and poets. 10. A man (*dat.*) should not despise death.

RULE 31.—But when the Verb from which the Gerundive comes is intransitive or governs any other Case than the Accusative, the Gerundive is used impersonally in the Neuter Singular, with the Verb est. The Object is put in the case which the Verb governs, and the Subject, when expressed, usually in the Dative Case : as, obtempĕrandum est virtūtis praeceptīs (*dative*), *we must obey the lessons of virtue :* cuīque (*dative*) ūtendum est jūdĭcĭō sŭō (*ablative*), *each one must use his own judgment.*

N.B.—The Ablative with ăb, ā, is also used after the Gerundive, and is preferred when an ambiguity would arise from the use of the Dative : as, hīs (*dative*) est ā vōbīs consŭlendum, *you must consult the interests of these men.* Without the preposition it would be impossible to say which was the Object of the Verb, hīs or vōbīs.

EXERCISE LXI.

1. Omnibus moriendum est. 2. Ita bellandum est ut pax peti videatur. 3. Mihi utendum est judicio meo. 4. Nobis quoque ingrediendum est istuc quo pervenisti. 5. Ita nobis vivendum est ut ad mortem parati simus. 6. Non longius progrediendum est, commilitones, ne commeatibus nostris intercludamur. 7. Non dubium est quin a bono cive legibus sit obtemperandum. 8. Proficiscendum mihi erat illo ipso die. 9. Magnopere est curandum ne nobis consilium defuisse videatur. 10. Cognoscendum est quid de illo homine factum sit.

1. Must (we) not (nonne) all die? 2. We must die bravely, fellow-soldiers! 3. Boys ought to strive-hard to please (ut with *subj.*) their parents. 4. We must strive with (our) utmost zeal that the commonwealth may be preserved. 5. We must not believe all men in every thing. 6. We must set out immediately. 7. It is

greatly to be desired that the war may be brought-to-an-end. 8. We must take great care (see No. 9 above) *that* we are *.not* (ne) shut off from all help. 9. What must we do, citizens ? Which-of-the-two (*dat.*) should we trust ? 10. We ought so to learn as (ut) not immediately to forget.

Rule 32.—The Gerundive participle is very often used in Latin where in English a verbal noun in -*ing* is followed by a Direct Object : as, *fond of waging* WAR, *a plan of* (*for*) *burning* THE CITY. This substantive then becomes immediately dependent upon the foregoing part of the sentence, and the verbal noun is expressed by a Gerundive participle agreeing with it in gender, number, and case.

Thus, *fond of waging war* becomes *fond of war to-be-waged*, cŭpĭdus belli gĕrendi ; *a plan of* (*for*) *burning the city* becomes *a plan of* (*for*) *the city to-be-burned*, consĭlium urbis incendendae. This construction cannot -be used when the Verb governs the Dative Case.

Exercise LXII.

1. Bellum suscepit Catilina reipublicae delendae causā. 2. Timotheus erat civitatis regendae peritus. 3. Consilium iniit Catilina urbis incendendae. 4. Conservandae libertatis gratiā initio creabantur consules. 5. Tiberius quasi ad firmandam valetudinem in Campaniā concessit. 6. Occupatus sum in litteris scribendis. 7. Studiosi solent esse juvenes equorum canumque alendorum. 8. Consilium inierunt Brutus et Cassius libertatis recuperandae. 9. Hostes in spem venerant potiendorum castrorum.   10. Oculus prŏbe affectus est ad suum munus fungendum.

1. The Roman youth (*pl.*) were trained up for (ad) managing the commonwealth. 2. Cicero formed a plan for crushing the conspiracy (*gen.*). 3. Nature has endowed (instruo) the mind with senses prepared for perceiving objects (res). 4. He burned (ardeo) with the desire of destroying his country. 5. Those wicked men formed a design of slaying the consul. 6. Virtue is especially (maxime) discerned in despising pleasure. 7. The first book is written (*perf.*) on-the-subject-of (de) despising death. 8. The utmost pleasure is derived (capio) from (ex) reading books. 9. A husbandman ought (oportet) to devote himself to cultivating his lands. 10. Cicero devoted himself with the utmost zeal to preserving the commonwealth.

A SHORT SYNTAX.

RECAPITULATION OF THE RULES ALREADY GIVEN.

First Concord.

§ 1. A Verb agrees with its Nominative case in Number and Person : as, pŭellă currĭt, *the girl runs* ; pŭellae currunt, *the girls run.*

Second Concord.

§ 2. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in Gender, Number, and Case : as, servŭs tĭmĭdŭs, *a timid slave ;* pŭellă tĭmĭdă, *a timid girl ;* parvum oppĭdum, *a small town.*

Third Concord.

§ 3. The Relative Pronoun agrees with the Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but not in Case : as, Fēlix est rex quem omnēs cīvēs laudant, *Fortunate is the king whom all citizens praise.*

Apposition.

§ 4. When two Nouns refer to the same person or thing, they are put in the same case by *Apposition :* as, Rōmŭlŭs, rex Rōmānōrum, *Romulus, king of the Romans.*

Nominative Case.

§ 5. The Nominative case denotes the Subject.—When two Nouns in Latin are connected by sum, fīo, vĭdĕŏr, vŏcŏr, and similar Verbs, they are put in the same case : as, Brĭtannĭă est insŭlă, *Britain is an island.*

Accusative Case.

§ 6. The Accusative case denotes the Object.—Transitive Verbs govern the Accusative : as, ăquĭlă ālās hăbĕt, *the eagle has wings.*

§ 7. The answers to the questions, *How long ? How far ? How high ? How deep ? How broad ? How old ?* are put in the Accusative : as, sex ĕt vīgintī annōs regnāvĭt, *he reigned twenty-six years ;* aggĕrem lātum pĕdēs trĕcentōs, altum pĕdēs quinquāgintā exstruxērunt, *they heaped up a mound* 300 *feet broad and* 50 *feet high.*—The Accusative, answering the question *How long ?* is called the Accusative of *duration of time.*

Genitive Case.

§ 8. The latter of two Nouns is put in the Genitive when one is dependent upon the other : as, Brĭtannĭă est insŭlă Eurŏpae, *Britain is an island of Europe.*

§ 9. Verbs signifying *to remember, to forget, to pity,* are commonly followed by the Genitive : as, mĭsĕrōrum hŏmĭnum mĭsĕrēbĭmŭr, *we shall pity the wretched men.*

Dative Case.

§ 10. The Dative indicates the person to whom something is given : as, măgistĕr cŏlumbam pŭĕrō dăt, *the master gives a dove to the boy.*

Ablative Case.

§ 11. The Ablative indicates—(1) The instrument or means by which something is done : as, dŏmĭnŭs hastā servum occīdĭt, *the lord kills the slave with a spear.*

(2) The time when something is done or takes place : as, noctēs hĭĕmĕ longae sunt, *the nights are long in winter.*

§ 12. But when the Ablative indicates the place *where,* it is used with the Preposition ĭn, *in :* as, hostēs ĭn plānĭtĭē ĕrant, *the enemies were in the plain.*

§ 13. Ūtŏr, frŭŏr, vescŏr, fungŏr, govern the Ablative : as, săpĭentĕr ūtĭmĭnī tempŏrĕ, *use time wisely.*

§ 14. When a subordinate clause has a different subject from that of the principal clause, the English Noun and Verb in the subordinate clause are in Latin often expressed by a Noun and Participle in the Ablative Case. This construction is called the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE : as, sōlĕ ortō, Rōmānī hostēs vīdērunt, *when the sun had risen* [lit. *the sun having risen*], *the Romans saw the enemy.* (See also p. 90.)

Construction of the Names of Towns.

§ 15. In answer to the question *Whither ?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative without prepositions : as, Consŭl Rōmam prŏfectŭs est, *the Consul set out for Rome.*

§ 16. In answer to the question *Whence ?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Ablative without prepositions : as, Consŭl Rōmā Ăthēnās prŏfectŭs est, *the Consul set out from Rome to Athens.*

§ 17. In answer to the question *Where?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Genitive if of the First or Second Declension and Singular ; otherwise in the Ablative : as, Rōmae, *at Rome* ; Cŏrinthī, *at Corinth* ; Ăthēnīs, *at Athens* ; Carthāgĭnĕ, *at Carthage.*

§ 18. In like manner are used hŭmī, *on the ground* ; dŏmī, *at home* ; rūrī or rūrĕ, *in the country* ; terrae, *on the ground* ; mīlĭtĭae, *in warfare* ; bellī, *in war.*

Comparative Degree.

§ 19. The Ablative is also used after the Comparative instead of *quam* with the Nominative or Accusative : as, vīlĭŭs argentum est aurō, *silver is more common than gold.*

Indicative Mood.

§ 20. The Indicative Mood speaks of a thing without any condition or doubt : as, aedĭfĭco dŏmum, *I am building a house* ; hăbĭtābo in ĕā, *I shall dwell in it.*

Subjunctive Mood.

§ 21. The Indicative Mood states a thing positively ; the Subjunctive speaks of it conditionally.

Sequence of Tenses.—The Tense of a Verb in the Subjunctive Mood depends upon that of the principal Verb. A Present Tense Indicative must not be followed by an Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive, nor a Past Tense Indicative by a Present Subjunctive.

§ 22. The Conjunctions ŭt, *that, in order that,* and nē, *that not,* are construed with the Subjunctive : as, ĕo ŭt spectem lūdōs, *I am going in order that I may look at the games* ; haec făcĭo nē mē ĭnĭmīcum tĭbi pŭtēs, *these things I do that you may not think me your enemy.*

§ 23. The Conjunction quīn, *that not, but that,* is used with the Subjunctive after negative or virtually negative clauses : as, dĭēs nullŭs est, quīn littĕrās scrībam, *there is no day that I do not write a letter* ; nōn dŭbĭto quīn vērum dixĕris, *I do not doubt that you have spoken the truth.*

§ 24. The Conjunction quō is used for ŭt ĕō with the Subjunctive, and signifies *that thereby, in order that, so that* : haec lex dătă est, quō mălĕfĭcī dēterrērentŭr, *this law was given (enacted) that thereby evil-doers might be deterred.*

§ 25. The Conjunction **quōmĭnŭs**, *that not*, is used with the Subjunctive after verbs of *hĭndering*, *preventing*, *resisting*, &c., and must be frequently translated in English by *from* and a verbal substantive : as, aetās nōs non impĕdit quōmĭnŭs littĕrās tractēmŭs, *age does not prevent us from cultivating literature*.

§ 26. The Subjunctive is used in an Indirect Question ; that is, a question dependent upon some previous verb or clause : as, Rŏgābo quĭd factum sĭt, *I will ask what has been don:*; Mīrum est quae fŭĕrĭt causŭ, *It is strange what the reason may have been*; Vĭdēbo num rĕdĭĕrĭt, *I will see whether he has returned*.

> Note.—The Rule for the sequence of tenses in the Subjunctive Mood is given on pp. 96, 97.

The Infinitive.

§ 27. The latter of two verbs is put in the Infinitive : as, Caesăr hostēs sŭpĕrārĕ pŏtest, *Caesar is able to overcome the enemy*.

§ 28. The Accusative Case and the Infinitive are used :

I. After words of *saying, hearing, seeing, feeling, perceiving, thinking, knowing* : as, Līvĭus narrăt Rōmam ā Rōmŭlō condĭtam essĕ, *Livy relates that Rome was founded by Romulus* : sentīmŭs călērĕ ignem, nĭvem essĕ albam, dulcĕ (essĕ) mĕl, *we perceive that fire is hot, that snow is white, that honey is sweet*.

II. After such expressions as nōtum est, *it is known*; justum est, *it is just*; vērīsĭmĭlĕ est, *it is probable*; constăt, *it is agreed, it is certain*, &c. : as, constăt Rōmam ā Rōmŭlō condĭtam essĕ, *it is agreed that Rome was founded by Romulus*.

The Supines.

§ 29. The Supine in **um** is used after verbs of motion : as, Lăcĕdaemŏnĭī Ăgēsĭlāum *bellātum* ĭn Ăsiam mīsērunt, *the Lacedaemonians sent Agesilaus into Asia to make war*.

The Supine in **ū** is used after many adjectives : as, făcĭlĭs, *easy*, diffĭcĭlĭs, *difficult*, dulcĭs, *sweet*, &c., and with fās est, *it is lawful*, nĕfās est, *it is unlawful*, ŏpŭs est, *it is necessary* : as, rēs diffĭcĭlĭs factū est, *the thing is difficult to be done*.

The Gerund.

§ 30. The Gerund is a Neuter Verbal Noun, governing the same case as the Verb from which it comes. It corresponds to the English Verbal Nouns in *ing*; as *writing*, *walking*.

It is declined in the Singular only, and is not used in the Nominative Case, the Present of the Infinitive taking the place of the Nominative : as,

Nom.	lĕgĕre pulchră carmĭnă suāve est	*reading (to read) beautiful poems is delightful.*
Acc.	nātŭs ăd ăgendum	*born for action* (lit. *for doing*).
Gen.	ars pŭĕrōs ēdŭcandī diffĭcĭlĭs est	*the art of educating boys is difficult.*
Dat.	scrībendō ŏpĕram dăt	*he devotes his care to writing.*
Abl.	littĕrās tractandō mens ăcŭĭtŭr	*the wits are sharpened by dealing with letters.*

Obs. The Accusative Case of the Gerund is used only with Prepositions; otherwise the Present Infinitive is used: as, disco nătāre, *I learn swimming.*

The Gerundive.

§ 31. The Gerundive is a Passive Verbal Adjective : as, scrībendŭs, ă, um, *to be written*, *necessary* or *fit to be written*.

When the Verb from which the Gerundive comes governs an Accusative Case, the Gerundive agrees with the Nominative Case of its Noun : as, scrībendă est mĭhi ĕpistŏlă, *a letter must be* or *ought to be written by me*, or *I must* or *ought to write a letter.*

The person by whom the thing is *to be done* is usually put in the Dative (see preceding example).

§ 32. But when the Verb from which the Gerundive comes is intransitive or governs any other case than the Accusative, the Gerundive is used impersonally in the Neuter Singular with the Verb est. The Object is put in the case which the Verb governs, and the Subject, when expressed, usually in the Dative Case : as, obtempĕrandum est virtūtĭs praeceptīs (*dative*), *we must obey the lessons of virtue;* cuīque (*dative*) ūtendum est jūdĭcĭō sŭō (*ablative*), *each one must use his own judgment.*

But the Ablative with ăb, ā, is also used after the Gerundive, and is preferred when ambiguity would arise from the use of the Dative.

§ 33. The Gerundive participle is very often used in Latin where in English a verbal noun in -*ing* is followed by a Direct Object : as, *fond of waging* WAR, *a plan of* (*for*) *burning* THE CITY. This substantive then becomes immediately dependent upon the foregoing part of the sentence, and the verbal noun is expressed by a Gerundive participle agreeing with it in gender, number, and case.

PART III.

ADDITIONS TO THE GRAMMATICAL FORMS.

I. ALPHABET.

1. The LATIN LANGUAGE was the language of the inhabitants of Latium, of which Rome was the chief city.

2. The LATIN ALPHABET consists of the same number of letters as the English without w.

> NOTE 1. The distinction of the forms **i, j** and **v, u**, is of modern origin. **i** originally represented both the vowel **i** and the semi-vowel **j** (probably pronounced *y*), and *v* both the vowel *u* and the semi-vowel *v*.
>
> 2. The letters **y** and **z** occur only in words borrowed from the Greek.

3. The letters consist of (1) Vowels, which can be sounded by themselves ; and (2) Consonants, which cannot be sounded without a vowel.

4. The VOWELS are a, e, i, o, u, y.

5. The CONSONANTS may be classified according to the organ used in articulating them, and may be divided into

Mutes (closed sounds), capable only of a momentary sound, and *Spirants* (open sounds), having a more continuous sound. The Mutes and Spirants are also divided into HARD (*tenues*) and SOFT (*mediae*).

<p align="center">CLASSIFIED TABLE OF CONSONANTS.</p>

	Mutes.		Spirants.		
	Hard (tenues).	Soft (mediae).	Hard (tenues).	Soft (mediae).	Nasals.
GUTTURALS (throat sounds) }	c (k), q	g	h		ng
DENTALS (teeth sounds) }	t	d	s	[z]	n
LABIALS (lip sounds) }	p	b	f	v	m

LINGUALS (tongue sounds) } l, r.

NOTE 1. *K* was used only before *a* at the beginning of a few words: as, Kălendae, *the Kalends.*

2. *Q* is used only in the combination of *qu* followed by a vowel: as, sĕquor, *I follow;* quĭs, *who?*

Certain Consonants are further classified as *Liquids* and *Sibilants.*

<p align="center">The <i>Liquids</i> are l, m, n, r.</p>
<p align="center">The <i>Sibilants</i> are s, x, z.</p>

X is compounded of *cs* or *gs:* as, dux=ducs, *leader;* rex=regs, *king.*

The letters j and v are also called *Semi-vowels;* the sounds of i and y before a vowel becoming consonantal.

On the pronunciation of the letters, see p. 2.

6. QUANTITY.—A Vowel is either *short* or *long*, according as it is to be pronounced lightly and rapidly, or slowly, so as to allow the voice to dwell upon it.

A *short vowel* is marked by (˘): as, păter, *a father.* A

vowel followed by another vowel or the letter *h* is usually short : as, pŭer, *a boy ;* vĕho, *I carry.*

A *long vowel* is marked by (¯), and may be either long by nature : as, māter, *a mother ;* or long by position : as, măgnus, *great ;* dūx, *a leader.* A vowel is long by position when it is followed by two or more consonants or by a double consonant.

A *doubtful vowel* is one that is sometimes short, sometimes long ; and is often marked (˘̄). A vowel naturally short is doubtful when followed by a mute and a liquid (especially *l* or *r*) : as, dŭplex or dūplex, *twofold ;* tenĕbrae or tenēbrae, *darkness.* But a vowel naturally long remains so, although followed by a mute and a liquid : as, āter, ātra, ātrum, *black.*

7. ACCENT.—In words of two syllables the accent is on the first syllable : as, músa, *a muse ;* dólus, *deceit.*

In words of three or more syllables the accent is on the penultimate, i.e. the last syllable but one, if this syllable is long : as, Rōmā́nus, *a Roman ;* or on the antepenultimate, i.e. the last syllable but two, if the penultimate is short : as, dŏ́minus, *a lord.*

NOTE.—Neither Accents nor Quantities were written by the Romans themselves.

II. PARTS OF SPEECH.   INFLEXION.

[*See page* 1.]

There are eight parts of speech :

1. The **Noun** (or SUBSTANTIVE) is the name of a person or thing : as, Caesăr, *Caesar ;* vĭr, *a man ;* dŏmŭs, *a house ;* virtūs, *valour.*

> *Obs.* Names of persons and places are called *Proper Nouns :* all other Nouns are called *Common Nouns* or *Appellatives.*

2. The **Adjective** is joined to a Noun to express its quality or nature : as, bŏnus vir, *a good man.*

3. The **Pronoun** is used instead of a Noun : as, ĕgŏ, *I ;* tū, *thou.*

4. The **Verb** makes an assertion about something : as, ĕquus currit, *the horse runs ;* vir sĕdet, *the man sits.*

5. The **Adverb** is joined to Verbs, Adjectives, and other Adverbs, to qualify their meaning : as, cĕlĕrĭtĕr currit,

he runs quickly; măgĭs pĭŭs, *more dutiful;* sătĭs dĭū, *long enough.*

6. The **Preposition** is placed before Nouns to mark their relation to other words : as, ĭn, *in;* hăbĭto ĭn urbĕ, *I dwell in the city.*

7. The **Conjunction** unites words and sentences : as, ĕt, *and;* ŭt, *in order that:* vĭr et fēmĭnă, *the man and the woman;* ĕdĭmŭs ŭt vīvāmŭs, *we eat in order that we may live.*

8. The **Interjection** is a word of exclamation : as, heu, *alas*

> NOTE.—There is no article in the Latin language : thus dŏmŭs may be translated by either *house,* or *a house,* or *the house.*

Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, and Verbs are inflected : that is, their final syllables are changed in order to mark their number or relation to other words.

The inflexion of Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns is called *Declension:* the inflexion of Verbs is called *Conjugation.*

Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections are not inflected, and are frequently called PARTICLES.

The *Stem* of inflected words is that part of the word which remains after the changeable endings are taken away : thus, in trab-s, *a plank,* trăb-ĭs, *of a plank,* trăb-ĭ, *to a plank,* the Stem is trăb : and in lĕg-o, *I read,* lĕgĭs, *thou readest,* the Stem is lĕg. In ămo, *I love* (stem ama-), there is a contraction ; ămo = ăma-o : Stud. Lat. Gr. § 121.

III. DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

[See page 3.]

1. Nouns are declined by *Number* and *Case.*

2. There are two Numbers : *Singular,* which designates *one,* and *Plural,* which designates more than *one.*

3. There are three Genders : *Masculine, Feminine,* and *Neuter.*

> Nouns which may be either Masculine or Feminine are called *Common*

4. There are six CASES in Latin :—

The **Nominative** answers the question *Who?* or *What?*
denoting the Subject of a sentence : as, măgistĕr dŏcĕt,
the master teaches ; dŏmŭs est amplă, *the house is large.*

The **Genitive** answers the question *Whose?* or *of What?*
as, măgistrī dŏmus, *the master's house;* fŏliă arbŏrum, *the
leaves of trees.*

The **Dative** answers the question *To* or *for whom?* *To* or
for what? as, do librum măgistrō, *I give the book to the
master.*

The **Accusative** answers the question *Whom?* or *What?*
as, ămo măgistrum, *I love the master.* It also signifies
motion *towards :* as, eo Rōmam, *I go to Rome.*

The **Vocative** is used for addressing : as, O măgister,
O master !

The **Ablative** answers the questions *By* or *with what?*
When? &c. : as, hastā interfectŭs est, *he was killed with a
spear ;* aestātĕ, *in the summer.* It also signifies motion or
separation *from :* as, ăbeo Rōmā, *I depart from Rome.*

NOTE.—The *Gen., Dat., Acc.,* and *Abl.* are called the *Oblique*
cases.

There was in Old Latin another case called the Lŏca-
tive, answering to the question *Where?* It is the same as
the *Gen.* in Singular names of towns of the First and
Second Declensions : as, Rōmae, *at Rome ;* Cŏrinthī, *at
Corinth.* Other common Locatives are dŏmī, *at home ;* rūrī,
in the country ; mīlĭtiae, bellī, *in war.* In the Plural of all
Declensions its place is taken by the *Abl.* : as, Athēnīs, *at
Athens.* In the Sing. of the Third Declension, the *Loc.*
sometimes occurs, but the *Abl.* is more usual. (See p. 115.)

5. There are five Declensions, distinguished by the
endings of the Genitive Case.

	I	II	III	IV	V
Gen. Sing.	ae	ī	ĭs	ūs	eī
Gen. Plur.	Ā-rum	Ō-rum	{-um / Ĭ-um}	Ŭ-um	Ē-rum

The *Stems* of Nouns can be ascertained by taking away
the terminations *um* or *rum* of the Genitive Plural. Hence
the final letter of the Stem is in—

I	II	III	IV	V
A	O	consonant or I	U	E

NOTES.

1. The *Nom.* and *Voc.* of all Nouns are alike, except the *Nom.* and *Voc.* of Nouns of the Second Declension in **us.**
2. The *Nom.*, *Voc.*, and *Acc.* of all Neuter Nouns are alike, and the Plural of these cases always ends in ă.

IV. FIRST OR **A** DECLENSION.

[The Declension is given on page 3.]

NOTES.

1. LOC. SING.—This case originally ended in **i**, which was contracted with the final *a* of the noun into **ae**: as, Rōmae, *at Rome*; mīlĭtĭae, *in warfare.*
2. GEN. PLUR.—A form in **um** instead of *ārum* is used:—
(i) In compounds of cŏlo and gigno: as, caelĭcŏlum, from caelĭcŏla, *an inhabitant of heaven*; terrĭgĕnum, from terrĭgĕna, *earthborn.*
(ii) In drachmum, amphŏrum, from drachma, amphŏra, when used with numerals.
(iii) With Greek patronymics: as, Aeneădum, from Aeneădēs, *a descendant of Aeneas.*
3. DAT. AND ABL. PLUR. IN ābŭs.—This form occurs only in a few words, especially dĕa, *goddess*; fīlia, *daughter.* These forms are used when it is necessary to distinguish such words from the corresponding Masc. Nouns of the Second Declension: as, fīliĭs et fīliābus, *to sons and daughters*; deīs et deābus, *to gods and goddesses.*

Declension of Greek Nouns of First Declension.

They are chiefly proper names, and are thus declined:—

Nom.	*Acc.*	*Gen.*	*Dat.*	*Voc.*	*Abl.*
Ossă	am, ăn	ae	ae	ă	ā
Electră	am, ăn	ae	ae	ă	ā
hўperbŏlē	ēn	ēs	ae	ē	ē
Circē	ēn	ēs	ae	ē	ē
Circă	am	ae	ae	ă	ā
Aenēās	ān, am	ae	ae	ā	ā
Pēlīdēs	ēn	ae	ae	ē	ē (ā)
geōmetrēs	ēn	ae	ae	ă	ā

V. SECOND OR **O** DECLENSION.

[The Declension is given on pages 5 and 6.]

NOTES.

1. NOM. SING.—(i) The **o** of the Stem was originally found
in Nom. and Acc. Sing., and Stems in *vo* and *quo* frequently
retained the *o* in order to avoid the concurrence of the
double *u* (*v*): as, Nom. servo-s, *slave*, Acc. servo-m; Nom.
ĕquo-s, *horse*; Acc. ĕquo-m.

(ii) Stems in ĕro originally ended in ĕrŭs in the Nom. Sing., as
pŭĕrŭs, afterwards pŭĕr. Most of these nouns drop the *e*,
except in the Nom. and Voc. Sing.: as, măgist(e)r-ī.

2. GEN. SING.—Nouns in *ĭus* and *ĭum* often contract *ĭi* into **ī**:
as, fīlĭŭs, *a son*, Gen. fīlĭī and fīlī; nĕgōtĭum, *business*,
nĕgotĭī and nĕgōtī. But in Adjectives the double *i* was used:
as, patrĭī from patrĭŭs, *paternal*.

3. VOC. SING.—Fīlius, *a son*, gĕnius, *a guardian deity*, and
Proper Names in *ius* have the Voc. in *ī*: as, fīlī, gĕnī,
Mercŭrī, *Mercury*. Other Nouns in *ius* appear to have kept
the *ie* uncontracted: as, flŭvĭĕ, *river*; glădĭĕ, *sword*. So
likewise Adjectives: as, impĭĕ, *impious*.

4. GEN. PLUR.—A form in **um** instead of *ōrum* is used:—

(i) In words signifying money, weights, measures: as, num-
mum from nummus, *a piece of money*; sestertĭum from
sestertius, *a sesterce, a silver coin*; mōdium from mōdius, *a
Roman corn-measure.*

(ii) In numerals: as, bīnum from bīnī, *two a-piece*; dŭcentum
from dŭcenti, *two hundred.*

(iii) In the names of peoples in poetry: as, Argīvum.

(iv) In some other words: as, vĭrum from vĭr, *a man*; dĕum
from dĕus, *a god*; fabrum from făbĕr, *a smith*; sŏcĭum from
sŏcĭŭs, *an ally.*

Declension of Greek Nouns of Second Declension.

Nom.	Dēlŏs		Andrŏgĕōs	
Gen.	Dēlī		Andrŏgĕī, Andrŏgĕō	
Dat.	Dēlō		Andrŏgĕō	
Acc.	Dēlŏn or Dēlum		Andrŏgĕōn, Andrŏgĕō	
Voc.	Dēlĕ		Andrŏgĕōs	
Abl.	Dēlō.		Andrŏgĕō.	

Nom.	Orphēus
Gen.	Orphĕī, Orphĕī
Dat.	Orphĕō
Acc.	Orphĕum
Voc.	Orphēu
Abl.	Orphĕō.

Obs. Substantives in *ōs* sometimes form the Accusative in
ōnă (as if from stem in *ōn*): as, *Andrŏgeōnă.*

VI. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

[The Declension of these Adjectives is given on pages 7 and 8.]

NOTES.

1. The Adjectives declined like tĕnĕr are :—

asper, ĕra, ĕrum,	*rough.*	līber, ĕra, ĕrum,	*free.*
lăcer, ĕra, ĕrum,	*torn.*	mĭser, ĕra, ĕrum,	*wretched.*
prosper, ĕra, ĕrum,	*prosperous.*		

Also all Adjectives in *fer* and *ger:* as, lānĭger, ĕra, ĕrum,
wool-bearing; ŏpĭfer, ĕra, ĕrum, *help-bringing.*
All other Adjectives in *ĕr* drop the ĕ, and are declined like nĭger.
Dextĕr is declined in both ways, dextĕră and dextră, dextĕrum and dextrum.

2. There is one Adjective in *ŭr* of the first and second de-
clensions, sătŭr, sătŭră, sătŭrum, *full of food, sated.*

The Comparison of Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions is given on pages 24–26.

VII. THIRD OR Consonant AND I DECLENSION.

[The Declension is given on pages 11–17.]

There are two stems in u—namely, gru-, *crane;* su-, *swine*—which belong to the Consonant Declension, and not to the U or Fourth Declension. They are mono-syllabic, and the *u* is radical; whereas in the Fourth Declension the u is part of a suffix attached to the root. Akin to these two stems in u are two stems in v: namely, bŏv-, *ox, cow;* and Jov- (Nom. Jū-pĭtĕr=Jŏv, pătĕr), *the god Jupiter.* (See Declension, p. 22.)

NOTES.

1. Loc. SING. originally ended in i, but is generally the same as the *Abl.*: as, Carthāgĭn-ī or Carthāgĭn-ĕ, *at Carthage;* rūr-ī or rūr-ĕ, *in the country;* vespĕr-ī or vespĕr-ĕ, *in the evening.*

2. ACC. SING. IN im AND ABL. SING. IN i.—These are the proper forms in i Stems. Some Nouns have only im in *Acc.* and ī in *Abl.*; others have both im and em in *Acc.* and ī or ĕ in *Abl.*; and others have only em in *Acc.* and ī or ĕ in *Abl.*

Examples.

tussi (f.), cough.		febri (f.), fever.	cīvi (c.), citizen.
N. V.	tuss-ĭs	febr-ĭs	cīv-ĭs
Acc.	tuss-im	febr-im, em	cīv-em
Gen.	tuss-ĭs	febr-ĭs	cīv-ĭs
Dat.	tuss-ī	febr-ī	cīv-ī
Abl.	tuss-ī	febr-ī, ĕ	cīv-ī, ĕ

(i) Decline like tussĭs : sĭtĭs (f.), thirst ; sĕcūrĭs (f.), axe ; Tĭbĕrĭs, the river Tiber.

(ii) Decline like febrĭs : puppĭs (f.), stern of ship ; turrĭs (f.), tower.

(iii) Decline like cīvĭs : amnĭs (m.), river ; ignĭs (m.), fire.

Pars, gen. partis (f.), a part, has sometimes partim, because the Stem was originally parti.

Some neuter nouns—like ănĭmăl, an animal ; calcăr, a spur— have the Abl. in i, because the stem originally ended in i.

3. GEN. PLUR. in um and ĭum.

RULE I.—If the Stem ends in a **consonant**, the Genitive Plural ends in um : as,

Stem.		Nom. Sing.	Gen. Sing.	Gen. Pl.
rēg,	king	rex	rēg-ĭs	rēg-um
lăpĭd,	stone	lăpĭ-s	lăpĭd-ĭs	lăpĭd-um

Exception 1. Monosyllabic words, the Stems of which end in two consonants, have the *Gen.* in **ium**, not *um*. But these are only apparent exceptions, as the original Stem ended in **i**.

Stem.		Nom. Sing.	Gen. Sing.	Gen. Pl.
urb,	city	urb-s	urb-ĭs	urb-ĭum
arc,	citadel	arx	arc-ĭs	arc-ĭum

Also in polysyllabic words, the *Nom. Sing.* of which ends in *ns*, the Gen. Pl. is usually in *ĭum* : as, ădŏlescent-ĭum rather than ădŏlescent-um, clĭent-ĭum rather than clĭent-um. (But părens, *parent*, has usually părent-um.) Some nouns in *as* have both forms : as, cīvĭtas, *state, Gen.* cīvĭtāt-um or ĭum. So also tempestas, *tempest.*

Exception 2. The following monosyllabic words, the Stems of which end in one consonant, also have the *Gen.* in **ium**, not *um* :—

Stem.		Nom. Sing.	Gen. Sing.	Gen. Pl.
līt,	lawsuit	līs	līt-ĭs	līt-ĭum
glīs,	dormouse	glīs	glīr-ĭs	glīr-ĭum
vīs,	force	vīs		vīr-ĭum
mūs,	mouse	mūs	mūr-ĭs	mūr-ĭum
măs,	male	măs	măr-ĭs	măr-ĭum
nĭv,	snow	nix	nĭv-ĭs	nĭv-ĭum
fauc,	throat			fauc-ĭum
strĭg,	screech-owl	strix	strĭg-ĭs	strĭg-ĭum

Some of these are probably stems in **-i.**

Exception 3. The following words, of which the Nom. Sing. ends in **ĕr**, have also the *Gen.* in **ium**, not *um*. But these are only apparent exceptions, as the original Stem ended in **i**.

Nom. Sing.		Gen. Sing	Gen. Plur.
imbĕr,	*rain*	imbrĭs	imbrĭum.
ūtĕr,	*a bag made of leather*	ūtrĭs	utrĭum.
lintĕr,	*a wherry*	lintrĭs	lintrĭum.
Insūbĕr,	*name of a Gallic tribe*	Iusubrĭs	Insubrĭum.
ventĕr,	*the belly*	ventrĭs	ventrĭum.

RULE II.—If the Stem ends in **i**, the Genitive Plural ends in **ium**, the *i* being part of the Stem : as,

Stem.		Nom. Sing.	Gen. Sing.	Gen. Pl.
hosti,	*enemy*	hostĭ-s	hostĭ-s	hostĭ-um
nūbi,	*cloud*	nūbē-s	nūbĭ-s	nūbĭ-um
mări,	*sea*	mărĕ	mărĭ s	mărĭ-um
ănĭmāli,	*animal*	ănĭmăl	ănĭmālĭ-s	ănĭmālĭ-um
calcāri,	*spur*	calcăr	calcārĭ-s	calcārĭ-um

Exception.—The following Stems in *i* form the *Gen.* in **um**, not **ĭum** : as,

Stem.		Nom. Sing.	Gen. Sing.	Gen. Pl.
jŭvĕni,	*youth*	jŭvĕnĭ-s	jŭvĕnĭ-s	jŭvĕn-um
vāti,	*prophet*	vātē-s	vătĭ-s	vāt-um
căni,	*dog*	cănĭ-s	cănĭ-s	căn-um
vŏlŭcri,	*bird*	vŏlŭcrĭ-s	vŏlŭcrĭ-s	vŏlŭcr-um

The three words **ăpis**, *a bee ;* **mensis**, *a month ;* **sēdēs**, *a seat*, have sometimes the *Gen.* in **um** as well as **ium**.

RULE III.—Acc. Pl. in **īs**, **ēs** AND **ăs**.—Stems in **i** have properly the ending **īs**, but many have **ēs** also : as, ignĭs, *fire*, *Acc. Pl.* ignīs and ignēs ; mons, *mountain*, *Acc. Pl.* montīs and montēs (see above, Rule I., Exception 1) ; imbĕr, *rain*, *Acc. Pl.* imbrīs and imbrēs (see above, Rule I., Exception 3). Some proper names have the Gk. *Acc. Pl.* in **ăs** : as, Arăbăs, Sērăs.

Declension of Greek Nouns of Third Declension.

	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Periclēs	Isĭs	Dīdō	Atreus	Trŏădēs, ĕs
Acc.	Periclem, ĕa	Isĭdem, ă / Isĭn	Dīdō, ōnem	Atrĕa	Trŏădēs, ăs
Gen.	Periclĭs, ī	Isĭdĭs, ŏs	Dīdūs, ōnĭs	Atrĕŏs, ī	Trŏădum
Dat.	Periclī	Isĭdī	Dīdō, ōnī	Atrĕī, eō	Trŏădĭbŭs / Trŏăsĭ(n)
Voc.	Periclēs, ēs, ē	Isĭ	Dīdō	Atreu	Trŏădēs, ĕs
Abl.	Periclē	Isĭdĕ	Dīdō, ōnĕ	Atrĕō	Trŏădĭbŭs

VIII. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

[*The Declension of these Adjectives is given on pages* 18, 19.]

Most Adjectives of the Third Declension have Stems ending in **ĭ**, and form *Abl. Sing.* in ī, *Nom. Plur. Neut.* in ĭă, *Gen. Plur.* in ĭum, *Acc. Plur. Masc.* and *Fem.* ēs or īs. Even Adjectives of one termination, having Stems ending in a Consonant, usually have the same case-endings.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Comparatives have *Abl. Sing.* in ĕ, very rarely *i ; Nom. Plur. Neut.* in ă ; *Gen. Pl.* in um.

2. A few Adjectives, with Stems ending in a Consonant, have *Abl. Sing.* in ĕ, *Gen. Plur.* in um: as, princeps, *chief*, princĭp-ĕ, princĭp-um ; dīves, *rich*, dīvĭt-ĕ, dīvĭt-um ; paupĕr, *poor*, paupĕr-ĕ, paupĕr-um.   Vĕtŭs, *old*, has *Nom. Plur. Neut.* vĕtĕr-ă, *Gen. Plur.* vĕtĕr-um.

3. When an Adjective is used as a Noun, it usually prefers *ĕ:* as, sĭnĕ părĕ, *without an equal.*

4. Present Participles in **ns**, as ămans, *loving,* when used strictly as such, have usually *ĕ*, especially in the Absolute construction: *e.g.* Tarquinio regnantĕ, *when Tarquin was reigning.*   When used as Adjectives, they follow the general rule, and take oftener *ī* than *ĕ:* e.g. insĕquentī noctĕ, *in the following night.*

Obs. The Comparison of Adjectives of the Third Declension is given on pages 24 and 25.

IX. THE FOURTH OR **U** DECLENSION.

[*The Declension is given on page* 20.]

GENDER.—Nouns in **us** of the Fourth Declension are regularly masculine, with the exception of the names of trees and of women, and a few other words.

NOTES.

1. The GEN. SING. *ūs* is a contraction of *uĭs :* as, grădūs from grăduĭs.

2. The DAT. SING. *uī* is often contracted into *ū :* as, grăduī, grădū.

3. The DAT. and ABL. PLUR. of, the following words end in *ŭbŭs,* but portus, spĕcus, and vĕru have also *ĭbus :*—

ăcus (*f.*)	*needle.*	portus (*m.*)	*harbour.*
arcus (*m.*)	*bow.*	spĕcus (*m., f., & n.*)	*cave.*
artūs (*m.*), only *pl. joints.*		trĭbus (*f.*)	*tribe.*
lăcus (*m.*)	*lake, tank.*	vĕru (*n.*)	*spit.*

4. Dŏmus, *a house,* belongs partly to the Second, partly to the Fourth Declension.   It is declined on p. 22.

X. The Fifth or E Declension.

[The Declension is given on page 21.]

NOTES.

1. Rēs and diēs are the only words of this Declension which have a complete Plural. The following words occur in the Plural in *Nom.*, *Acc.*, and *Voc.* No others have any Plural.

ācĭēs	*edge.*	effĭgĭēs	*likeness.*	spĕcĭēs	*form.*
făcĭēs	*face.*	sĕrĭēs	*row.*	spēs	*hope.*

2. In the *Gen.* and *Dat.* *Sing.* the e in eī is usually long after a vowel, but short after a consonant: as, dĭ-ēī, făci-ēī; but, rĕī, fĭdĕī.

3. In the *Gen.* and *Dat. Sing.* the *ei* is sometimes contracted into *ē*: as, dĭē, fĭdē.

XI. Irregular and Defective Nouns.

[The Declension of some Irregular Nouns is given on page 22.]

NOTES.

1. Some Nouns are not declined: as, fās, *that which is permitted by divine law*; nĕfās, *that which is opposed to divine law*; nĭhĭl, *nothing*; instăr, *standard, scale*. They have only *Nom.* and *Acc. Sing.*

2. Some Nouns are written as one word, but declined as two: as, respublĭca, *commonwealth*, which is declined on page 22. In păter-fămĭlĭās, *the father of a family*, only the former part is declined: *Gen.* patris-fămĭlĭās; *Dat.* patri-fămĭlĭās, &c. Fămĭlĭās is the old form of *Gen.* of the First Declension.

3. Some Nouns have no Plural: as, aurum, *gold*; argentum, *silver*; and, as a general rule, Abstract Nouns: as, pax, *peace*; justĭtia, *justice*. But these latter are occasionally found in the Plural, where the sense requires it.

4. Many Nouns have no Singular: as, dīvĭtiae, *riches*; nuptiae, *wedding*; tĕnebrae, *darkness*; lībĕri, *children*; arma, *arms*; mānes, *shades of the dead*; also many names of towns, as, Athēnae, *Athens*.

5. Some Nouns have a different meaning in the Singular and the Plural : as—

	Sing.		*Plur.*
aedēs,	*a temple ;*	aedēs,	*a house.*
ăqua,	*water ;*	ăquae,	*medicinal springs.*
auxĭlium,	*help ;*	auxĭlia,	*auxiliary forces.*
castrum,	*a fort ;*	castră,	*a camp.*
cōpia,	*plenty ;*	cōpiae,	*forces.*
impĕdīmentum,	*a hindrance ;*	impĕdīmenta,	*baggage.*
littĕra,	*a letter of the al-*	littĕrae,	*an epistle.*
	phabet ;		
lūdus,	*play, school ;*	lūdī,	*public games.*
ŏpĕra,	*exertion ;*	ŏpĕrae,	*workmen.*
ŏpis (Gen.),	*help ;*	ŏpēs,	*power, wealth.*

6. Some Nouns are defective in Case : as, vīs, *strength*, declined on p. 22. *Gen.* vĭcĭs, *change*, has only *Acc.* em, *Abl.* ĕ, *Plur. Nom. Acc.* vĭcēs, *Dat. Abl.* vĭcĭbŭs.

7. Some Nouns are *Hĕtĕrŏclĭtă* ; that is, have a two-fold Declension :—

(i) Some Nouns fluctuate between the Second and Fourth Declensions : as, dŏmus, *a house* (see p. 22), and many names of trees : as, laurus, *a bay-tree ;* cŭpressus, *a cypress ;* fĭcus, *a fig-tree ;* pīnus, *a pine-tree :* also cŏlus, *a distaff.*

(ii) Some Nouns fluctuate between the Third and Fifth Declensions : as, plebs, plēbis, and plēbēs, plēbĕī, *the commonalty.*

(iii) Jūgĕrum, *an acre*, is of the Second Declension in the *Sing.*, but of the Third in the *Plur.* : as, jūgĕră, jūgĕrum, jūgĕrĭbŭs. Vās, vāsis, *a vessel*, is of the Third Declension in the Sing., but of the Second in the Plural : as, vāsă, vāsōrum, vāsīs.

8. Some Nouns are *Hĕtĕrŏgĕnĕă* ; that is, have a different gender in the Singular and Plural :—

	Sing.		*Plur.*
jŏcus (*m.*),	*a joke ;*	jŏcī (*m.*), jŏcă (*n.*).	
lŏcus (*m.*),	*a place ;*	lŏcă (*n.*), lŏcī (*m.*).	
carbăsus (*f.*),	*fine linen ;*	carbăsă (*n.*), *sails.*	
frēnum (*n.*),	*a bit, bridle ;*	frēnī (*m.*), frēnă (*n.*).	
Tartărus (*m.*),	*the infernal regions ;*	Tartără (*n.*).	
rastrum (*n.*),	*a rake ;*	rastrī (*m.*), rastră (*n.*).	

XII. The Genders of Nouns.

GENERAL RULES.

1. Males, Mountains, Months, Winds, and Rivers, are *Masculine*.

2. Females, Countries, Islands, Towns, and Trees, are *Feminine*.

3. Indeclinable Nouns, as, fās, *that which is permitted by heaven*, nĕfās, *that which is not permitted by heaven*, nĭhĭl, *nothing*, are *Neuter*.

4. Nouns denoting both the male and the female, as, conjux, *husband* or *wife*, are *Common*.

SPECIAL RULES RELATING TO THE DECLENSIONS.

I. First Declension.—All Nouns of the First Declension are Feminine, unless they designate males : as, nauta, *a sailor*. Also some names of rivers : as, Sĕquăna, *the Seine;* with Hādria, *the Adriatic Sea*.

II. Second Declension.—Nouns in us and er are Masculine ; those in um are Neuter.

A few Nouns in us are Feminine : names of trees, as mālus, *an apple-tree :* also, alvus, *the bowels ;* hŭmus, *the ground ;* vannus, *a winnowing fan ;* arctus, *the constellation Bear ;* carbăsus, *fine linen*.

Three Nouns in us are Neuter : as, vīrus, *poison ;* vulgus, *the multitude* (also Masc.) ; pĕlăgus, *the (open) sea*.

III. Third Declension.—Nouns of the Third Declension are Masculine, Feminine, or Neuter. Their gender must be learned by practice. But the following terminations indicate genders :—

1. *Masculine.*—(*a*) Abstract Nouns in ŏr derived from verbs: as, ăm-or, *love,* from ămo, *I love.*

        (*b*) Nouns in tŏr derived from verbs denoting an agent: as, ămā-tor, *a lover,* from ămo, *I love ;* vic-tor, *a conqueror,* from vinco, *I conquer.*

2. *Feminine.*—(*a*) Abstract Nouns in **io** and **tio** derived from verbs:
as, audī-tio, *hearing*, from audio, *I hear.*

(*b*) Abstract Nouns in **tūs** derived from Nouns : as,
vir-tus, *manliness*, from vir, *a man.*

(*c*) Abstract Nouns in **tās** derived from Nouns and
Adjectives: as, cīvĭ-tas, *citizenship*, from cīvis,
a citizen; crūdēlĭ-tas, *cruelty*, from crūdēlis,
cruel.

(*d*) Abstract Nouns in **tūdo** derived from Adjectives :
as, longĭ-tūdo, *length*, from longus, *long.*

(*e*) Nouns in **trix** derived from Nouns in *tor* and
denoting a female agent : as, vic-trix, *a female
conqueror*, from vic-tor.

3. *Neuter.* — (*a*) Nouns in **ĕ**: as, mărĕ, *the sea.*

(*b*) Nouns in **mĕn** derived from Verbs : as, flū-men,
a river, from flu-ĕre, *to flow.*

(*c*) Nouns in **ŭs** and **ŭr**: as, ŏpus, *a work;* fulgur,
lightning. (But lĕpus, lĕpŏris, *a hare,* is
Masculine; and Vĕnus, Vĕnĕris, *Venus,* is
Feminine.)

IV. FOURTH DECLENSION. — Nouns in **ŭs** are mostly
Masculine : those in **u** are all Neuter.

A few in **us** are Feminine : namely, mănus, *a hand;*
ăcus, *a needle;* cŏlus (4 and 2), *a distaff;* dŏmus (4 and 2),
a house; portĭcus, *a portico;* nŭrus, *a daughter-in-law;*
socrus, *a mother-in-law;* ănus, *an old woman;* trĭbus, *a
tribe;* īdūs (*pl.*), *the Ides* (13th or 15th of a month) :—

' In March, July, October, May,
The Nones fall on the seventh day '—

and consequently the *Ides* on the 15th. In all the other
months the *Nones* (Nōnae, arum) fall on the 5th and the
Ides on the 13th.

V. FIFTH DECLENSION.—All are Feminine except dĭēs,
day, which is Common in the Singular, and always Mas-
culine in the Plural ; and mĕrīdĭēs, *midday*, which is
Masculine.

XIII. The Numerals.

1. Numeral Adjectives are of three kinds :—
   (i) Cardinal, denoting number simply or absolutely :
       as, ūnŭs, *one ;* dŭŏ, *two ;* trēs, *three.*
   (ii) Ordinal, denoting numbers regarded as forming
        part of a series : as, prīmŭs, *first ;* sĕcundŭs, or
        altĕr, *second.*
   (iii) Distributive, denoting numbers regarded as
         constituting groups, each group being treated as a
         unit; which may be translated in various ways: as,
         bīnī, ae, a, *two each, two a-piece, two by two.*

2. Numeral Adverbs denote the *number of times* that
anything occurs : as, sĕmĕl, *once ;* bĭs, *twice ;* tĕr, *three
times ;* quŏtiēs or quŏtiens, *how many times.*

For a complete table of Numerals, Cardinal, Ordinal,
and Distributive, with their corresponding Adverbs, see
next page.

3. Declension of the Numerals.—The Declension of
the Cardinals ūnŭs, dŭŏ, trēs, is given on pages 24, 27.

Unŭs is used in the Plural with Plural Nouns which have
a different meaning from that of the Singular : as, ūnă
littĕra, *one letter of the alphabet ;* ūnae littĕrae, *one letter* or
epistle.

The Cardinals from quattŭŏr, *four,* to centum, *a hundred,*
are indeclinable.

Dŭcentī, ae, ă, *two hundred,* and the following hundreds,
are declined regularly.

Millĕ, *a thousand,* is usually an indeclinable adjective ; but
millĭă (usu. mīlĭă), *thousands,* plural, is a Noun : as, millĕ
hŏmĭnēs, *a thousand men* (less frequently, mille hŏmĭnum) ;
but dŭŏ mīlĭă hŏmĭnum, *two thousand men,* literally, *two
thousands of men.* Its declension is given on p. 27.

The *Ordinals* are declined regularly as adjectives.

Notes.

1. From 13 to 19 inclusive the smaller Ordinal number is
   placed first without ĕt : as, tertius dĕcĭmus, *the thirteenth.*
   From 21 to 99 inclusive, both in Cardinals and Ordinals, the
   larger numeral is placed first without ĕt, or the smaller
   numeral first with ĕt : as, vīgintī ūnus, or ūnus et vīgintī,
   twenty-one or *one and twenty ;* vīcēsĭmus prīmus or prīmus

2. *Feminine.*—(*a*) Abstract Nouns in io and tio derived from verbs : as, audī-tio, *hearing*, from audio, *I hear.*

    (*b*) Abstract Nouns in tūs derived from Nouns : as, vir-tus, *manliness*, from vir, *a man.*

    (*c*) Abstract Nouns in tās derived from Nouns and Adjectives : as, cīvī-tas, *citizenship*, from cīvis, *a citizen ;* crūdēlī-tas, *cruelty*, from crūdēlis, *cruel.*

    (*d*) Abstract Nouns in tūdo derived from Adjectives : as, longĭ-tūdo, *length*, from longus, *long.*

    (*e*) Nouns in trix derived from Nouns in *tor* and denoting a female agent : as, vic-trix, *a female conqueror*, from vic-tor.

3. *Neuter.* — (*a*) Nouns in ĕ : as, mărĕ, *the sea.*

    (*b*) Nouns in mĕn derived from Verbs : as, flū-mĕn, *a river*, from flu-ĕre, *to flow.*

    (*c*) Nouns in ŭs and ŭr : as, ŏpus, *a work ;* fulgur, *lightning.* (But lĕpus, lĕpŏris, *a hare*, is Masculine; and Vĕnus, Vĕnĕris, *Venus*, is Feminine.)

IV. FOURTH DECLENSION. — Nouns in ŭs are mostly Masculine : those in u are all Neuter.

A few in us are Feminine : namely, mănus, *a hand ;* ăcus, *a needle ;* cŏlus (4 and 2), *a distaff ;* dŏmus (4 and 2), *a house ;* portĭcus, *a portico ;* nŭrus, *a daughter-in-law ;* socrus, *a mother-in-law ;* ănus, *an old woman ;* trĭbus, *a tribe ;* īdūs (*pl.*), *the Ides* (13th or 15th of a month) :—

    ' In March, July, October, May,
    The Nones fall on the seventh day '—

and consequently the *Ides* on the 15th. In all the other months the *Nones* (Nōnae, arum) fall on the 5th and the *Ides* on the 13th.

V. FIFTH DECLENSION.—All are Feminine except diēs, *day*, which is Common in the Singular, and always Masculine in the Plural ; and mĕrīdiēs, *midday*, which is Masculine.

XIII. The Numerals.

1. Numeral Adjectives are of three kinds :—
   (i) Cardinal, denoting number simply or absolutely :
      as, ūnŭs, *one ;* dŭŏ, *two ;* trēs, *three.*
   (ii) Ordinal, denoting numbers regarded as forming
      part of a series : as, prīmŭs, *first ;* sĕcundŭs, or
      altĕr, *second.*
   (iii) Distributive, denoting numbers regarded as
      constituting groups, each group being treated as a
      unit; which may be translated in various ways : as,
      bīnī, ae, a, *two each, two a-piece, two by two.*

2. Numeral Adverbs denote the *number of times* that
anything occurs : as, sĕmĕl, *once ;* bĭs, *twice ;* tĕr, *three
times ;* quŏtiēs or quŏtiens, *how many times.*

For a complete table of Numerals, Cardinal, Ordinal,
and Distributive, with their corresponding Adverbs, see
next page.

3. Declension of the Numerals.—The Declension of
the Cardinals ūnŭs, dŭŏ, trēs, is given on pages 24, 27.

Unŭs is used in the Plural with Plural Nouns which have
a different meaning from that of the Singular : as, ūnă
littĕra, *one letter of the alphabet ;* ūnae littĕrae, *one letter* or
epistle.

The Cardinals from quattŭŏr, *four,* to centum, *a hundred,*
are indeclinable.

Dŭcentī, ae, ă, *two hundred,* and the following hundreds,
are declined regularly.

Mīllĕ, *a thousand,* is usually an indeclinable adjective ; but
mīlliă (usu. mīliă), *thousands,* plural, is a Noun : as, mīllĕ
hŏmĭnēs, *a thousand men* (less frequently, mille hŏmĭnum) ;
but dŭŏ mīliă hŏmĭnum, *two thousand men,* literally, *two
thousands of men.* Its declension is given on p. 27.

The *Ordinals* are declined regularly as adjectives.

Notes.

1. From 13 to 19 inclusive the smaller Ordinal number is
   placed first without ĕt : as, tertius dĕcĭmus, *the thirteenth.*
   From 21 to 99 inclusive, both in Cardinals and Ordinals, the
   larger numeral is placed first without ĕt, or the smaller
   numeral first with ĕt : as, vīgintī ūnus, or ūnus et vīgintī,
   twenty-one or *one and twenty ;* vīcēsĭmus prīmus or prīmus

NUMERALS.

Arabic Symbols.	Roman Symbols.	Cardinals.	Ordinals.	Distributives.	Adverbs.
1	I	ūnus	prīmus, a, um	singŭlī ae a	sĕmĕl
2	II	dŭŏ	sĕcundus (or alter)	bīnī ,, ,,	bīs
3	III	trēs	tertĭus, a, um	ternī or trīnī ,,	tēr
4	IV	quattuŏr, quătuor	quartus ,, ,,	quăternī ,,	quăter
5	V	quinquĕ	quintus ,, ,,	quīnī ,,	quinquĭēs (-ens)
6	VI	sex	sextus ,, ,,	sēnī ,,	sexĭēs ,,
7	VII	septem	septĭmus (-ĭmus), a, um	septēnī ,,	septĭēs ,,
8	VIII	octo	octāvus ,, ,,	octōnī ,,	octĭēs ,,
9	IX	nŏvem	nōnus ,, ,,	nŏvēnī ,,	nŏvĭēs ,,
10	X	dĕcem	dĕcĭmus (-ĭmus)	dēnī ,,	dĕcĭēs ,,
11	XI	undĕcim	undĕcĭmus	undēnī ,,	undĕcĭēs ,,
12	XII	duŏdĕcim	duŏdĕcĭmus	duŏdēnī ,,	duŏdĕcĭēs ,,
13	XIII	trēdĕcim (dec. et tres)	tertĭus dĕcĭmus	ternī dēnī ,,	terdĕcĭēs ,,
14	XIV	quattuordĕcim	quartus dĕcĭmus	quăternī dēnī	quattuordĕcĭēs (-ens)
15	XV	quindĕcim	quintus dĕcĭmus	quīnī dēnī ,,	quindĕcĭēs ,,
16	XVI	sēdĕcim	sextus dĕcĭmus	sēnī dēnī ,,	sēdĕcĭēs ,,
17	XVII	septemdĕcim	septĭmus dĕcĭmus	septēmī dēnī •	septĭesdĕcĭēs ,,
18	XVIII	duŏdēvigintī	duŏdēvīcēsĭmus	duŏdēvīcēnī ,,	duŏdēvīcĭēs ,,
19	XIX	undēvigintī	undēvīcēsĭmus	undēvīcēnī ,,	undēvīcĭēs ,,
20	XX	vigintī	vīcēsĭmus (-ensĭmus) ,,	vīcēnī ,,	vīcĭēs ,,
21	XXI	ūnus et vigintī or vigintī [et] ūnus	{prīmus et vīcēsĭmus or vīcēsĭmus prīmus}	vīcēnī singŭlī ,,	sĕmĕl et vīcĭēs
22	XXII	duo et vigintī or vigintī duo	{alter et vīcēsĭmus or vīcēsĭmus alter}	vīcēnī bīnī ,,	bīs et vīcĭēs

			tertĭus et vĭcēsĭmus or vĭcēsĭmus tertĭus	vīcēni terni, ae, a	tĕr et vĭcĭēs (-ens)
23	XXIII	trēs et vīgintī or vīgintī trēs	tertĭus et vĭcēsĭmus or vĭcēsĭmus tertĭus	vīcēni terni, ae, a	tĕr et vĭcĭēs (-ens)
28	XXVIII	duŏdētrīgintā or	duŏdētrĭgēsĭmus	duŏdētrĭcēni "	duŏdētrĭcĭēs "
29	XXIX	undētrīgintā or vīgintī novem	undētrĭgēsĭmus	undētrĭcēni "	undētrĭcĭēs "
30	XXX	trīgintā	trĭgēsĭmus (trĭc-) (-ensĭmus)	trĭcēni "	trĭcĭēs "
40	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsĭmus "	quadrāgēni "	quadrāgĭēs "
50	L	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsĭmus "	quīnquāgēni "	quīnquāgĭēs "
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsĭmus "	sexāgēni ,	sexāgĭēs "
70	LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsĭmus "	septuāgēni "	septuāgĭēs "
80	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsĭmus "	octōgēni "	octōgĭēs "
90	XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsĭmus "	nōnāgēni "	nōnāgĭēs "
100	C	centum	centēsĭmus "	centēni "	centĭēs "
200	CC	dŭcentī, ae, a	dŭcentēsĭmus	dŭcēni "	dŭcentĭēs "
300	CCC	trĕcentī, ", "	trĕcentēsĭmus	trĕcēni .	trĕcentĭēs "
400	CCCC	quadringentī "	quadringentēsĭmus	quadringēni "	quadringentĭēs "
500	D or IↃ	quīngentī "	quīngentēsĭmus	quīngēni "	quīngentĭēs "
600	DↃ	sexcentī (sescentī) "	sexcentēsĭmus (sesc-)	sexcēni "	sexcentĭēs "
700	DCC	septingentī "	septingentēsĭmus	septingēni "	septingentĭēs "
800	DCCC	octingentī "	octingentēsĭmus	octingēni "	octingentĭēs "
900	DCCCC	nongentī "	nongentēsĭmus	nongēni "	nongentĭēs "
1000	M or CIↃ	mīllĕ	mīllēsĭmus	singŭlă mīlĭă	mīllĭēs
2000	MM	duŏ (bīna) mīlĭă	bis mīllēsĭmus	bīna mīlĭă	bis mīllĭēs
5000	IↃↃ	quīnque (quīna) mīlĭă	quīnquĭēs mīllēsĭmus	quīna mīlĭă	quīnquĭēs mīllĭēs
10,000	CCIↃↃ	děcem (dēna) mīlĭă	děcĭēs mīllēsĭmus	dēnā mīlĭă	děcĭēs mīllĭēs
50,000	IↃↃↃ	quīnquāgintā mīlĭă	quīnquāgĭēs mīllēsĭmus	quīnquāgēnā mīlĭă	quīnquāgĭēs mīllĭēs,
100,000	CCCIↃↃↃ	centum (-ēna) mīlĭă	centĭēs mīllēsĭmus	centēnā mīlĭă	centĭēs mīllĭēs
500,000	IↃↃↃↃ	quīngentā mīlĭă	quīngentĭēs mīllēsĭmus	quīngēnā mīlĭă	quīngentĭēs mīllĭēs,
1,000,000	CCCCIↃↃↃↃ	děcĭēs centum mīlĭă	děcĭēs centĭēs mīllēsĭmus	děcĭēs centēnā mīlĭă	děcĭēs centĭēs mīllĭēs

ORTHOGRAPHY.—1. In the Ordinal Numerals, the old orthography of the termination ēsĭmus was ensĭmus or ensĭmus.
2. In the Adverbs the old orthography of the termination -ēs was -ens.

et vīcēsǐmus, *the twenty-first.* The numbers above 100 usually have the larger number first, without or with *ět* : as, centum (ět) sexāgintā sex, *one hundred and sixty-six.*

2. Dates of years are expressed by Ordinal Numerals : as, anno millēsǐmo octingentēsǐmo nōnāgēsǐmo quinto, *in the eighteen-hundred-and-ninety-fifth year,* i.e. *in the year* 1895.

3. Distributives are used instead of Cardinals with words which have no singular or one with a different sense : as, bīna castra, *two camps* ; bīnae aedes, *two houses.* Duo castra would be *two forts* ; duae aedes, *two temples.*

4. The Genitive Plural of Distributive Numerals is usually contracted : -*ûm* instead of *ōrum* ; as, denûm annōrum.

XIV. The Pronouns.

[The Declension of the Pronouns is given on pages 33–36.*]*

1. Personal Pronouns. — **Nostrum** and **vestrum** are only used as Partitive Genitives or in connexion with omnium : as, ūnus nostrum (not nostri), *one of us* ; omnium vestrum (not vestri) vǒluntas, *the wish of you all.*

2. Reflexive Pronouns.—Suus is a reflexive adjective, and can therefore only refer back to the Subject, like the reflexive pronoun. In other senses, *his, her, its, their,* are expressed by the Gen. Sing. or Plur. of is, ea, id or ille, illa, illud.

3. Demonstrative Pronouns.—The three Demonstrative Pronouns are strengthened by the particle cě, shortened c, which serves to point out anything more exactly : *this here, that there.* This particle (in the form of final c) is seen in several of the cases of hi-c, and may be added to others also : as, hūjuscě, hoscě, etc.

Istic is thus declined :—

| | Sing. | | | | Plur. | | |
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	istǐc	istaec	istūc		istīcě	istaec	istaec
Acc.	istunc	istanc	istūc		istoscě	istascě	istaec
Gen.	istiuscě (of all genders)				istōrunc	istārunc	istōrunc
Dat.	istīc (of all genders)				istiscě (of all genders)		
Abl.	istōc	istāc	istōc		istiscě (of all genders)		

So also, **illǐc**　illaec　illūc, etc.

The adverbs hī-c, *here,* istī-c, illī-c, *there, yonder,* denoting *place where,* are properly Locatives Singular.

Also ǐ-bǐ, *there,* is a Locative of ǐs, ea, ǐd.

4. INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.—Quĭs or Quī is also used as an Indefinite Pronoun (=*any*), especially after the Conjunctions sī, *if*, nē, *lest*, nĭsĭ, *unless*, num, *whether*. Thus, sī quĭs is "*if any one*"; nē quĭs, "*lest any one*," "*that no one*."

When quĭs is so used, it usually changes quae to quă in *Nom. Sing. fem.*, and *Nom.* and *Acc. Pl. neut.*; but quae is also used.

So also ălĭquĭs or ălĭquī, *some one*.

Indefinite Pronouns.

SING.	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	quĭs or quī	quă or quae	quĭd or quŏd
"	ălĭquĭs or ălĭquī	ălĭquă or ălĭquae	ălĭquĭd or ălĭquŏd.
PLUR.			
Nom.	quī	quae	quae (quă)
"	ălĭquī	ălĭquae	ălĭquă

In the Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns, and their compounds (see below), quĭs and quĭd are generally used as Nouns, and quī and quŏd as Adjectives: as,

> quĭs ĕs, *who art thou?*
> quī hŏmo ĕs, *what (kind of a) man art thou?*
> quĭd commīsĭt, *what has he done?*
> quŏd făcĭnŭs commīsĭt, *what deed has he done?*

NOTE.—Quĭs is sometimes, but *rarely*, used as an Adjective; quī is sometimes, but *rarely*, used as a Noun. Quĭd is *always* used as a Noun; quŏd *always* as an Adjective.

5. COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	
quīdam	quaedam	quiddam or quoddam	*a certain one.*
quīcunquĕ	quaecunquĕ	quodcunquĕ	*whosoever.*
quīlĭbĕt	quaelĭbĕt	quodlĭbĕt or quidlĭbet	*who or which you please; anyone (without exception).*
quīvīs	quaevīs	quodvīs or quidvīs	
quisquĭis	(no Fem.)	quicquĭd or quidquĭd	*whoever, whatever.*
quisquam[1]	(no Fem.)	quicquam or quidquam	*anyone at all.*

PR. L. I.

K

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
quisquĕ	quaeque	quidquĕ (quodquĕ)	each.
quispiam	quaepiam	quidpiam or quippiam (quodpiam)	some one.
ecquĭs (ecquī)	ecquă (ecquae)	ecquĭd (ecquŏd)	is there anyone who ?
ŭtĕr	utră	utrum	which of two.
neutĕr	neutră	neutrum	neither of two.
ŭterquĕ	utrăquĕ	utrumque	each of two, both.

¹ Quisquam = *any single one;* in negative or hypothetical sentences : it is usually a Noun. The Adjectival meaning is supplied by ullŭs.

XV.—THE VERB.

[*The Conjugation of* sum *is given on pages* 29-31 ; *of the Active Voice on pages* 38–45 ; *of the Passive Voice on pages* 54–61 ; *of Deponent Verbs on pages* 70, 71.]

1. Verbs have two Voices : ACTIVE and PASSIVE.
(1.) The Active Voice, before which the Nominative represents the *agent :* as, pătĕr ămăt, *the father loves.*
(2.) The Passive Voice, before which the Nominative represents the *object* of the action : as, pătĕr ămātur, *the father is loved.*

2. Active Verbs are TRANSITIVE or INTRANSITIVE.
(1.) Transitive Verbs govern an Accusative Case, representing the direct object of the action : as, ămo puĕrum, *I love the boy.*
(2.) Intransitive Verbs express a state or condition, or an action confined to the doer, and do not govern an Accusative Case : as, sĕdĕo, *I sit ;* curro, *I run.*

NOTES.

1. Transitive Verbs have a Passive Voice.
2. Intransitive Verbs have no Passive Voice, except in the Third Person Singular Impersonal : as, cŭrrĭtŭr ā nostrīs, *it is being run by our men :* or speaking generally, pugnātur, *there is fighting ; fighting goes on.* This form is not used to denote the action of a single person.

3. **Deponent Verbs** have a Passive form with an active meaning : as, hortŏr mīlĭtēs, *I exhort the soldiers.*

4. Verbs have two parts : FINITE (limited by Mood and Tense) and INFINITE.

A. The VERB FINITE has three Moods :—

1. The Indicative Mood states a thing positively or asks a question about facts : as, ămăt, *he loves;* ămătnĕ? *does he love?*

2. The Subjunctive Mood states a thing conditionally : ·as, si ĭtă dīcăm, mentiăr, *if I were to say so, I should lie;* vělim, *I could fain wish.* •

> NOTE.—The translation of the Subjunctive Mood given in the paradigms must be regarded as approximate only. Sometimes the Indicative must be used in English where the Latin requires the Subjunctive : as, rŏgāvī quĭs esset, *I asked who he was.*

3. The Imperative Mood commands or entreats : as, ămā, *love;* nē occīdĭto, *thou shalt not kill.*

B. The VERB INFINITE consists of Verbal Nouns and Adjectives.

1. The Infinitive Mood, the Tenses of which are indeclinable Verbal Nouns, denotes an action or state without immediate reference to a person : as, ămāre, *to love.*

2. Participles, which are Verbal Adjectives.

There are four Participles in Latin, two Active and two Passive.

Active {	*Present*	ămans	*loving*
	Future	ămātūrus	*about to love.*
Passive {	*Perfect*	ămātus	*loved*
	Gerundive	ămandus	*fit to be loved.*

> NOTE.—The Latin language is deficient in Participles, the Active Voice having no Past Participle corresponding to our '*having loved*,' and the Passive no Present or Future Participle. Deponent Verbs only have regularly a Past Part. in Active sense: ūsus, *having used;* sĕcūtus, *having followed.*

3. The Supine, which is a Verbal Noun of the Fourth Declension, having two Cases only, the Acc. and the Abl. (or Dat.): as, ămātum, *to love;* ămātū, *in loving, to be loved.*

4. The **Gerund**, which is also a Verbal Noun, having four Cases : as, *Acc.* ămandum (only after a preposition), *loving ; Gen.* ămandī, *of loving ; Dat.* ămandō, *for loving ; Abl.* ămandō, *by loving.*

> NOTE.—The want of a Nominative case to the Gerund is supplied by the Infinitive Mood.

5. Verbs have six TENSES, which show the time of the action of the Verb. There are three natural divisions of time : Present, Past, Future ; and each of these has two natural divisions, incomplete or IMPERFECT, and complete or PERFECT. The full set of six tenses is found only in the Indicative Mood : as,

Incomplete or Imperfect.
1. **Present :** ămo, *I love* or *am loving.*
2. **Imperfect :** ămābam, *I was loving* or *I used to love.*
3. **Future :** ămābo, *I shall love.*

Complete or Perfect.
4. **Perfect :** ămāvi, *I have loved* (Perfect proper), or *I loved* (Past Indefinite).
5. **Pluperfect :** ămāvĕram, *I had loved.*
6. **Future-Perfect :** ămāvĕro, *I shall have loved.*

In the Passive Voice the Perfect Participle is used with the different tenses of the Verb sum to form the complete or Perfect Tenses : as,

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Perf.	ămātŭs sum	ămātŭs sim.
Plup.	ămātŭs ĕram	ămātŭs essem.
Fut.-Perf.	ămātŭs ĕro.	

	INFINITIVE.
Perf.	ămātŭs esse.

NOTES.

1. Instead of sum, ĕram, ĕro ; sim, essem ; essĕ, these tenses are sometimes formed by fŭī, fŭĕram, fŭĕro ; fŭĕrim, fŭissem ; fŭisse : as, ămātŭs fŭī, &c. See *Stud. Lat. Gr.* § 404.
2. The Participle used in forming the Perfect Tenses agrees in gender and number with the subject [see p. 63], but for the sake of convenience the masculine alone is given in the Conjugation.
3. The sign of the Passive Voice in the Imperfect Tenses is the letter **r**, which is added to the corresponding Tenses of the Active Voice ; the final *m* of the Active Voice is dropped : as, ămŏ, ămŏ-r ; ămāba-m, ămāba-r, ămābŏ, ămābŏ-r ; ămem, ăme-r ; ămāre-m, ămārĕ-r. In like manner in the 3rd Pers. Sing. and Plur., ămant, ămant-u-r ; ămābant, ămābant-u-r ; ămābunt, ămābunt-u-r.

The **Future Infinitive Passive** (as, ămātum īrī) consists of the Active Supine in **um** together with **īrī**, Present Infinitive Passive of ĕo, *I go*, used impersonally. Thus audio tē caesum īrī, literally translated, is—*I hear that-there-is-a-going* (*on the part of some one*) *to beat you*; i.e. *that you are about to be beaten*. The Supine caesum here follows the verb of motion īrī, according to Rule 28.

XVI.—FORMATION OF TENSES.

A. The **Perfect Stem** is formed :

1. By adding **v** to the Verbal Stem: as, ăma, ămā-v-ī ; audi, audī-v-ī. This is the regular formation in the First and Fourth Conjugations.

2. By adding **u** to the Verbal Stem : as, mŏnĕ, mŏn-u-ī. The final vowel of the Verbal Stem is dropped. This is the regular formation of the Second Conjugation.

> *Obs.* The formative elements **v** and **u** are the same, and are identical with the root fu-, seen in the Perfect of the verb *sum.*

3. By adding **s** to the Verbal Stem : as, rĕg (rĕgŏ), rexi = reg-s-i.

> *Obs.* The euphonic changes of letters must be noted.
>
> (i). *cs, gs, qus, hs* are contracted into *x* : as, dūco, duxi, *lead* ; cŏquo, coxi, *cook* ; trăho, traxi, *drag.*
>
> (ii) *b* is changed into *p* before *s* : as, scrībo, scripsī, *write* ; nūbo, nupsī, *marry* (of the wife).
>
> (iii) *t* and *d* are dropped before *s* : as, mitto, mīsī, *send* ; laedo, laesī, *injure.*

4. By reduplication ; that is, by prefixing the first consonant of the Stem followed by a short vowel : as,

tend-	(tendo)	tĕ-tendī	*stretch*
căd-	(cădo)	cĕ-cĭdī	*fall*
morde-	(mordeo)	mŏ-mordī	*bite*

> *Obs.* In compound Verbs the Reduplication is usually omitted : as, tundo, tŭtŭdī, *beat,* but contundo, con-tŭdī, *beat small, bruise* ; pello, pĕpŭlī, *drive,* but com-pello, compŭlī, *drive together.*

5. By lengthening the vowel of the Stem : as,

jăc- or jăci-	(jăcio)	jēcī	*throw*
vĕni-	(vĕnio)	vēnī	*come*
mŏve-	(mŏveo)	mōvī	*move*

6. In some Verbs the sign of the Perfect is lost ; this is especially the case with Stems ending in *u*, *v*, or *t* : as, mĭnu-o, mĭnu-ī, *lessen ;* volv-o, volv-ī, *roll ;* vert-o, vert-ī, *turn.*

B. The **Supine** Stem is formed by adding **tu** to the Verbal Stem : as, ămā-tu-m, ămā-tū ; mŏnĭ-tu-m, mŏnĭ-tū.

> *Obs.* 1. In the Second Conjugation the *e* of the Stem is changed into *i.*

> *Obs.* 2. The euphonic changes of letters must be noted :
> (i) *g*, *qu*, *h*, become *c* before *t* : as, rĕg-o, rec-um; cŏqu-o, coc-tum ; trăh-o, trac-tum.
> (ii) *b* becomes *p* before *t* : as, scrīb-o, scrip-tum ; nūbo, nup-tum.
> (iii) *d* and *t* are dropped before the *t* of the Supine, which in these cases becomes *s* : as, laed-o, laesum, *injure ;* claudo, clausum, *shut.* In some cases, but rarely, the *d* or *t* of the Stem also becomes *s* : as, cēdo, ces-sum, *yield ;* mitto, mis-sum, *send.*

For a list of the Perfects and Supines, see pages 136–146.

C. The other Tenses may be formed from the Principal Parts of the Verb : —

1. From the **Pres. Inf. Stem**, the Pres., Imperf. (both Ind. and Subj.), the Fut., the Imperative, the Pres. Part., the Gerund and Gerundive : as, mŏnē-rĕ, mŏnĕ-o, mŏnē-bam, mŏnē-am, mŏnē-rem, mŏnē-bo, mŏne-ns, mŏne-ndum, mŏne-ndus. In the 1st Conj., ao is contracted into o : as, ămā-o = ămo.

2. From the **Perf.** Stem, all the Perfect tenses : as, mŏnŭ-ī, mŏnŭ-ĕram, mŏnŭ-ĕro, mŏnŭ-ĕrim, mŏnŭ-issem, mŏnŭ-isse.

3. From the **Supine Stem**, the Supine Active and Passive, the Perf. Part., and the Fut. Part. : as, **mŏnĭ-tum**, mŏnĭ-tū, mŏnĭ-tŭs, mŏnĭ-tūrŭs.

Obs. In a few Verbs the Supines of which vary from the regular formation, the Future Participles are formed direct from the Verbal Stem: as,

	Supine.	*Verbal Stem.*	*Fut. Part.*	
jŭvo	jūtum	jŭva-	jŭvā-tūrŭs	*help*
sĕco	sectum	sĕca-	sĕcā-tūrŭs	*cut*
sŏno	sŏnĭtum	sŏna-	sŏnā-tūrŭs	*sound*
mŏriŏr	mortuŭs (*part.*)	mŏri-	mŏrĭ-tūrŭs	*die*
ŏrior	ortus „	ŏri-	ŏrĭ-tūrŭs	*rise*

XVII. DEPONENT, SEMI-DEPONENT, AND NEUTER-PASSIVE VERBS.

1. The Perfect Participle of Deponent Verbs has usually an Active meaning (see above, p. 131), but some Deponent Verbs use their Perf. Part. both in an Active and Passive sense: as,

confĭteor,	confessus,	*having confessed* and *having been confessed.*
mĕreor,	mĕrĭtus,	*having deserved* and *having been deserved.*
ădĭpiscor,	ădeptus,	*having obtained* and *having been obtained.*
mētĭor,	mensus,	*having measured* and *having been measured.*

with various others.

2. SEMI-DEPONENTS.—(i) Some Intransitive Verbs have Passive Perfect forms, and hence are called Semi-Deponents (see also p. 86): as,

audeo	*dare*	ausus sum	*I have dared.*
gaudeo	*rejoice*	gāvīsus sum	*I have rejoiced.*
fīdo	*trust*	fīsus sum	*I have trusted.*
sŏleo	*be accustomed*	sŏlĭtus sum	*I have been accustomed.*

(ii) Some Intransitive Verbs have Deponent Perfect Participles: as,

cēno (cae-),	*sup* or *dine*	cēnātus,	*having supped.*
prandeo,	*lunch*	pransus,	*having lunched.*
jūro,	*swear*	jūrātus,	*having sworn.*

3. NEUTER-PASSIVES have an Active form with a Passive meaning:

fīo,	*am made.*		extŭlo,	*am banished.*
vēneo (vēnum eo),	*am sold.*		līceo,	*am put for sale.*
vāpŭlo,	*am beaten.*			

XVIII. PERFECTS AND SUPINES.

I. THE FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.

The Perfects and the Supines of the First Conjugation end regularly in **āvī, ātum** : as, ămo, ămāvi, ămātum, ămāre, *to love.* The following are exceptions :—

crĕpo,	crĕpui,	crĕpĭtum,	crĕpāre,	*to creak.*
cŭbo,	cŭbui,	cŭbĭtum,	cŭbāre,	*to lie down.*
dŏmo,	dŏmui,	dŏmĭtum,	dŏmāre,	*to tame.*
sŏno,[1]	sŏnui,	sŏnĭtum,	sŏnāre,	*to sound.*
vĕto,	vĕtui,	vĕtĭtum,	vĕtāre,	*to forbid.*
tŏno,	tŏnui,	—	tŏnāre,	*to thunder.*
mĭco,	mĭcui,	—	mĭcāre,	*to glitter.*
plĭco,	{plĭcui, plĭcāvi,}	{plĭcĭtum, plĭcātum,}	plĭcāre,	*to fold.*
frĭco,	frĭcui,	frictum,	frĭcāre,	*to rub.*
sĕco,[2]	sĕcui,	sectum,	sĕcāre,	*to cut.*
jŭvo,[3]	jūvi,	jūtum,	jŭvāre,	*to assist.*
lăvo (also 3 conj.)	lāvi,	{lăvātum, lautum, lōtum,}	lăvāre,	*to wash.*
do,	dĕdi,	dătum,	dăre,	*to give.*
sto,	stĕti,	stătum,	stāre,	*to stand.*

NOTE.—*Future Participles*, as a general rule, are formed from the Supines; but

1. sŏno · *has* sŏnātūrus.   3. jŭvo *has* jŭvātūrus.
2. sĕco ,,   sĕcātūrus.

II. THE SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.

The Perfects and Supines of the Second Conjugation end regularly in **uī** and **ĭtum** : as, mŏneo, mŏnui, mŏnĭtum, mŏnēre, *to advise.* The following are exceptions :—

1. *Perfect*—ui. *Supine*—tum.

dŏceo,	dŏcui,	doctum,	dŏcēre,	*to teach.*
tĕneo,	tĕnui,	tentum,	tĕnēre,	*to hold.*
misceo,	miscui,	{mixtum, mistum,}	miscēre,	*to mix.*
torreo,	torrui,	tostum,	torrēre,	*to roast.*
sorbeo,	{sorbui, sorpsi,}	—	sorbēre,	*to suck up.*
censeo,	· censui,	censum,	censēre,	*to assess, think.*

2. *Perfect*—ēvi. *Supine*—ētum.

dēleo,	dēlēvi,	dēlētum,	dēlēre,	*to blot out, destroy.*
fleo,	flēvi,	flētum,	flēre,	*to weep.*
neo,	nēvi,	nētum,	nēre,	*to spin.*
{pleo, only in composition.				
compleo,	complēvi,	complētum,	complēre,	*to fill up.*
abŏleo,	ăbŏlēvi,	ăbŏlĭtum,	ăbŏlēre,	*to abolish.*

3. *Perfect*—i (di). *Supine*—sum.

prandeo,	prandi,	pransum,	prandēre,	*to breakfast.*
sĕdeo,	sēdi,	sessum,	sĕdēre,	*to sit.*
vĭdeo,	vīdi,	vīsum,	vĭdēre,	*to see.*
strīdeo,	strīdi,	—	strīdēre,	*to creak.*
(also 3 conj.)				

With Reduplication in the Perfect Tenses.

mordeo,	mŏmordi,	morsum,	mordēre,	*to bite.*
pendeo,	pĕpendi,	pensum,	pendēre,	*to hang.*
spondeo,	spŏpondi,	sponsum,	spondēre,	*to promise.*
tondeo,	tŏtondi,	tonsum,	tondēre,	*to shear.*

4. *Perfect*—i (vi). *Supine*—tum.

căveo,	cāvi,	cautum,	căvēre,	*to guard oneself.*
făveo,	fāvi,	fautum,	făvēre,	*to favour.*
fŏveo,	fōvi,	fōtum,	fŏvēre,	*to cherish.*
mŏveo,	mōvi,	mōtum,	mŏvēre,	*to move.*
vŏveo,	vōvi,	vōtum,	vŏvēre,	*to vow.*

Without Supine.

păveo,	pāvi,	—	păvēre,	*to fear.*
ferveo,	fervi, ferbui,	—	fervēre,	*to boil.*
connīveo,	connīvi, connixi,	—	connīvēre,	*to wink.*

5. *Perfect*—si. *Supine*—tum *and* sum.

augeo,	auxi,	auctum,	augēre,	*to increase.*
indulgeo,	indulsi,	indultum,	indulgēre,	*to indulge.*
torqueo,	torsi,	tortum,	torquēre,	*to twist.*
ardeo,	arsi,	arsum,	ardēre,	*to blaze.*
haereo,	haesi,	haesum,	haerēre,	*to stick.*
jŭbeo,	jussi,	jussum,	jŭbēre,	*to order.*
măneo,	mansi,	mansum,	mănēre,	*to remain.*
mulceo,	mulsi,	mulsum,	mulcēre,	*to stroke.*
mulgeo,	mulsi,	mulctum,	mulgēre,	*to milk.*
rīdeo,	rīsi,	rīsum,	rīdēre,	*to laugh.*
suādeo,	suāsi,	suāsum,	suādēre,	*to advise.*
tergeo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergēre,	*to wipe.*
lūgeo,	luxi,	(luctum,)	lūgēre,	*to grieve.*
algeo,	alsi,	—	algēre,	} *to be cold.*
frīgeo,	frixi,	—	frīgēre,	
fulgeo,	fulsi,	—	fulgēre,	*to shine.*
lūceo,	luxi,	—	lūcēre,	*to be light.*
turgeo,	(tursi),	—	turgēre,	*to swell.*
urgeo,	ursi,	—	urgēre,	*to press.*

6. *Semi-Deponents.*

audeo,	ausus sum,	—	audēre,	*to dare.*
gaudeo,	gāvīsus sum,	—	gaudēre,	*to rejoice.*
sŏleo,	sŏlĭtus sum,	—	sŏlēre,	*to be accustomed.*

III. The Third (Consonant or U) Conjugation.

Verbs of the Third Conjugation are best classified according to the final consonants of the Stems.

1. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Labials* **B, P.**

(*a*). *Perfect*—**si.** *Supine*—**tum.**

Note.—*B becomes p before s and t.*

carpo,	carpsi,	carptum,	carpĕre,	*to pluck.*
glūbo,	glupsi,	gluptum,	glūbĕre,	*to peel.*
nūbo,	nupsi,	nuptum,	nūbĕre,	*to marry.*
rēpo,	repsi,	reptum,	rēpĕre,	*to creep.*
scalpo,	scalpsi,	scalptum,	scalpĕre,	*to scratch.*
scrībo,	scripsi,	scriptum,	scrībĕre,	*to write.*
serpo,	serpsi,	serptum,	serpĕre,	*to crawl.*

(*b*). *Perfect*—**ui.** *Supine*—**tum** *or* **ĭtum.**

{cumbo, incumbo,	incŭbui,	incŭbĭtum,	incumbĕre,	*to lie upon.*
strĕpo,	strĕpui,	strĕpĭtum,	strĕpĕre,	*to make a noise.*

(*c*). *Perfect*—**i.** *Supine*—**tum** *or* wanting.

rumpo,	rūpi,	ruptum,	rumpĕre,	*to burst.*
bĭbo,	bĭbi,	—	bĭbĕre,	*to drink.*
lambo,	lambi,	—	lambĕre,	*to lick.*
scăbo,	scăbi,	—	scăbĕre,	*to scratch.*

2. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Gutturals* **C, G, H, Q, X.**

(*a*). *Perfect*—**si.** *Supine*—**tum.**

Note.—*Cs and gs become x. G and qu become c before t.*

dīco,	dixi,	dictum,	dīcĕre,	*to say.*
dūco,	duxi,	ductum,	dūcĕre,	*to lead.*
cŏquo,	coxi,	coctum,	cŏquĕre,	*to cook.*
cingo,	cinxi,	cinctum,	cingĕre,	*to surround.*
{(flīgo, not used, afflīgo,	afflixi,	afflictum,	afflīgĕre,	*to strike.*) *to strike to the ground.*
frīgo,	frixi,	{frictum, frixum, }	frīgĕre,	*to parch, to fry.*
jungo,	junxi,	junctum,	jungĕre,	*to join.*
lingo,	linxi,	linctum,	lingĕre,	*to lick.*
{(mungo, not used.) ēmungo,	ēmunxi,	ēmunctum,	ēmungĕre,	*to wipe the nose.*
plango,	planxi,	planctum,	plangĕre,	*to beat,*

rĕgo,	rexi,	rectum,	rĕgĕre,	*to direct, rule.*
sūgo,	suxi,	suctum,	sūgĕre,	*to suck.*
tĕgo,	texi,	tectum,	tĕgĕre,	*to cover.*
{ tingo, tinguo, }	tinxi,	tinctum,	{ tingĕre, tinguĕre, }	*to dip.*
{ ungo, unguo, }	unxi,	unctum,	{ ungĕre, unguĕre, }	*to anoint.*
(ɩstinguo, not used.) {exstinguo,	exstinxi,	exstinctum,	exstinguĕre,	*to extinguish.*
trăho,	traxi,	tractum,	trăhĕre,	*to drag.*
vĕho,	vexi,	vectum,	vĕhĕre,	*to carry, to draw.*
ango,	anxi,	—	angĕre,	*to vex.*
ningĭt,	ninxit,	—	ningĕre,	*to snow.*
fingo,	finxi,	fictum,	fingĕre,	*to mould, to invent.*
pingo,	pinxi,	pictum,	pingĕre,	*to paint.*
stringo,	strinxi,	strictum,	stringĕre,	*to grasp.*

(b). Perfect—si. *Supine*—sum *and* xum.

mergo,	mersi,	mersum,	mergĕre,	*to sink.*
spargo,	sparsi,	sparsum,	spargĕre,	*to scatter.*
tergo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergĕre,	*to wipe.*
fīgo,	fixi,	fixum,	fīgĕre,	*to fix.*
flecto,	flexi,	flexum,	flectĕre,	*to bend.*
necto,	nexui (xĭ),	nexum,	nectĕre,	*to bind.*
pecto,	pexi,	pexum,	pectĕre,	*to comb.*
plecto,	plexi,	plexum,	plectĕre,	*to plait.*

(c). Perfect—i (with Reduplication). *Supine*—sum *and* tum.

pango,	pĕpĭgi,	pactum,	pangĕre,	*to fix.*
parco,	pĕperci,	parsum,	parcĕre,	*to spare.*
pungo,	pŭpŭgi,	punctum,	pungĕre,	*to prick.*
tango,	tĕtĭgi,	tactum,	tangĕre,	*to touch.*
disco,	dĭdĭci,	—	discĕre,	*to learn.*
posco,	pŏposci,	—	poscĕre,	*to demand.*

(d). Perfect—i (with vowel of Stem lengthened).

ago,	ēgi,	actum,	ăgĕre,	*to do.*
frango,	frēgi,	fractum,	frangĕre,	*to break.*
īco,	īci,	ictum,	īcĕre,	*to strike.*
lĕgo,	lēgi,	lectum,	lĕgĕre,	*to pick, read.*
linquo,	līqui,	(lictum),	linquĕre,	*to leave.*
vinco,	vīci,	victum,	vincĕre,	*to conquer.*

(e). Perfect—ui. *Supine*—tum.

texo,	texui,	textum,	texĕre,	*to weave.*

(f). Guttural Stem disguised.

fluo,	fluxi,	fluxum,	fluĕre,	*to flow.*
struo,	struxi,	structum,	struĕre,	*to pile up.*
vīvo,	vixi,	victum,	vīvĕre,	*to live.*

3. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Dentals* **D, T.**

(a). *Perfect*—si. *Supine*—tum (sum).

NOTE.—*D* and *t* are generally dropped before *s*, but are sometimes changed into *s*.

claudo,	clausi,	clausum,	claudĕre,	*to shut.*
dīvĭdo,	dīvīsi,	dīvīsum,	dīvĭdĕre,	*to divide.*
laedo,	laesi,	laesum,	laedĕre,	*to strike, to injure.*
lūdo,	lūsi,	lūsum,	lūdĕre,	*to play.*
plaudo,	plausi,	plausum,	plaudĕre,	*to clap the hands.*
rādo,	rāsi,	rāsum,	rādĕre,	*to scrape.*
rōdo,	rōsi,	rōsum,	rōdĕre,	*to gnaw.*
trūdo,	trūsi,	trūsum,	trūdĕre,	*to thrust.*
⎰vādo,	[compounds, -si, -sum]		vādĕre,	*to go.*
⎱invādo,	invāsi,	invāsum,	invādĕre,	*to go against.*
cēdo,	cessi,	cessum,	cēdĕre,	*to yield.*
mitto,	mīsi,	missum,	mittĕre,	*to send.*

(b). *Perfect with Reduplication.*

cădo,	cĕcĭdi,	cāsum,	cădĕre,	*to fall.*
caedo,	cĕcīdi,	caesum,	caedĕre,	*to strike, to cut.*
pendo,	pĕpendi,	pensum,	pendĕre,	*to hang, to weigh.*
tendo,	tĕtendi,	⎧tensum,⎫ ⎩tentum,⎭	tendĕre,	*to stretch.*
tundo,	tŭtŭdi,	⎧tunsum,⎫ ⎩tūsum,⎭	tundĕre,	*to beat.*
do in compos.,				*to put.*
abdo,	abdĭdi,	abdĭtum,	abdĕre,	*to put away, to hide.*
addo,	addĭdi,	addĭtum,	addĕre,	*to put to, to add.*
condo,	condĭdi,	condĭtum,	condĕre,	*to put together, to build, conceal.*
dēdo,	dēdĭdi,	dēdĭtum,	dēdĕre,	*to put down, to sur·render.*
ēdo,	ēdĭdi,	ēdĭtum,	ēdĕre,	*to put forth, to pub·lish.*
indo,	indĭdi,	indĭtum,	indĕre,	*to put on.*
perdo,	perdĭdi,	perdĭtum,	perdĕre,	*to ruin, to lose.*
prōdo,	prōdĭdi,	prōdĭtum,	prōdĕre,	*to betray.*
reddo,	reddĭdi,	reddĭtum,	reddĕre,	*to put back, to re·store.*
subdo,	subdĭdi,	subdĭtum,	subdĕre,	*to put under, to sub·stitute.*
trādo,	trādĭdi,	trādĭtum,	trādĕre,	*to put across, to de·liver.*
crēdo,	crēdĭdi,	crēdĭtum,	crēdĕre,	*to believe.*
vendo [for vēnum do],	vendĭdi,	vendĭtum,	vendĕre,	*to sell.*
sisto,	stĭti,	stătum,	sistĕre,	*to cause to stand.*

(c). *Perfect*—i. *Supine*—sum.

accendo,	accendi,	accensum,	accendĕre,	*to set on fire.*
cūdo,			cūdĕre,	*to hammer.*

ĕdo,	ēdi,	ēsum,	ĕdĕre (esse),	to eat.
				to strike.)
(fendo, not used,				
dēfendo,	dēfendi,	dēfensum,	dēfendĕre,	to ward off, to defend.
offendo,	offendi,	offensum,	offendĕre,	. to strike against, to offend.
fundo,	fūdi,	fūsum,	fundĕre,	to pour.
incendo,	incendi,	incensum,	incendĕre,	to burn.
mando,	mandi (rare),	mansum,	mandĕre,	to chew.
pando,	pandi,	{pansum or passum,}	pandĕre,	to spread out.
prĕhendo,	prĕhendi,	prĕhensum,	prĕhendĕre,	to grasp.
scando,	scandi,	scansum,	scandĕre,	to climb.
(strīdo,	strīdi;	—	strīdĕre,	to creak.
(also 2 conj.)				
verto,	verti,	versum,	vertĕre,	to turn.
findo,	fĭdi,	fissum,	findĕre,	to cleave.
scindo,	scĭdi,	scissum,	scindĕre,	to tear.
(frendo,	—	{fressum, frēsum,}	frendĕre,	to gnash the teeth.
(also 2 conj.)				

(d). Other Forms.

mĕto,	messui,	messum,	mĕtĕre,	to mow.
pĕto,	{pĕtīvi or pĕtĭi,}	pĕtītum,	pĕtĕre,	to seek, go for ; beg.
sīdo,	{sēdi (rarely sīdi),}	—	sīdĕre,	to sit down.
sterto,	stertui,	—	stertĕre,	to snore.
fīdo,	fīsus sum,	—	fīdĕre,	to trust.

4. Verbs the Stems of which end in the Liquids **L**, **M**, **N**.

(a). Perfect—ui. Supine—ĭtum or tum.

ălo,	ălui,	{ălĭtum or altum,}	ălĕre,	to nourish.
cŭlo,	cŏlui,	cultum,	cŏlĕre,	to till.
consŭlo,	consŭlui,	consultum,	consŭlĕre,	to consult.
mŏlo,	mŏlui,	mŏlĭtum,	mŏlĕre,	to grind.
occŭlo,	occŭlui,	occultum,	occŭlĕre,	to conceal.
vŏlo (irr.),	vŏlui,	—	{velle [for vĕlĕre],}	to wish.
frĕmo,	frĕmui,	frĕmĭtum,	frĕmĕre,	to roar.
gĕmo,	gĕmui,	gĕmĭtum,	gĕmĕre,	to groan.
trĕmo,	trĕmui,	—	trĕmĕre,	to tremble.
vŏmo,	vŏmui,	vŏmĭtum,	vŏmĕre,	to vomit.
gigno,	gĕnui,	gĕnĭtum,	gignĕre,	to produce.

(b). Perfect with Reduplication.

fallo,	fĕfelli,	falsum,	fallĕre,	to deceive.
pello,	pĕpŭli,	pulsum,	pellĕre,	to drive.
căno,	cĕcĭni,	cantum,	cănĕre,	to sing.

(c). *Perfect*—si. *Supine*—tum.

cŏmo,	compsi,	comptum,	cōmĕre,	*to adorn.*
dēmo,	dempsi,	demptum,	dēmĕre,	*to take away.*
prōmo,	prompsi,	promptum,	prōmĕre,	*to take forth.*
sūmo,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	sūmĕre,	*to take up.*
temno,	tempsi,	temptum,	temnĕre,	*to despise.*

(d). *Other Forms.*

percello,	percŭli,	perculsum,	percellĕre,	*to strike down.*
psallo,	psalli,	—	psallĕre,	*to play on a stringed instrument.*
vello,	velli, vulsi,	vulsum,	vellĕre,	*to pluck.*
tollo,	sustŭli,	sublātum,	tollĕre,	*to raise up, take away.*
ĕmo,	ēmi,	emptum,	ĕmĕre,	*to take or buy.*
prĕmo,	pressi,	pressum,	prĕmĕre,	*to press.*
lĭno,	lēvi,	lĭtum,	lĭnĕre,	*to smear.*
sĭno,	sīvi,	sĭtum,	sĭnĕre,	*to permit.*

5. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Liquid* R.

cerno,	crēvi,	crētum,	cernĕre,	*to sift, distinguish; to discern.*
sperno,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	spernĕre,	*to despise.*
sterno,	strāvi,	strātum,	sternĕre,	*to strew.*
gĕro,	gessi,	gestum,	gĕrĕre,	*to carry.*
ūro,	ussi,	ustum,	ūrĕre,	*to burn.*
curro,	cŭcurri,	cursum,	currĕre,	*to run.*
fĕro (*irr.*),	tŭli,	lātum,	{ferre (for fĕrĕre)}	*to bear, carry.*
quaero,	quaesīvi (ĭi),	quaesītum,	quaerĕre,	*to search for, inquire.*
sĕro,	sĕrui,	sertum,	sĕrĕre,	*to put in rows, to plait.*
sĕro,	sēvi,	sătum,	sĕrĕre,	*to sow.*
tĕro,	trīvi,	trītum,	tĕrĕre,	*to rub.*
verro,	verri,	versum,	verrĕre,	*to sweep.*

6. *Verbs the Stems of which end in* S.

depso,	depsui,	depstum,	dopsĕre,	*to knead.*
{pinso, pīso,	pinsui, pinsi,	pinsĭtum, pinsum, }	pinsĕre,	*to pound.*
pīso,	—	pistum,	pīsĕre,	*to pound.*
vīso,	vīsi,	vīsum,	vīsĕre,	*to visit.*
pōno,	pŏsui,	pŏsĭtum,	pōnĕre,	*to place.*
arcesso,	arcessīvi,	arcessītum,	arcessĕre,	*to send for.*
căpesso,	căpessīvi,	căpessītum,	căpessĕre,	*to take in hand.*
făcesso,	făcessi,	făcessītum,	făcessĕre,	*to make, to cause.*
lăcesso,	lăcessīvi,	lăcessītum,	lăcessĕre,	*to provoke.*

7. *Verbs the Stems of which end in* U, V.

Perfect—i. Supine—tum.

ăcuo,	ăcui,	ăcūtum,	ăcuĕre,	*to sharpen.*
arguo,	argui,	argūtum,	arguĕre,	*to prove.*
imbuo,	imbui,	imbūtum,	imbuĕre,	*to soak.*
induo,	indui,	indūtum,	induĕre,	*to put on.*
exuo,	exui,	exūtum,	exuĕre,	*to put off.*
mĭnuo,	mĭnui,	mĭnūtum,	mĭnuĕre,	*to break up, lessen.*
rŭo,*	rui,	rŭtum,	ruĕre,	*to rush.*
spuo,	spui,	spūtum,	spuĕre,	*to spit.*
stătuo,	stătui,	stătūtum,	stătuĕre,	*to set up.*
suo,	sui,	sūtum,	suĕre,	*to sew.*
trĭbuo,	trĭbui,*	trĭbūtum,	trĭbuĕre,	*to assign, give.*
lăvo,	lāvi,	lautum,	lăvĕre,	*to wash.*
(also 1 Conj.)		lōtum,		
solvo,	solvi,	sŏlūtum,	solvĕre,	*to loosen.*
volvo,	volvi,	vŏlūtum,	volvĕre,	*to roll.*
congruo,	congrui,	—	congruĕre,	*to agree.*
luo,†	lui,	—	luĕre,	*to atone.*
(nuo,				*to nod.)*
abnuo,	abnui,	{abnuĭtum, abnūtum,}	abnuĕre,	*to refuse.*
annuo,	annui,	—	annuĕre,	*to assent.*
mĕtuo,	mĕtui,	—	mĕtuĕre,	*to fear.*
pluit,	{pluit or plūvit,}	—	pluĕre,	*to rain.*
sternuo,	sternui,	—	sternuĕre,	*to sneeze.*

* rŭo, *Fut. Participle* ruĭtūrus. † lŭo, *Fut. Participle* luĭtūrus.

8. *Verbs the Present Tense of which ends in* sco.

Verbs ending in *sco* are *Inceptive*; that is, denote the *beginning* of an action. They are formed from Verbs, Nouns, and Adjectives. Inceptives formed from Verbs have the Perfects of the Verbs from which they are derived, but usually no Supines : as, incălesco, incălui, incălescĕre, *to grow warm*, from căleo, călui, călēre, *to be warm*. The following Inceptives are exceptions and have Supines :—

ăbŏlesco,*	ăbŏlēvi,	ăbŏlĭtum,	ăbŏlescĕre,	*to grow out of use.*
ădŏlesco,*	ădŏlēvi,	ădultum,	ădŏlescĕre,	*to grow up.*
exŏlesco,*	exŏlēvi,	exŏlētum,	exŏlescĕre,	*to grow old.*
concŭpisco, (cŭpio)	concŭpīvi,	concŭpītum,	concŭpiscĕre,	*to desire.*
exardesco, (ardeo)	exarsi,	exarsum,	exardescĕre,	*to take fire.*
rĕvīvisco, (vīvo)	rĕvixi,	rĕvictum,	rĕvīviscĕre,	*to come to life again.*
scisco, (scio)	scīvi,	scītum,	sciscĕre,	*to seek to know, to enact.*

* ăbŏlesco, ădŏlesco, exŏlesco are formed from an obsolete verb ŏleo, *to grow.*

Inceptives formed from Nouns and Adjectives have either Perfects in *ui* and no Supines, or they want both Perfects and Supines : as,

consĕnesco, (sĕnex)	consĕnui,	—	consĕnescĕre,	*to grow old.*
ingrăvesco, (grăvis)	—	—	ingrăvescĕre,	*to grow heavy.*
jŭvĕnesco, (jŭvĕnis)	—	—	jŭvĕnescĕre,	*to grow young.*
mātūresco, (mātūrus)	mātūrui,	—	mātūrescĕre,	*to grow ripe.*
obmūtesco, (mūtus)	obmūtui,	—	obmūtescĕre,	*to grow dumb.*

The following Verbs in *sco* are also inceptives, though commonly treated as independent Verbs :—

cresco,	crēvi,	crētum,	crescĕre,	*to grow.*
glisco,	—	—	gliscĕre,	*to swell.*
hisco,	—	—	hiscĕre,	*to gape.*
nosco,*	nōvi,	nōtum,	noscĕre,	*to learn, to know.*
pasco,	pāvi,	pastum,	pascĕre,	*to feed.*
quiesco,	quiēvi,	quiētum,	quiescĕre,	*to become quiet.*
suesco,	suēvi,	suētum,	suescĕre,	*to grow accustomed.*

* The Present signifies *I learn;* the Perfect, *I know;* the Pluperfect, *I knew.*

THIRD CONJUGATION WITH I IN CERTAIN TENSES.

căpio,	cēpi,	captum,	căpĕre,	*to take.*
făcio,	fēci,	factum,	făcĕre,	*to make.*
jăcio,	jēci,	jactum,	jăcĕre,	*to throw.*
fŭgio,	fūgi,	fŭgĭtum,	fŭgĕre,	*to flee.*
fŏdio,	fōdi,	fossum,	fŏdĕre,	*to dig.*
răpio,	răpui,	raptum,	răpĕre,	*to seize.*
părio,	pĕpĕri,	partum,	părĕre,	*to bring forth.*
quătio,	—	quassum,	quătĕre,	*to shake.*
[comps. -cŭtio,	-cussi,	-cussum,	-cŭtĕre]	
cŭpio,	cŭpīvi (ĭi)	cŭpĭtum,	cŭpĕre,	*to desire.*
săpio,	săpīvi (ĭi)	—	săpĕre,	*to taste; to be wise.*
lăcio,	—	—	—	*to entice* ⎫ in com-
spĕcio,	—	—	—	*to look* ⎭ pounds.

Comps. of (lăcio), allĭcio, illĭcio, etc., exi, ectum.
    ,, (spĕcio), aspĭcio, conspĭcio, etc., exi, ectum.
    ,, quătio, concŭtio, incŭtio, etc.
* părio, *Future Participle* părĭtūrus.

IV. THE FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.

In the Fourth Conjugation the Perfect ends regularly in īvi, the Supine in ītum : as, audio, audīvi, audītum, audīre, *to hear.* The following are exceptions :—

farcio,	farsi,	{fartum, (farctum)}	farcīre,	*to cram.*
fulcio,	fulsi,	fultum,	fulcīre,	*to prop.*
haurio,	hausi,	haustum,	haurīre,	*to draw* (water).
sancio,	sanxi,	{sancītum *or* sanctum,}	sancīre,	*to ratify.*
sarcio,	sarsi,	sartum,	sarcīre,	*to patch.*
sentio,	sensi,	sensum,	sentīre,	*to feel, to think.*
saepio,	saepsi,	saeptum,	saepīre,	*to fence in.*
vincio,	vinxi,	vinctum,	vincīre,	*to bind.*
ĕo,	īvi (ĭi),	ĭtum,	īre,	*to go* (p. 83).
sălio,	{sălui *or* sălii,}	saltum,	sălīre,	*to leap.*
sĕpĕlio,	sĕpĕlīvi (ii)	sĕpultum,	sĕpĕlīre,	*to bury.*
vĕnio,	vēni,	ventum,	vĕnīre,	*to come.*
ămĭcio,	{ămĭcui *or* amixi,}	ămictum,	ămĭcīre,	{*to wrap round, clothe.*}
ăpĕrio,	ăpĕrui,	ăpertum,	ăpĕrīre,	*to open.*
ŏpĕrio,	ŏpĕrui,	ŏpertum,	ŏpĕrīre,	*to cover.*

V. DEPONENTS.

1. In the First Conjugation of Deponent Verbs the Perfects and Supines are all regular.

2. Second Conjugation:

fătĕor,	fassus sum,	fătēri,	*to confess.*
lĭceor,	lĭcĭtus sum,	lĭcēri,	*to bid at a sale.*
mĕdeor,	—	mĕdēri,	*to heal.*
mĕreor,	mĕrĭtus sum,	mĕrēri,	*to earn, to deserve.*
mĭsĕreor,	mĭsĕrĭtus sum,	mĭsĕrēri,	*to take pity on*
pollĭceor,	pollĭcĭtus sum,	pollĭcēri,	*to promise.*
reor,	rătus sum,	rēri,	*to think.*
tueor,	tuĭtus sum,	tuēri,	*to protect.*
vĕreor,	vĕrĭtus sum,	vĕrēri,	*to fear.*

3. Third Conjugation:

fruor,*	{fruĭtus sum *or* fructus sum,}	fruī,	*to enjoy.*
fungor,	functus sum,	fungī,	*to perform.*
grădior,	gressus sum,	grădī,	*to step.*
lābor,	lapsus sum,	lābi,	*to slip.*
lĭquor,	—	līqui,	*to melt, trickle.*
lŏquor,	lŏcūtus sum,	lŏqui,	*to speak.*
mŏrior,†	mortuus sum,	mŏri,	*to die.*
nītor,	{nixus sum *or* nīsus sum,}	nīti,	*to strain, strive.*

       * fruŏr,   *Future Participle*   fruĭtūrus.
       † mŏrior,   ,,   ,,   mŏrĭtūrus.

pătior,	passus sum,	păti,	*to suffer.*
(plecto)			
amplector,	amplexus sum,	amplecti,	*to embrace.*
complector,	complexus sum,	complecti,	*to embrace.*
plector,	—	plecti,	*to smart, be punished.*
quĕror,	questus sum,	quĕri,	*to complain.*
ringor,	—	ringi,	*to show the teeth, to snarl.*
sĕquor,	sĕcūtus sum,	sĕqui,	*to follow.*
ūtor,	ūsus sum,	ūti,	*to use.*
(verto)			
rĕvertor,	rĕversus sum,	rĕverti,	*to return.*
vescor,	—	vesci,	*to eat.*

The following have the inceptive ending :—

ăpiscor,	aptus sum,	ăpisci,	*to obtain.*
ădĭpiscor,	ădeptus sum,	ădĭpisci,	*to obtain.*
commĭniscor,	commentus sum,	commĭnisci,	*to devise.*
rĕmĭniscor,	—	rĕmĭnisci,	*to remember.*
dēfĕtiscor,	dēfessus sum,	dēfĕtisci,	*to grow weary.*
expergiscor,	experrectus sum,	expergisci,	*to wake up.*
īrascor,	īrātus,	īrasci,	*to be angry.*
nanciscor,	nactus *or* nanctus sum,	nancisci,	*to fall in with.*
nascor,	nātus sum,	nasci,	*to be born.*
oblĭviscor,	oblītus sum,	oblīvisci,	*to forget.*
păciscor,	pactus sum,	păcisci,	*to make an agreement.*
prŏfĭciscor,	prŏfectus sum,	prŏfĭcisci,	*to set out.*
ulciscor,	ultus sum,	ulcisci,	*to avenge.*

4. Fourth Conjugation :

assentior,	assensus sum,	assentīri,	*to agree to.*
blandior,	blandītus sum,	blandīri,	*to flatter.*
expĕrior,	expertus sum,	expĕrīri,	*to try.*
largior,	largītus sum,	largīri,	*to give bountifully*
mentior,	mentītus sum,	mentīri,	*to lie.*
mētior,	mensus sum,	mētīri,	*to measure.*
mōlior,	mōlītus sum,	mōlīri,	*to labour.*
oppĕrior,	oppertus sum, oppĕrītus sum,	oppĕrīri,	*to wait for.*
ordior,	orsus sum,	ordīri,	*to begin.*
ŏrior,*	ortus sum,	ŏrīri,	*to rise* (of the sun, &c.)
partior,	partītus sum,	partīri,	*to divide.*
pŏtior,†	pŏtītus sum,	pŏtīri,	*to obtain possession of.*
sortior,	sortītus sum,	sortīri,	*to take by lot.*

* ŏrior, *Future Participle* ŏrĭtūrus. In some tenses forms are borrowed from the 3rd Conjugation: *Pres. Indic.* ŏrĕrĭs or ŏrīrĭs, ŏrĭtur, ŏrĭmur. In the *Imperf. Subj.* both ŏrērer and ŏrīrer are found.
† In the *Imperf. Subj.* both pŏtīrĕr and pŏtĕrĕr are found.

XIX. Defective Verbs.

Defective Verbs are such as want many Tenses and Persons.

I. coepī,   *I begin.*
II. mĕmĭnī, *I remember.*
III. ōdī,   *I hate.*

Indicative.

Perfect.	coepī	mĕmĭnī	ōdī.
Pluperf.	coepĕram	mĕmĭnĕram	ōdĕram.
Fut.-Perf.	coepĕro	mĕmĭnĕro	ōdĕro.

Subjunctive.

Perfect	coepĕrim	mĕmĭnĕrim	ōdĕrim.
Pluperf.	coepissem	mĕmĭnissem	ōdissem.

Imperative.

(wanting.)	mĕmento	(wanting.)
	mĕmentōtĕ	

Infinitive.

Perfect.	coepissĕ	mĕmĭnissĕ	ōdissĕ.

Participle.

Future.	coeptūrŭs	(wanting.)	ōsūrŭs.

PASSIVE VOICE (coepi only).

Indicative.

Perfect.	coeptŭs sum.	*Pluperf.*	coeptŭs ĕram.
	Fut.-Perf.	coeptŭs ĕro.	

Subjunctive.

Perfect.	coeptŭs sim.	*Pluperf.*	coeptŭs essem.

Infinitive.

Perfect.	coeptŭs essĕ.

N.B.—The Passive forms are used when the Infinitive which follows is in the Passive voice: as, Săguntum coeptum est oppugnārī, *Saguntum was begun to be besieged.*

IV. āio, *I say* :—

Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	Present.		*Imperfect.*
S. āio	—	*S.* āiēbam	—
āĭs		āiēbās	—
āĭt	āiăt	āiēbăt	—
P. —	—	*P.* āiēbāmŭs	—
—	āiant	āiēbātĭs	—
āiunt	āiant	āiēbant.	—

Present Participle.—āiens (rare).

V. inquam, *say I* :—

INDICATIVE.

Present.	Imperfect.	Future.	Perfect.
inquam		inquĭēs	inquistī
inquĭs		inquĭĕt	inquĭt
inquĭt	inquĭēbăt		
inquĭmŭs			

IMPERATIVE.

Present.	Future.
inquĭtĭs	
inquĭunt	inquĭēbant	inquĕ	inquĭto.

Obs. Inquam, like the English *say I, says he,* is always used parenthetically, after other words in a sentence.

VI. fāri, *to speak,* a Deponent :—

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.
Present.		*Present S.* fārĕ	fārī
fātur	—		
fantur			
Future.		PARTICIPLES.	
fābŏr, fābĭtŭr	—	*Present.* fantis, &c. (without *Nom.*)	
Perfect.		*Perfect.* fātus (ă, um)	
fātus sum, &c.	fātus sim, &c.	*Gerundive.* fandŭs (ă, um)	
Pluperfect.		SUPINE—fātū.	
fātŭs ĕram, &c.	fātŭs essem, &c.	GERUND—fandī, &c.	

VII. IMPERATIVES AND INFINITIVES.

1. ăvē (or hăvē), ăvētĕ, *hail.* INFIN. ăvērĕ.
2. salvē, salvētĕ, *hail, welcome.* INFIN. salvērĕ.
3. cĕdŏ, cĕdĭtĕ (or cettĕ), *give me, tell me.*
4. ăpăgĕ, ăpăgĭtĕ, *begone.*

XX. VERBS DERIVED FROM OTHER VERBS.

1. FREQUENTATIVE VERBS (1st Conjug.) express the repetition of an action, and are formed by adding ĭto to the Present-Stem of the First Conjugation, and to the Supine-Stem of the other Conjugations, omitting the final vowel : as,

clām-ĭto,	*I cry out often,*	from	clāmo.
lect-ĭto,	*I read often,*	„	lĕgo, lectum.
script-ĭto,	*I write often,*	„	scrībo, scriptum.
vent-ĭto,	*I come often,*	„	vĕnio, ventum.

Obs. Many frequentatives, especially those derived from Verbs of the Third Conjugation, are formed at once from the Supines by simply adding the terminations of the First Conjugation: as,

curso,	*I run hither and thither,*	from curro, cursum.
pulso,	*I beat,*	„ pello, pulsum.

2. INCEPTIVE VERBS (3rd Conjug.) express the beginning of an action, and are formed by adding sco (asco, esco, isco) to the Stems of Substantives and Adjectives as well as of Verbs, dropping the final vowel of the Stem: as,

lăb-asco,	*I begin to totter,*	from lăbo.
căl-esco,	*I grow warm,*	„ căleo.
sĕn-esco,	*I grow old,*	„ sĕnex.

Obs. See list of Inceptive Verbs, pp. 143, 144.

3. DESIDERATIVE VERBS (4th Conjug.) express a desire to do something, and are formed from the Supine by adding ŭrio, dropping the um of the termination: as,

ēs-ŭrio,	*I long to eat,*	from ĕdo, ēsum.
script-ŭrio,	*I long to write,*	„ scrībo, scriptum.

XXI. IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs derived from Adjectives which are compared irregularly follow their formation in the Comparative and Superlative; as, făcĭlis, *easy,* Superlative făcillĭmus, with corresponding adverb făcillĭmē, *very easily;* magnĭfĭcus, *magnificent,* Sup. magnĭfĭcentissĭmus, with corresponding adverb magnĭfĭcentissĭmē, *most magnificently.* The following are the principal Adverbs which have irregularities of formation:—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
bĕnĕ, *well*	mĕlĭus	optĭmē
mălĕ, *badly, ill*	pējus	pessĭmē
multum, *much*	plūs	plūrĭmum
[magnŏpĕre, *greatly*]	măgĭs	maxĭmē
părum, *little, too little*	mĭnus	mĭnĭmē
paulum, -o, *a little*		
prŏpĕ, *near*	prŏpius	proxĭmē
[prae, *before*]	prĭus	prīmum

XXII. Conjunctions.

I. Connective.

ĕt	⎫	nĕquĕ, nĕc	⎫ *neither, nor.*
atquĕ, āc	⎬ *and.*	nēvĕ, neu	⎭
-quĕ	⎭	sīvĕ, seu	*or if.*
aut	⎫ *either, or.*	ĕtiam	⎫ *also.*
vĕl, -vĕ	⎭	quŏquĕ	⎭

II. Adversative.

sĕd	⎫	tămĕn	*yet, nevertheless.*
autem	⎬ *but.*	vērum, vēro	*but, indeed.*
ast, ăt	⎭	ĕnimvēro	*but indeed.*
atquī	*and yet.*	attămĕn	*but yet.*

III. Conditional.

sī	*if.*	čam	⎫
nĭsĭ, nī	*if not.*	mŏdŏ	⎬ *provided that.*
sīn	*if not; but if.*	dummŏdŏ	⎭

IV. Concessive.

etsī	⎫	quamvīs	*however much, al-*
ĕtiamsī	⎪	cum (quum)	*although.* [*though.*
tămetsī	⎬ *although.*	quĭdem	*indeed.*
līcĕt	⎪	ŭt	*granting that, al-*
quanquam	⎭		*though.*

V. Causal.

cum (quum)	*whereas, since.*	quandŏquĭdem	*seeing that.*
quĭă, quŏd	*because.*	nam	⎫ *for.*
quŏniam	*since.*	ĕnim	⎭

VI. Conclusive.

ergō	⎫	ĭtăquĕ	*and so, accordingly*
idcircō	⎪ *therefore.*	quŏcircā	⎫
ĭdeŏ	⎬	quārē	⎬ *wherefore.*
ĭgĭtŭr	⎭	quāproptĕr	⎭

VII. Final.

ŭt	⎫ *that, in order that.*		
quō	⎬	nē	*that not, lest.*
quĭn	⎫ *that not.*	nēvĕ, neu	*and that . . . not.*
quŏmĭnŭs	⎭		

VIII. Temporal.

*antĕquam	⎫ *before that.*	dōnĕc	⎫
*prĭusquam	⎭	quoad	⎬ *so long as, until.*
*postquam	*after that.*	dum	⎭

sĭmŭlatque (āc), or as two words, sĭmŭl atque (āc), *as soon as.*

* Also written as two words, which may be separated from each other : see Ex. xxxii A, 10.

VOCABULARIES.

m. = masculine.
f. = feminine.
n. = neuter.
c. = common gender, that is, masculine and feminine.

Vocabulary 1.

āla, *f.*	*a wing.*
ăquĭla, *f.*	*an eagle.*
cŏlōnĭa, *f.*	*a colony.*
cŏlumba, *f.*	*a dove.*
cŏrōna, *f.*	*a crown.*
fēmĭna, *f.*	*a woman.*
fīlĭa, *f.*	*a daughter.*
insŭla, *f.*	*an island.*
mensa, *f.*	*a table.*
ōra, *f.*	*a coast.*
pĕcūnĭa, *f.*	*money.*
portă, *f.*	*a gate.*
pŭella, *f.*	*a girl.*
rēgīna, *f.*	*a queen.*
Rōma, *f.*	*Rome* (the city).
rŏsa, *f.*	*a rose.*

Vocabulary 2.

agrĭcŏla, *m.*	*a husbandman.*
ămīcĭtĭa, *f.*	*friendship.*
Brĭtannĭa, *f.*	*Britain.*
causa, *f.*	*a cause.*
Eurōpa, *f.*	*Europe.*
Gallĭa, *f.*	*Gaul* (now France).
glōrĭa, *f.*	*glory.*
Graecĭa, *f.*	*Greece.*
incŏla, *c.*	*an inhabitant.*
ĭnĭmīcĭtĭa, *f.*	*enmity.*
Ĭtălĭa, *f.*	*Italy.*
nauta, *m.*	*a sailor.*
patrĭa, *f.*	*a native land, country.*
pŏēta, *m.*	*a poet.*
pugna, *f.*	*a battle.*
Sĭcĭlĭa, *f.*	*Sicily.*
vīta, *f.*	*life.*

Vocabulary 3.

ămīcus, *m.*	*a friend.*
ăvus, *m.*	*a grandfather.*
dŏmĭnus, *m.*	*a lord, master.*
ĕquus, *m.*	*a horse.*
fīlĭus, *m.*	*a son.*
flŭvĭus, *m.*	*a river.*
glădĭus, *m.*	*a sword.*
hortus, *m.*	*a garden.*
ĭnĭmīcus, *m.*	*an enemy (unfriendly person).*
Rhēnus, *m.*	*the Rhine.*
Rhŏdănus, *m.*	*the Rhone.*
rīpa, *f.*	*a bank.*
servus, *m.*	*a slave.*
taurus, *m.*	*a bull.*

Vocabulary 4.

ăger, *m.*	*a field, land.*
gĕner, *m.*	*a son-in-law.*
lĭber, *m.*	*a book.*
măgister, *m.*	*a master, teacher.*
mĭnister, *m.*	*a servant.*
pŭer, *m.*	*a boy.*
sŏcer, *m.*	*a father-in-law.*

Note. Mĭnister, lĭber, ăger are declined like măgister. Sŏcer, gĕner are declined like pŭer.

Vocabulary 5.

argentum, *n.*	*silver.*
aurum, *n.*	*gold.*
bellum, *n.*	*war.*
caelum, *n.*	*heaven.*
dīlĭgentĭa, *f.*	*diligence.*
dōnum, *n.*	*a gift.*

gaudĭum, n.	joy.
mĕtallum, n.	a metal.
oppĭdum, n.	a town.
praemĭum, n.	a reward.
regnum, n.	a kingdom.
scūtum, n.	a shield.
templum, n.	a temple.
*Dĕus, m.	a god.
discĭpŭlus, m.	a pupil, scholar.
morbus, m.	a disease.
mūrus, m.	a wall.
Rōmānus, m.	a Roman.
terra, f.	the earth, land.

 * Vocative Singular same as Nom.: Dĕus : see p. 22.

Vocabulary 6.

ăcūtus, a, um,	sharp, pointed.
albus, a, um,	white.
altus, a, um,	high, deep.
bellĭcōsus, a, um,	warlike.
bŏnus, a, um,	good.
grātus, a, um,	pleasing.
lātus, a, um,	wide, broad.
longus, a, um,	long.
magnus, a, um,	great.
mălus, a, um,	bad, wicked.
mŏlestus, a, um,	troublesome.
multus, a, um,	much, many.
noxĭus, a, um,	hurtful, injurious.
parvus, a, um,	small, little.
răpĭdus, a, um,	rapid.
splendĭdus, a, um,	splendid, bright.
tĭmĭdus, a, um,	timid.
aeger, gra, grum	sick.
mĭser, ĕra, ĕrum,	wretched.
nĭger, gra, grum,	black.
pulcher, chra, chrum,	beautiful.
săcer, cra, crum,	sacred.
tĕner, ĕra, ĕrum,	tender.
exemplum, n.	an example.
hasta, f.	a spear.
nŭmĕrus, m.	a number.
pĕrīcŭlum, n.	danger.

 Note. Grātus, mŏlestus, noxĭus are followed by the Dative case.

Vocabulary 7.

hĭems, hĭĕmis, f.	winter.
trabs, trăbis, f.	a beam.

urbs, urbis, f.	a city.
arx, arcis, f.	a citadel.
dux, dŭcis, c.	a leader, general.
pax, pācis, f.	peace.
jūdex, jūdĭcis, c.	a judge.
lex, lēgis, f.	a law.
rex, rēgis, m.	a king.
bĕnignus, a, um,	kind.
firmus, a, um,	strong.
jūcundus, a, um,	pleasant.
justus, a, um,	just.
Rōmŭlus, i, m.	Romulus.
sĕvērus, a, um,	severe.

Vocabulary 8.

cŏmes, cŏmĭtis, c.	a companion.
custos, custōdis, c.	a guardian.
ĕques, ĕquĭtis, m.	a horse-soldier.
lăpis, lăpĭdis, m.	a stone.
mīles, mīlĭtis, c.	a soldier.
mors, mortis, f.	death.
obses, obsĭdis, c.	a hostage.
pĕdes, pĕdĭtis, m.	a foot-soldier.
aestas, tātis, f.	a summer.
cīvĭtas, tātis, f.	a state, country.
tempestas, tātis, f.	a tempest.
vŏluntas, tātis, f.	a wish, will.
nox, noctis, f.	night.
au(c)tumnus, i, m.	autumn.
nātūra, ae, f.	nature.
clārus, a, um,	clear, renowned.

Vocabulary 9.

frāter, tris, m.	a brother.
māter, tris, f.	a mother.
păter, tris, m.	a father.
agger, ĕris, m.	a mound.
călor, ōris, m.	heat.
clāmor, ōris, m.	a shout.
cŏlor, ōris, m.	colour.
lăbor, ōris, m.	labour, hardship.
ŏdor, ōris, m.	a smell, scent.
sŏror, ōris, f.	a sister.
victor, ōris, m.	a conqueror.
flōs, ōris, m.	a flower.
sōl, sōlis, m.	the sun.
castra, ōrum, n.pl.	a camp.
tōtus, a, um,	whole (see p. 23).
fossa, ae, f.	a ditch.
mūnīmentum, i, n.	a fortification.
praeda, ae, f.	booty.
vărĭus, a, um,	different, various.

Vocabulary 10.

lĕo, ōnis, *m.*	*a lion.*
Jūno, ōnis, *f.*	*Juno.*
pāvo, ōnis, *m.*	*a peacock.*
sermo, ōnis, *m.*	*a discourse.*
consuētūdo, ĭnis. *f.*	*custom, habit.*
hŏmo, ĭnis, *c.*	*a nan, a human being.*
multĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.*	*a multitude.*
virgo, ĭnis, *f.*	*a maiden.*
ōrātor, ōris, *m.*	*an orator.*
*alter, ĕra, ĕrum,	*second (another).*
certus, a, um,	*certain.*
dĕa, ae, *f.*	*a goddess.*
doctus, a, um,	*learned.*
infīnītus, a, um,	*unbounded, in-finite.*
Mĭnerva, ae, *f.*	*Minerva.*
vălĭdus, a, um,	*strong.* .

* The Genitive Singular of *alter* is altĕrĭus, Dat. altĕri : see pp. 23, 24.

Vocabulary 11.

cīvis, is, *c.*	*a citizen.*
classis, is, *f.*	*a fleet.*
hostis, is, *c.*	*an enemy (pub-lic enemy).*
turris, is, *f.*	*a tower.*
vallis (-es), is, *f.*	*a valley.*
vestis, is, *f.*	*a garment.*
caedes, is, *f.*	*slaughter.*
nūbes, is, *f.*	*a cloud.*
rūpes, is, *f.*	*a rock.*
angustus, a, um,	*narrow.*
āter, ātra, ātrum,	*black.*
dūrus, a, um,	*hard.*
nix, nĭvis, *f.*	*snow.*
nōtus, a, um,	*known.*
pĕrītus, a, um,	*skilful.*
Rōmānus, a, um,	*Roman.*

Vocabulary 12.

grāmen, ĭnis, *n.*	*grass.*
nōmen, ĭnis, *n.*	*a name.*
gĕnus, ĕris, *n.*	*a race, a class.*
ŏpus, ĕris, *n.*	*a work.*
sīdus, ĕris, *n.*	*a star, constel-lation.*
scĕlus, ĕris, *n.*	*a crime.*
dĕcus, ōris, *n.*	*an ornament.*
corpus, ŏris, *n.*	*a body.*

frīgus, ŏris, *n.* ·	*cold.*
lītus, ŏris, *n.*	*a shore.*
tempus, ŏris, *n.*	*time.*
căput, ĭtis, *n.*	*a head.*
crūs, crūris, *n.*	*a leg.*
fulgur, ŭris, *n.*	*lightning.*
ōs, ōris, *n.*	*a mouth.*
rēte, is, *n.*	*a net.*
măre, is, *n.*	*the sea.*
ănĭmăl, ālis, *n.*	*an animal.*
calcăr, āris, *n.*	*a spur.*
vectīgăl, ālis, *n.*	*a tax.*
annus, i, *m.*	*a year.*
antīquus, a, um,	*ancient.*
aurĕus, a, um,	*golden.*
bālaena, ae, *f.*	*a whale.*
Carthāgo, ĭnis, *f.*	*Carthage (a city in the north of Africa).*
Cĭcĕro, ōnis, *m.*	*Cicero (a cele-brated Ro-man orator).*
dŏmĭcĭlĭum, i, *n.*	*abode.*
ĕlĕphantus, i, *m.*	*an elephant.*
īra, ae, *f.*	*anger.*
nŏvus, a, um,	*new.*
ŏcŭlus, i, *m.*	*an eye.*
piscis, is, *m.*	*a fish.*
prŏfundus, a, um,	*deep.*

Vocabulary 13.

ācer, ācris, ācre,	*keen, sharp.* -
cĕler, ĕris, ĕre,	*swift.*
brĕvis, e,	*short.*
dulcis, e,	*sweet.*
diffĭcĭlis, e,	*difficult.*
făcĭlis, e,	*easy.*
fĭdēlis, e,	*faithful.*
lĕvis, e,	*light.*
omnis, e,	*all, every.*
ūtĭlis, e,	*useful.*
audax, ācis,	*bold.*
răpax, ācis,	*rapacious.*
fēlix, īcis,	*fortunate, successful.*
vēlox, ōcis,	*swift.*
ingens, entis,	*huge, immense.*
praesens, entis,	*present.*
praestans, antis,	*excellent.*
pŏtens, entis,	*powerful.*
prūdens, entis,	*prudent.*
arma, ōrum, *n. pl.*	*arms.*
carmen, ĭnis, *n.*	*a song.*

consĭlĭum, i, *n.* *plan, counsel.*
fŭror, ōris, *m.* *madness.*
hūmānus, a, um, *human.*
ĭnĭtĭum, i, *n.* *a beginning.*
nāvis, is, *f.* *a ship.*
Persa, ae, *m.* *a Persian.*
săgitta, ae, *f.* *an arrow.*
vĭa, ae, *f.* *a way, a road.*
vĕtus, vĕtĕris, *old.*
vīnum, i, *n.* *wine.*
vulnŭs, ĕris, *n.* *a wound.*

Vocabulary 14.

ăcus, ūs, *f.* *a needle.*
arcus, ūs, *m.* *a bow.*
audītus, ūs, *m.* *hearing.*
cursus, ūs, *m.* *running.*
ĕquĭtātus, ūs, *m.* *cavalry.*
exercĭtus, ūs, *m.* *an army.*
fīcus, ūs and i, *f.* *a fig, fig-tree.*
fructus, ūs, *m.* *fruit.*
măgistrātus, ūs, *m.* *a magistrate.*
mănus, ūs, *f.* *a hand.*
pĕdĭtātus, ūs, *m.* *infantry.*
portus, ūs, *m.* *a harbour.*
quercus, ūs, *f.* *an oak, oak-tree.*
sensus, ūs, *m.* *a sense.*
vīsus, ūs, *m.* *seeing.*
cornu, ūs, *n.* *a horn.*
gĕnu, ūs, *n.* *a knee.*
aurĭs, is, *f.* *an ear.*
cervus, i, *m.* *a stag.*
caelestis, e, *belonging to the*
  heavens: hence
arcus caelestis, *the rainbow.*
instrūmentum, i, *n. an instrument.*
magnĭfĭcus, a, um, *magnificent.*
tūtus, a, um, *safe.*
Scўthae, ārum, *the Scythians.*
  m. pl.
sēdes, is, *f.* *a seat.*
vŏluptas, tātis, *f.* *pleasure.*
-quĕ (always at- *and.*
  tached to the
  word which it
  connects with
  another).

Vocabulary 15.

ăcĭes, ēī, *f.* *a line of battle.*
dĭes, ēī, *m.* & *f.* in *a day.*
  sing., *only m.*
  in plur.

făcĭes, ēī, *f.* *figure, counten-*
  ance.
fĭdes, ĕī, *f.* *faith, fidelity.*
plānĭtĭes, ēī, *f.* *a plain.*
rēs, ĕī, *f.* *a thing.*
segnĭtĭes, ēī, *f.* *slothfulness, in-*
  dolence.
spes, ĕī, *f.* *hope.*
crĕātor, ōris, *m.* *creator.*
dŏmĭna, ae, *f.* *mistress.*
fortūna, ae, *f.* *fortune.*
rārus, a, um, *rare.*
sĕrēnus, a, um, *clear.*
victōrĭa, ae, *f.* *a victory.*

Vocabulary 16.

arbor, ŏris, *f.* *a tree.*
bestĭa, ae, *f.* *a beast.*
cănis, is, *c.* *a dog.*
conscĭentĭa, ae, *f. conscience.*
dēbĭlis, e, *feeble.*
dīvĭtĭae, ārum, *f. riches.*
  (only pl.)
flūmen, ĭnis, *n.* *a current, river.*
fortis, e, *strong, brave.*
fulmen, ĭnis, *n.* *lightning, a*
  thunderbolt.
fūnus, ĕris, *n.* *a funeral.*
immortālis, e, *immortal.*
jŭvĕnis, is, *c.* *a young man* or
  woman.
mŏnŭmentum, i, *n. a monument.*
mortālis, e, *mortal.*
Neptūnus, i, *m.* *Neptune.*
pauci, ae, a (*pl.*) *few.*
plēnus, a, um *full.*
  (with *gen.*)
silva, ae, *f.* *a wood.*

Vocabulary 17.

culpa, ae, *f.* *blame, fault.*
Graecus, a, um. *Grecian, Greek;*
  pl. m., Graeci,
  orum, *the*
  Greeks.
hŏnor, ōris, *m.* *an honour.*
indoctus, a, um, *unlearned.*
ĭnĭmīcus, a, um, *unfriendly.*
laus, laudis, *f.* *praise.*
mĕmŏrābĭlis, e, *memorable.*
vērus, a, um, *true.*
virtūs, ūtis, *f.* *valour, virtue.*

Vocabulary 18.

ădūlātĭo, ōnis, f.	flattery.
ămābĭlis, e,	lovely.
ămor, ōris, m.	love.
asper, ĕra, ĕrum,	rough, rugged.
Cāto, ōnis, m.	Cato, a noble Roman.
ferrum, i, n.	iron.
Helvētĭa, ae, f.	the country of the Helvetii (in Switzerland).
hībernus, a, um,	wintry, of winter.
ĭmāgo, ĭnis, f. •	a likeness, portrait, image.
imprŏbus, a, um,	dishonest, wicked. [ed.
ĭter, ĭtĭnĕrĭs, n.	a journey.
lĕpus, ŏris, m.	a hare.
lūna, ae, f.	the moon.
lux, lūcis, f.	light.
*mĕus, a, um,	my, mine.
mons, montis, m.	a mountain.
nĭhĭl, indec. n	nothing.
nōn, adv. •	not.
ŏdĭum, i, n.	hatred.
pernĭcĭōsus, a, um,	destructive, baneful.
quăm, adv. & conj.	than, as.
rādix, īcis, f.	a root.
săpĭentĭa, ae, f.	wisdom.
semper, adv.	always, ever.
sĭmŭlātĭo, ōnis, f.	a pretence.
sŏnĭtus, ūs, m.	a sound.
spērātus, a, um,	hoped for.
suāvis, e,	sweet, delightful.
sŭus, a, um,	his own, her own, its own, their own.
tĕnŭis, e,	thin, slender.
tranquillus, a, um,	calm.
tŭus, a, um,	thy, thine; your, yours.
unquam, adv.	at any time, ever.
vēr, vēris, n.	the spring.
vultur, ŭris, m.	a vulture.

* See p. 33.

Vocabulary 19.

Ălexander, dri, m.	Alexander, a famous king of Macedonia.

*Augustus, i, m.	August, the 8th month of the year.
centŭrĭa, ae, f.	a century.
cĕrăsus, i, f.	a cherry-tree.
cĕrăsum, i, n.	a cherry.
cŏhors, rtis, f.	a cohort.
consul, ŭlis, m.	a consul.
injustus, a, um,	unjust.
lĕgĭo, ōnis, f.	a legion.
Măcĕdo, ōnis, m.	a Macedonian.
mālus, i, f.	an apple-tree.
mālum, i, n.	an apple.
mănĭpŭlus, i, m.	a maniple.
mensis, is, m.	a month
mītis, e,	mild.
ŏs, ossis, n.	a bone.
pars, partis, f.	a part.
pĭrus, i, f.	a pear-tree.
pĭrum, i, n.	a pear.
prūnus, i, f.	a plum-tree.
prūnum, i, n.	a plum.
săpĭens, ntis, adj. and subs.	wise, a wise man.
Xerxēs, ĭs, m.	Xerxes, a famous king of Persia.

* The month of August, previously called Sextīlis, was named after the emperor Augustus.

Vocabulary 20.

attentus, a, um,	attentive.
bĕātus, a, um,	happy.
cārus, a, um,	dear.
contentus, a, um,	contented.
dīlĭgens, ntis,	diligent, careful.
dīves, ĭtis,	rich.
ignāvĭa, ae, f.	cowardice, indolence.
jūs, jūris, n.	right, law.
laetus, a, um,	joyful.
līber, ĕra, ĕrum,	free.
mĕmor, ŏris,	mindful.
noster, tra, trum,	our, ours.
nunc, adv.	now.
pauper, ĕris,	poor.
praeceptor, ōris, m.	a teacher.
prŏbus, a, um,	good, upright.
saepĕ, adv.	often.
sălūs, ūtis, f.	safety
sors, rtis, f.	a lot.

Tĭtus, i (T.), *m.* *Titus, a common Roman fore-*

tristis, e, *sad.* [*name.*

vester, tra, trum, *your, yours.*

sī, *conj.* *if.*

Vocabulary to Ex. 21, 22, 23.

ănĭmus, i, *m.* *mind; spirit; soul; the feelings.*

auctōrĭtas, ātis, *f.* *authority.*

*autem, *conj.* *but.*

auxĭlĭum, i, *n.* *help, aid.*

cŭpĭdĭtas, ātis, *f.* *desire, passion.*

Dēmosthĕnēs, is, *m.* *Demosthenes, the famous Athenian orator.*

industrĭus, a, um, *industrious, busy.*

ĭners, rtis, *helpless,sluggish, idle.*

lībĕri, ōrum, *m.pl.* *children.*

mĕmŏrĭa, ae, *f.* *memory.*

părens, entis, *c.* *a parent.*

planta, ae, *f.* *a sprout, plant.*

proelĭum, i, *n.* *a battle.*

* The proper position of *autem* is *after* the first word of the clause to which it belongs.

Vocabulary 24.

aeternus, a, um, *eternal.*

bēlua, bellĭa, ae, *f.* *a great beast.*

Cimbri, ōrum, *m.* *the Cimbrians, pl.* *a Celtic tribe.*

cŏr, cordis, *n.* *a heart.*

ēlĕgans, ntis, *elegant, exquisite.*

fĭdēlis, e, ⎫
fĭdus, a, um,⎭ *faithful.*

fons, ntis, *m.* *a fountain.*

Līvĭus, i, *m.* *Livy, a Roman historian.*

mŭlĭer, ĕris, *f.* *a woman, wife.*

nunquam, *adv.* *never.*

Sallustĭus, i, *m.* *Sallust, a Roman historian.*

salvus, a, um, *safe.*

sanguis, ĭnis, *m.* *blood.*

scriptor, ōris, *m.* *a writer, author.*

Vocabulary 25.

(A, B, C.)

N.B.—Infinitive of 1st Conjugation formed from Pres. Indic. by changing o into āre; as, aedĭfĭc-o, aedĭfĭc-āre; crĕ-o, crĕ-āre.

aedĭfĭco, āvi, ātum, *I build.*

1.

ambŭlo, āvi, ātum, *I walk.*

castīgo, āvi, ātum, *I chastise.*

crĕo, āvi, ātum, *I create, make.*

cūro, āvi, ātum, *I take care.*

do, dĕdi, dătum, *I give.* dăre,

ēmendo, āvi, ātum, *I improve.*

ēmigro, āvi, ātum, *I depart.*

expugno, āvi, *I take by storm.* ātum,

firmo, āvi, ātum, *I strengthen.*

flo, flāvi, flātum, *I blow.* flāre,

hăbĭto, āvi, ātum, *I dwell.*

intro, āvi, ātum, *I enter.*

jūdĭco, āvi, ātum, *I judge.*

laudo, āvi, ātum, *I praise.*

mūto, āvi, ātum, *I change.*

oppugno, āvi, *I attack, assault.* ātum,

orno, āvi, ātum, *I adorn.*

păro, āvi, ātum, *I prepare, get, gain.*

pugno, āvi, ātum, *I fight.*

rĕcrĕo, āvi, ātum, *I refresh.*

vasto, āvi, ātum, *I lay waste.*

vĭgĭlo, āvi, ātum, *I watch, I am awake.*

vĭtŭpĕro,āvi,ātum, *I blame, find fault with.*

aedĭfĭcĭum, i, *n.* *a building.*

Cŏrinthus, i, *f.* *Corinth.*

cum (quum), *conj.* *when.*

dīlĭgenter, *adv.* *carefully.*

dum, *conj.* *while.*

fraus, fraudis, *f.* *dishonesty.*

jam, *adv.* *now, already.*

lībertas, tātis, *f.* *freedom, liberty.*

littĕra, ⎫ *a letter of the*
lītĕra, ae, *f.*⎭ *alphabet.*

littĕrae, ⎫ *letters, learn-*
lītĕrae, arum, *f.*⎬ *ing; also, an*
pl.⎭ *epistle, letter.*

mōs, mōris, *m.*   *a manner, cus-*
nēmo, ĭnem   *nobody.* [*tom.*
  (no Gen. or
  Abl.), *c.*
ŏpŭlentus, a, um, *wealthy.*
plăcĭdus, a, um, *quiet.*
prŏbĭtas, ātis, *f.* *honesty, integ-*
         rity.
somnus, i, *m.*   *sleep.*
tĭmor, ōris, *m.* *fear.*
vălētūdo, ĭnis, *f.* *health.*
ventus, i, *m.*   *wind.*

(D, E, F.)

advento, āvi,   *I am on ᵓ the*
  ātum, 1.   *point of ar-*
            riving.
canto, āvi, ātum, *I sing.*
dēlecto, āvi, ātum, *I delight, amuse.*
dīmĭco, āvi, ātum, *I fight (a battle).*
dŭbĭto, āvi, ātum, *I doubt.*
erro, āvi, ātum, *I err, make a*
           mistake.
exhĭlăro,āvi,ātum, *I cheer.*
impĕro, āvi, ātum *I command.*
  (with *dat.*)
lībĕro, āvi, ātum, *I free, deliver.*
occŭpo, āvi, ātum, *I seize upon.*
opto, āvi, ātum, *I wish, desire.*
porto, āvi, ātum, *I carry.*
rĕdămo, āvi, ātum, *I love in return.*
rĕnŏvo; āvi, ātum, *I make new*
          again, restore.
servo, āvi, ātum, *I preserve, save.*
sŭpĕro, āvi, ātum, *I overcome.*
tracto, āvi, ātum, *I handle, deal*
          with.

ăb (ā, abs), *prep. from, by.*
  (with *abl.*)
dŭbĭus, a, um,   *doubtful.*
fortĭter, *adv.*   *bravely.*
fortissĭmē, *adv.* *very bravely.*
Hannĭbal, ălis, *m. Hannibal, the*
           great Cartha-
           ginian general.
hĕri, *adv.*   *yesterday.*
intĕrĭtus, ūs, *m.* *destruction.*
ĭtă, *adv. (from* is, *in that way, so,*
  id)   *thus.*
luscĭnĭa, ae, *f.* *a nightingale.*

---

mājōres, um, *m. pl. ancestors.*
rectus, a, um,   *straight, right.*
stătio, ōnis, *f.*   *a post, station.*
terror, ōris, *m.* *terror, alarm.*

Vocabulary 26.

N.B.—Infinitive of 2nd Conjuga-
tion formed from Pres. Indic. by
changing ĕo into ēre; as, dēb-ĕo,
dēb-ēre; dŏc-ĕo,dŏc-ēre; fl-ĕo, fl-ēre.

cŏercĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. *I restrain, curb.*
dēbeo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. *I owe, I ought.*
dēlĕo, ēvi, ētum, 2. *I destroy.*
displĭcĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, *I displease.*
  2. (with *dat.*)
dŏcĕo, docŭi, doc- *I teach.* (Takes
  tum, 2.   *two accusa-*
         tives.)
exercĕo, ŭi, ĭtum,2. *I exercise.*
flĕo, flēvi, flētum,2. *I weep.*
flōrĕo, ŭi, 2.   *I bloom, flourish.*
*gaudĕo, gāvīsus *I rejoice.*
  sum, gaudēre, 2.
hăbĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. *I have.*
mĕrĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. *I deserve.*
mŏnĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. *I advise, warn.*
nŏcĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. *I hurt, harm.*
  (with *dat.*)
pārĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. *I obey.*
  (with *dat.*)
plăcĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. *I   please, am*
  (with *dat.*)   *pleasing to.*
praebĕo, ŭi,ĭtum,2. *I furnish, af-*
          ford, exhibit.
terrĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. *I terrify, fright-*
          en, alarm.
vălĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. *I am strong, in*
          good health.

* The Verb *gaudeo* belongs to
the class of Semi-deponents. (See
p. 86.)

---

ars, artis, *f.*   *art, handicraft.*
ăvis, is, *f.*   *a bird.*
Athēnĭensis, e,   *Athenian; usu.*
          m. pl., the
          Athenians.
bĕnĕ, *adv.*   *well.*
Caesar, ăris, *m.* *Caesar, a fa-*
          mous Roman.
cantus, ūs, *m.*   *a song.*
dĭū, *adv.*   *for a long time.*

dīvīnus, a, um,   belonging to the gods, divine.

Lătīnus, a, um,   Latin.

lingua, ae, f.   tongue, language.

praeceptum, i, n.   precept, instruction, lesson.

Pompēius, i, m.   Pompey, the rival of Caesar.

quĭă,
quŏd,   } conjs.   because.

saepissĭmē, adv.   very often.

sĕnectūs, ūtis, f.   old age.

Sōlōn, ōnis, m.   Solon, an Athenian lawgiver.

tĕmĕrĭtas, ātis, f.   rashness.

Vocabulary 27.

N.B.—Infinitive of 3rd Conjugation formed from Pres. Indic., by changing o into ĕre : as, absūm-o, absūm-ĕre ; cing-o, cing-ĕre ; contrăh-o, contrăh-ĕre.

absūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, 3.   I consume, cut off, destroy.

cingo, cinxi, cinc-tum, 3.   I surround.

contemno, tempsi, temptum, 3.   I despise.

contrăho, traxi, tractum, 3.   I draw or bring together.

convŏlo, āvi, ātum, āre, 1.   I fly or rush together.

corrĭgo, rexi, rec-tum, 3.   I correct.

dēfendo, di, sum, 3.   I defend.

dēsĕro, rŭi, rtum, 3.   I abandon.

dētĕgo, xi, ctum, 3.   I discover.

dīco, xi, ctum, 3.   I say, speak.

disco, dĭdĭci, —, 3.   I learn.

dūco, xi, ctum, 3.   I lead.

ĕmo, ēmi, emptum, 3.   I buy.

excŏlo, cŭlŭi, cultum, 3.   I cultivate carefully, educate.

instĭtŭo, ŭi, ūtum, 3.   I appoint, institute.

instrŭo, xi, ctum, 3.   I arrange, draw up in order.

jungo, junxi, junctum, 3.   I join.

lĕgo, lēgi, lectum, 3.   I gather, read.

narro, āvi, ātum, āre, 1.   I relate.

pingo, pinxi, pictum, 3.   I paint, embroider.

rĕgo, rexi, rectum, 3.   I rule.

scrībo, psi, ptum, 3.   I write.

solvo, vi, ūtum, 3.   I loosen, pay.

specto, āvi, ātum, āre, 1.   I look at, look on.

tĕgo, texi, tectum, 3.   I cover.

trăho, traxi, tractum, 3.   I draw, drag.

triumpho, āvi, ātum, āre, 1.   I triumph.

vŏlo, āvi, ātum, 1.   I fly.

Cămillus, i, m.   Camillus, a Roman general.

Cătĭlīna, ae, m.   Catiline.

conjūrātĭo, ōnis, f.   a conspiracy.

cōpĭa, ae, f.   plenty.

cōpĭae, ārum, f.pl.   forces.

currus, ūs, m.   a chariot.

fĕrē, adv.   almost, commonly.

Hellespontus, i, m.   the Hellespont (now the Dardanelles).

impĕrātor, ōris, m.   a commander, a general.

ĭn, prep.(with acc.)   into.

incendĭum, i, n.   a fire, conflagration.

innŭmĕrus, a, um,   innumerable.

lŏcus, ĭ, m., pl. lŏcă, n. (rarely -i, m.)   a place.

mens, mentis, f.   the mind.

mundus, i, m.   the world.

obsĭdĭo, ōnis, f.   a siege, blockade.

ōrātĭo, ōnis, f.   oration, speech.

pallĭum, i, n.   a cloak.

*pons, ntis, m.   a bridge.

sĭmŭl ăc (atque), or as one word, sĭmŭlac, conj.   as soon as.

vix, adv.   scarcely.

* Phrase : jungĕre flūmen ponte, to throw a bridge over a river.

Vocabulary 28.

N.B.—Infinitive of 4th Conjugation formed by changing Ĭo of Pres. Indic. into īre; as, dorm-Ĭo, dorm-īre; sc-Ĭo, sc-īre; vĕn-Ĭo, vĕn-īre.

custōdĭo, īvi, ītum, *I guard, keep* īre, 4.   *guard.*
dormĭo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I sleep.*
ērŭdĭo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I train (up), educate.*
fīnĭo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I limit, put an end to.*
mollĭo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I soften, assuage.*
mūnĭo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I fortify.*
nescĭo, īvi & ĭi, *I am ignorant of,* ītum, 4.   *know not.*
nūtrĭo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I nourish, nurture.*
ŏbēdĭo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I obey.* (with *dat.*)
pūnĭo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I punish.*
rĕpĕrĭo, reppĕri, *I find.* repertum, 4.
scĭo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I know.*
sĕpĕlĭo, īvi and } *I bury.* ĭi, pultum, 4. }
vĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, 4.   *I come.*
vestĭo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I clothe.*
vincĭo, vinxi, vinctum, 4.   *I bind.*

Alpēs, ĭum, *f pl. the Alps.*
Cornēlĭa, ae, *f.*   *Cornelia, a Roman matron.*
crūdēlis, e,   *cruel.*
dīlĭgentissĭmē, *adv.*   *most carefully.*
dŏlor, ōris, *m.*   *pain, grief.*
ĕtĭam, *conj.*   *also, even.*
făcĭle, *adv.*   *easily.*
fīnis, is, *m.*   *end, limit,* in pl. *territories.*
gnāvĭtĕr, *adv.*   *actively, earnestly.*
Lĭbўa, ae, *f.*   *Africa.* [*ly.*
lictor, ōris, *m.*   *a lictor (attendant on a magistrate).*
longinquus, a, um, *long, distant.*
longinquĭtas, ātis, *length, distance. f.*

membrāna, ae, *f.* *thin skin, membrane.*
mollis, e,   *soft, mellow.*
mortŭus, a, um,   *dead.*
ōlim, *adv.*   *formerly, · once upon a time.*
quŏquĕ, *conj.*   *also, even.*
turpis, e,   *base, disgraceful.*
vestīmentum, i, *n. clothing.*
vincŭlum, i, *n.* *a chain, bond.*
vox, vōcis, *f.*   *a voice.*

Vocabulary 29.

ēdŭco, āvi, ātum, *I educate.* āre, 1.
ēdūco, xi, ctum, *I lead out.* cĕre, 3.
fŭgo, āvi, ātum, 1. *I put to flight.*
vulnĕro, āvi, ātum, *I wound.* 1.

Antĭŏchus, i, *m.* *Antiochus, the name of several kings of Syria.*
ēgrĕgĭus, a, um, *excellent, distinguished.*
grăvĭtĕr, *adv.* *heavily, severely, grievously.*
Lўcurgus, i, *m.* *Lycurgus, a Spartan legislator.*
Trōja, ae, *f.* *Troy, the city.*
Vesta, ae, *f.* *Vesta, goddess of fire and hearth.*

Vocabulary 30.

[See Vocab. 26, N.B.]

mănĕo, mansi, *I remain.* mansum, 2.
mŏvĕo, mōvi, *I move, disturb.* mōtum, 2.
tĭmeo, ŭi, —, 2. *I fear.*

adventus, ūs, *m.* *arrival.*
Nĕro, ōnis, *m.* *Nero, a Roman emperor.*
strēnŭus, a, um, *vigorous.*
strēnŭē, *adv.* *vigorously.*
stŭdĭum, i, *n.* *zeal, pursuit, study.*
sŭbĭtus, a, um, *sudden.*

Vocabulary 31.

[See Vocab. 27, N.B.]

afflīgo, xi, ctum, *I cast down,*
3.   *ruin.*
cŏlo, cŏlŭi, cultum, *I cultivate, che-*
3.   *rish.*
dīlĭgo,lexi,lectum, *I esteem, love.*
3.

fingo,finxi,fictum, *I frame, feign,*
3.   *invent.*
stŭdĕo, ŭi, —, ēre, *I am eager,*
2.   *zealous.*
vĕho,vexi,vectum, *I carry,* in Pass.
3.   *I ride, sail.*
vinco, vīci, victum, *I conquer.*
3.

vīvo, vixi, victum, *I live.*
3.

———

clādes, is, *f.*   *disaster, defeat.*
fābŭla, ae, *f.*   *a fable, story.*
nōbĭlis, e,   *distinguished.*
perversus, a, um, *wilful, perverse.*
Phăĕthōn, ontis, *Phaëthon, a son*
  acc. -ontă, *m.*   *of Apollo.*
prŏbē, *adv.*   *rightly,properly.*
quĭdem, *adv.* and *indeed.*
  conj. (never first
  in a sentence).
rătĭo, ōnis, *f.*   *reason.*
Scīpĭo, ōnis, *f.*   *Scipio, a noble*
           Roman.
vĕhĕmentĕr, *adv.* *vehemently,*
           warmly.

Vocabulary 32.

cădo, cĕcĭdi,   *I fall.*
  cāsum, 3.

———

āēr, āĕris, acc.   *the air.*
  āĕra, *m.*
Afrĭcānus, i, *m.* *Africanus,a sur-*
           name of the
           Scipios.
Brĭtannus, i, *m.* *a Briton.*
cognĭtĭo, ōnis, *f.* *inquiry, know-*
           ledge.
ērŭdītus, a, um, *trained, edu-*
           cated.
Gracchus, i, *m.* *Gracchus.*
injustē, *adv.*   *unjustly.*
justē, *adv.*   *justly.*

lăpĭdĕus, a, um, *of stone.*
nĕgōtĭum, i, *n.* *business.*
pellis, is, *f.*   *skin* (of ani-
           mals).
prĭus, *adv.*   *sooner, before.*
Pūnĭcus, a, um, *Punic, Cartha-*
           ginian.
Sōcrătēs, is, *m.* *Socrates.*
sōlum, *adv.*   *only.*
summus, a, um, *highest, utmost,*
           greatest.
Tĭbĕrĭus, i, *m.* *Tiberius, a com-*
  (Ti.)   *mon Roman*
           forename.

Vocabulary 33.

absurdus, a, um, *absurd.*
bŏna, ōrum, *n. pl. goods.*
celsus, a, um, *lofty, tall.*
margărīta, ae, *f.* *a pearl.*
nĕcessārĭus, a, um, *necessary, need-*
           ful.
nīdus, i, *m.*   *a nest.*
versus, ūs, *m.* *a line, a verse.*

Vocabulary 34.

N.B.—Infinitive of Deponents of
1st Conjugation formed by chang-
ing or of Pres. Indic. into ārī; as,
admīr-or, admīr-ārī.

admīror, ātus, 1. *I wonder at, I*
           admire.
aspernor, ātus, 1. *I reject, despise.*
cōnor, ātus, 1. *I attempt.*
contemplor, ātus, *I observe care-*
  1.   *fully, contem-*
           plate.
hortor, ātus, 1. *I urge, exhort,*
           encourage.
ĭmĭtor, ātus, 1. *I imitate.*
mĕdĭtor, ātus, 1. *I meditate on,*
           study.
mīror, ātus, 1. *I wonder at,*
           admire.
vĕnĕror, ātus, 1. *I reverence, wor-*
           ship.

———

dēmum, *adv.*   *indeed.**
pŏtestas, ātis, *f.*} *power* (see Latin
pŏtentĭa, ae, *f.* } Index).

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam *or* quid-dam, } *a certain, certain one.*

tum, *adv.* *then.*

* As, tum dēmum, *then indeed; then and not till then; then at length.*

Vocabulary 35.

*accĭpĭo, cēpi, cep-tum, cĭpĕre, 3. *I receive.*

*confĭtĕor, fessus, fĭtēri, 2. *I confess.*

*dēcĭpĭo, cēpi, cep-tum, cĭpĕre, 3. *I deceive.*

*ējĭcĭo, jēci, jec-tum, jĭcĕre, 3. *I cast forth.*

fătĕor, fassus, fă-tēri, 2. *I confess.*

intŭĕor, ĭtus, 2. *I look upon, into.*

mĭsĕrĕor, ĭtus, 2 (with *gen.*) *I pity, have pity on.*

pollĭcĕor, ĭtus, 2. *I promise.*

†rĕcordor, ātus, 1. *I call to mind.*

tŭĕor, ĭtus, 2. *I gaze, guard, protect.*

vĕrĕor, ĭtus, 2. *I fear, reverence.*

* Observe the change of ă to ĭ when a preposition is prefixed in composition: as, accĭpĭo = ad + căpio; confĭteor = con + fătĕor.

† rĕcordor takes *acc.* or *gen.*: more often the former.

Ăsĭa, ae, *f.* *Asia.*

Dārīus, i, *m.* *Darius, king of Persia.*

ex, ē, *prep.* (with *abl.*) *out of.*

făcĭnus, ŏris, *n.* *a bold* or *daring deed, crime.*

Plīnĭus, i, *m.* *Pliny, the name of two Roman authors.*

praetĕrĭtus, a, um, *past.*

rĕus, i, *m.* *an accused man, defendant.*

Vocabulary 36.

ăbūtor, ūsus, ūti, 3 (with *abl.*) *I abuse.*

ădhortor, ātus, 1. *I urge, exhort.*

ădĭpiscor, ădeptus, ădĭpisci, 3. *I acquire, attain to, obtain.*

allŏquor, lŏcūtus, lŏqui, 3. *I speak to* (with *acc.*).

committo, mīsi, missum, 3. } *I send together, join (fight) battle.*

dēflagro, āvi, ātum, 1, *neut.* *to be burnt down.*

fruor, fruĭtus & fructus, frui, 3 (with *abl.*) *I enjoy.*

fungor, functus, 3 (with *abl.*) *I discharge.*

gĕro, gessi, gestum, 3. *I carry on, wage (war).*

jŭbĕo, jussi, jus-sum, jŭbēre, 2. *I order, bid.*

lŏquor, lŏcūtus, lŏqui, 3. *I speak.*

mŏrĭor, mortŭus (*fut.part.* mŏrĭ-tūrus, *about to die*), mŏri, 3. } *I die.*

nascor, nātus, nasci, 3. *I am born.*

oblĭviscor, lĭtus, 3 (with *gen.*) *I forget.*

pătĭor, passus, păti, 3. *I endure, suffer.*

prŏfĭciscor, fectus, prŏfĭcisci, 3. *I set out*

rĕmĭniscor, —, isci, 3 (with *gen.*) *I remember.*

sĕquor, cūtus, sĕ-qui, 3. *I follow.*

ūtor, ūsus, ūti, 3 (with *abl.*) *I use, enjoy.*

vescor, —, vesci, 3 (with *abl.*) *I feed, live on.*

ăd, ăpud, *prepp.* (with *acc.*) *to, at, near.*

ălĭquando, *adv.* *sometimes.*

bĕnignē, *adv.* *kindly.*

cāro, carnis, *f.* *flesh.*

cāsĕus, i, *m.* *cheese.*

M

consŭlātus, ūs, m. *office of consul, consulate.*

crŭcĭātus, ūs, m. *torture.*

Dĭāna, ae, f. *Diana.*

Eurīpĭdes, is, m. *Euripides, an Athenian tragic poet.*

immortālĭtas, ātis, *immortality.* f.

Lăbĭēnus, i, m. *Labienus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

lac, lactis, n. *milk.*

lăcus, ūs, m. *a lake.*

laetĭtĭa, ae, f. *joy.*

Mĕnăpĭi, ōrum, pl. m. *the Menapii, a Gallic tribe.*

mox, adv. *soon, shortly.*

mūnus, ĕris, n. *gift, duty, function.*

nēvĕ, conj. (with subj.) *nor, and lest.*

nĭmĭs, adv. *too, too much.*

pĕr, prep. (with acc.) *through, during.*

poena, ae, f. *punishment.*

Poeni, ōrum, pl. m. *the Carthaginians.*

pristĭnus, a, um, *former, olden.*

rārō, adv. *seldom.*

Rēgŭlus, i, m. *Regulus, a famous Roman.*

Sălămis, īnis, acc. īna, f. *Salamis, an island near Athens.*

tantum, adv. *only.*

Trăsĭmēnus, i, m. *Lake Trasimenus, in Italy.*

Vocabulary 37.

blandĭor, ītus, 4 (with dat.) *I flatter, win upon.*

expĕrĭor, rtus, rīri, 4. *I try, experience.*

mētĭor, mensus, mētīri, 4. *I measure.*

mentĭor, ītus, mentīri, 4. *I lie, tell a lie.*

ordĭor, orsus, 4. *I begin.*

partĭor, ītus, 4. *I share, divide.*

pŏtĭor, ītus, īri, 4 (with abl., also gen.) See p. 146. *I obtain possession of.*

cīvīlis, e, adj. *belonging to a citizen, civil.*

Ĕpămīnondas, ae, m. *Epaminondas, a Theban.*

frons, frontis, f. *the forehead.*

nunquam, adv. *never.*

vultus, ūs, m. *countenance, looks.*

Vocabulary 38.

flŭo, fluxi, fluxum, flŭĕre, 3. *I flow.*

migro, āvi, ātum, 1. *I migrate, depart.*

mĕtus, ūs, m. *fear.*

occĭdens, ntis, m. (part. of occĭdo, to set) *the west (the setting sun).*

permulti, ae, a (pl. only) *very many.*

prīmō, adv. *at first.*

prīmum, adv. *in the first place.*

Vocabulary 39.

dīvĭdo, vīsi, vīsum, vīdĕre, 3. *I divide, separate.*

mitto, mīsi, missum, 3. *I send.*

cētĕrī (caet.), cētĕrae, cētĕra, pl. (sing. rare) *the rest.*

Germāni, ōrum, pl. m. *the Germans.*

Helvĕtĭus, a, um, *Helvetian: usu. pl. m., Helvĕtĭi, ōrum, the Helvetii (in Switzerland).*

lēgātus, i, m. *ambassador, lieutenant.*

ōcĕănus, i, m. *the ocean.*

Vocabulary 40.

fulgĕo, lsi, —, lgēre, 2. *I shine.*

prōfĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, 3, v. irr. *I extend. (See p. 81.)*

Aegyptus, i, *f.*   *Egypt.*
impĕrĭum, i, *n.*   *empire.*
Indi, ōrum, *m. pl. the Indians.*
marmor, ŏris, *n.*   *marble.*
servĭtūs, ūtis, *f.*   *slavery.*
tăbernācŭlum, i, *n. a tent.*
uxor, ōris, *f.*   *a wife.*

Vocabulary 41.

accēdo, cessi, ces- *I approach.*
  sum, cēdĕre, 3.
făcio, fēci, factum, *I act, do.*
  făcĕre, 3.
excēdo, cessi, ces- *I depart from.*
  sum, 3.
incĭpĭo, cēpi, cep- *I begin.*
  tum, cĭpĕre, 3.
perdo, dĭdi, dĭtum, *I destroy, ruin.*
  perdĕre, 3.
rĕsisto, restĭti, re-
  sistĕre, 3 (with } *I resist.*
  dat.)

atquĕ, āc, *conj.* *and.*
attentē, *adv.*   *attentively.*
audactĕr, *adv.* *boldly, daringly.*
făcĭlĕ, *adv.*   *easily.*
jŭventūs, ūtis, *f.* *youth.*
lātē, *adv.*   *widely, wide.*
longĕ, *adv.*   *far.*
măgĭs, *adv.*   *more, rather.*
multum, *adv.*   *much.*
prĭus . . . quam, *before.*
  or as one word,
  prĭusquam, *conj.*
prŏpĕ, *adv.*   *near.*
Roscĭus, i, *m.* *Roscius.*
sătĭs, *adv.*   *enough.*
tigris, is *or* ĭdis, *c. a tiger.*

Phrase :—

longē lātēque, *far and wide.*

Vocabulary 42.

ĭnfringo, frēgi, *I break, impair.*
  fractum, 3.
obscūro, āvi, ātum, *I darken, ob-*
  1.   *scure.*
rĕlinquo, lĭqui, *I leave, quit.*
  lictum, 3.

aequus, a, um, *level, even, just.*
cūr, *adv*   *why ?*

impĕtŭs, ūs, *m.* *an onset, attack.*
invĭdĭa, ae, *f.* *envy, ill-will.*
splendor, ōris, *m.* *brightness.*
tўrannus, i, *m.* *a despot, tyrant.*

Phrase :—

aequo ănĭmo ferre, *to bear with resignation.*

Vocabulary 43.

cŏmĭtor, ātus, 1. *I accompany.*
immŏlo, āvi, ātum, *I sacrifice.*
  1.
indulgĕo, dulsi, *I indulge.*
  dultum, 2. (with
  dat.)
lūdo, lūsi, lūsum, *I play.*
  3.
mĕtŭo, ŭi, —, ĕre, *I fear.*
  3.
ōro, āvi, ātum, 1. *I entreat, pray.*
salto, āvi, ātum, 1. *I dance.*
sĕdĕo, sēdi, ses- *I sit.*
  sum, sĕdēre, 2.
vĭdĕor, vīsus, vĭ- *I seem, appear.*
  dēri, 2.

Ăpollo, ĭnis, *m.* *Apollo.*
hostĭa, ae, *f.*   *a victim.*
nōbĭlis, e,   *distinguished,*
            noble.
Pўthăgŏras, ae, *m. Pythagoras, a*
          famous Greek
          philosopher.

Vocabulary 44.

sĕro, sēvi, sătum, *I plant, sow.*
  sĕrĕre, 3.

aerumna, ae, *f.* *trouble, afflic-*
            tion.
frūges, um, *f. pl. fruits, a crop.*
ĭnops, ŏpis,   *destitute.*
ŏnus, ĕris, *n.* *a load, burden.*
pătĭentĕr, *adv.* *patiently.*
paupertas, ātis, *f. poverty.*
prūdentĭa, ae, *f.* *knowledge, pru-*
           dence.

Phrase :—

auxĭlĭum ferre, *to render assist-ance.*

Vocabulary 45.

occīdo, cīdi, cīsum, *I kill, slay.*
  cīdĕre, 3.
stătuo, ŭi, ūtum,   *I fix, determine.*
  ŭĕre, 3.

———

atrox, ōcis,   *stern, sangui-*
                    nary, cruel.
fămēs, is, *f.*   *hunger.*
hĭlăris, e,   *cheerful.*
ignāvē, *adv.*   *indolently.*
ōrācŭlum, i, *n.*   *an oracle.*
sĭlentĭum, i, *n.* *silence.*
suprēmus, a, um,   *highest, last.*
unquam, *adv.*   *atany time, ever.*

Vocabulary 46.

adjŭvo, jūvi, jū- *I assist.*
  tum, jŭvăre, 1.
nĕquĕo, quīvi &   *I am unable,*
  ĭi, ĭtum, nĕquīre, *cannot.*
  (like eo,) 4.

———

cāsus, ūs, *m.*   *chance, accident.*
infectus, a, um,   *undone.*
grăvis, e,   *heavy, severe.*
noxĭus, a, um,   *guilty.*
patĭentĭa, ae, *f.* *patience.*
sŏcĭus, i, *m.*   *a partner, ally,*
                    companion.
Thĕmistocles, is,   *Themistocles, a*
  m.   *famous Athe-*
                    nian.

Vocabulary 47.

addisco, addĭdĭci, *I learn in ad-*
  —, discĕre, 3.   *dition.*
bĭbo, bĭbi, —, bĭ- *I drink.*
  bĕre, 3.
conservo, āvi,   *I preserve,*
  ātum, 1.   *maintain.*
curro, cŭcurri, cur- *I run.*
  sum, 3.
interfĭcĭo, fēci,   *I put to death,*
  fectum, 3.   *kill.*

———

ălĭquĭs (quī), quă, *some one, some-*
  quĭd (quŏd), *pron.* *thing.*
multum, *adv.*   *much, greatly.*

nāvālis, e,   *naval.*
Nīlus, i, *m.*   *the river Nile.*
nonnullus, a, um   *some.*
  (usu. *pl.*)
quŏtīdĭē, *adv.*   *every day.*
tam, *adv.*   *so, to such a de-*
                    [*gree.*

Phrase :—

in lēgem jūrāre, *to swear to a*
law.

Vocabulary 48.

dēplōro, āvi, ātum, *I lament over,*
  1.   *deplore.*
īrascor, īrātus, 3, *I am angry.*
  v. dep. (with *dat.*)
tăcĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. *I am silent.*
trĭbŭo, ŭi, ūtum, 3. *I give, ascribe.*

———

Arĭŏvistus, i, *m.* *Ariovistus, a*
                    German king.
fortĕ, *adv.*   *by chance.*
infāmĭa, ae, *f.*   *infamy.*
mĭnĭmē, *adv.*   *in the least de-*
                    gree, not at all.
nĕc, nĕquĕ, *conj.* *neither, nor.*
stultĭtĭa, ae, *f.* *folly.*

Vocabulary 49.

cunctus, a, um,   *all, all together.*
dissĭmĭlis, e,   *unlike.*
fĕrox, ōcis,   *warlike, spirited.*
ignōrātĭo, ōnis, *f.* *ignorance.*
infĕrĭor, ĭus, *comp.* *lower, inferior.*
  adj. (see p. 25).
mălum, i, *n.*   *an evil.*
perfectus, a, um,   *finished, perfect.*
Phīdĭas, ae, *m.*   *Phidias, a fa-*
                    mous   Athe-
                    nian sculptor.
praestăbĭlis, e,   *excellent.*
proxĭmus, a, um,   *next, preceding.*
scĭentĭa, ae, *f.* *knowledge.*
sĕd, *conj.*   *but.*
sĭmĭlis, e,   *like.*
sĭmŭlācrum, i, *n.* *an image, statue.*
vīlis, e,   *cheap, common.*

Vocabulary 50.

cognosco, nōvi, nĭ- *I learn, ascer-*
  tum, noscĕre, 3. *tain.*
comprĕhendo, di,   *I seize.*
  sum, 3.

conficĭo, fēci, fec- *I finish, accom-*
tum, fĭcĕre, 3. *plish.*
conscendo, di, *I mount, go on*
sum, 3. *board (ship).*
contendo, di, tum, *I strain, hasten.*
3.
convŏco, āvi, *I call together.*
ātum, 1.
effloresco, florŭi, *to blossom forth,*
florescĕre, 3. *flourish.*
expōno, pŏsŭi, pŏ- *I put forth,*
sĭtum, 3. *disembark*
• *(troops).*
intŭmesco, tŭmŭi, *I swell.*
tŭmescĕre, 3. •
lābor, lapsus, lābi, *I glide, pass*
3, *v. dep.* *away, fall.*
ŏrĭor, ortus, ŏrīri, ⎫
4, *v. dep.* : see ⎬ *I rise.*
p. 146. ⎭
perlĕgo, lēgi, lec- *I read through.*
tum, 3.
perrumpo, rūpi, *I burst through.*
ruptum, 3.
praemitto, mīsi, *I send on before.*
missum, 3.
rĕcĭto, āvi, ātum, 1. *I read aloud.*
rĕcŭpĕro, āvi, *I recover, get*
ātum, 1. *back.*
regnŏ, āvi, ātum, 1. *I reign, am king.*
sentĭo, si, sum, 4. *I feel, perceive.*
subsĕquor, sĕcū- *I follow up.*
tus, 3, *v. dep.*
suscĭpĭo, cēpi, cep- *I undertake.*
tum, cĭpĕre, 3.
vexo, āvi, atum, 1. *I vex, harass.*

———

aetas, ātis, *f.* *age, time of*
life.
Arbēla, ōrum, *n. pl. Arbela, a town*
in Assyria.
Cassivellaunus, i, *Cassivellaunus,*
m. *a British chief.*
dēlectus, ūs, *m.* *a levy.*
hĭberna, ōrum, *n.* *winter-quarters.*
pl.
infirmus, a, um, *infirm, feeble.*
Pīsistrătus, i, *m.* *Pisistratus,*
despot of
Athens.
sĕnātus, ūs, *m.* *the senate.*
stătim, *adv.* *immediately.*

dēlectum hăbēre, *to hold a levy.*
maxĭma ĭtĭnĕra, *forced marches.*
nāvem (nāves) conscendĕre, *to*
embark.

Vocabulary 51.

exstrŭo, struxi, *I heap up, build,*
structum, 3. *raise.*
obsĭdĕo, sēdi, ses- *I blockade, lay*
sum, 2. *siege to.*
pōno, pŏsui, pŭsĭ- *I place.*
tum, 3.

———

Ăthēnae, ārum, *Athens.*
pl. f.
bestĭŏla, ae, *f.* *a small animal,*
insect.
campus, i, *m.* *a plain.*
dŏmĭnātus, ūs, *m.* *rule, sovereignty.*
hōra, ae, *f.* *an hour.*
Hanno, ōnis, *m.* *Hanno, a Car-*
thaginian.
Mărăthōn, ōnis, *Marathon, a*
f. *town & plain*
in Attica.
nātus, a, um, *part.* *born, aged* (so
and *adj.* *many years*).
passus, ūs, *m.* *a pace* (about
• *five feet*).
Plăto, ōnis, *m.* *Plato, a famous*
Greek philo-
sopher.
Săguntīni, ōrum, *Saguntines, the*
pl. m. *people of Sa-*
guntum.

———

Phrases :—
ē vīta excēdĕre, *to die.*
castra pōnĕre, *to pitch a camp.*
mūrum, aggĕrem dūcĕre, *to carry*
a wall or mound along, i.e. con-
struct.
mille passūs or mille passŭum, *a*
thousand paces ; a (Roman) mile.

Vocabulary 52.

cēdo, cessi, ces- *I yield, retire.*
sum, 3.
confĕro, tŭli, col- *I bring together,*
lātum, conferre, *betake.*
3, *v. irr.*
oppōno, pŏsŭi, *I set against,*
pŏsĭtum, 3. *oppose.*

pervĕnĭo, vēni,   *I arrive at.*
ventum, 4.

pĕto, īvi & ĭi,   *I seek; make for.*
ĭtum, pĕtĕre, 3.

rĕverto, ti, sum, ⎫
rĕvertor, versus, ⎬ 3.   *I turn back, re-*
v. dep.   ⎭   *turn.*

Alcĭbĭădes, is, *m.*   *Alcibiades, an*
                    Athenian.

Aeschĭnes, is, *m.*   *Aeschines, an*
                    Athenian
                    orator.

Cŭrĭus, i, *m.*   *Curius, a Roman*
                 general.

Cănŭsĭum, i, *n.*   *Canusium, a*
                 town in Apu-
                 lia.

Căpŭa, ae, *f.*   *Capua, chief city*
               of Campania.

Crēta, ae, *f.*   *Crete, an island*
              of Greece.

exĭlĭum (exsil-),   *banishment,*
i, *n.*   *exile.*

ĭbi, *adv.*   *there.*

Lăcĕdaemōn, ŏnis, *Lacedaemon* or
f.   *Sparta.*

Lĕōnĭdas, ae, *m.*   *Leonidas, a king*
                  of Sparta.

Lūcĕrĭa, ae, *f.*   *Luceria, a town*
              in Apulia.

Lūcĭus, i (L.), *m.*   *Lucius, a Roman*
                  forename.

mandātum, i, *n.*   *a charge, commis-*
                 sion.

perpĕtŭus, a, um, *continual.*

Rhŏdos (-us), i, *f. Rhodes.*

rūs, rūris, *n.*   *the country.*

Sparta, ae, *f.*   *Sparta.*

Vĕnŭsĭa, ae, *f.*   *Venusia, a town*
              in Italy.

Phrase :—

exĭlium ăgĕre, *to live in exile.*

Vocabulary 53.

constĭtŭo, ŭi,   *I settle, de-*
ūtum, 3.   *termine.*

consūmo, sumpsi, *I consume,*
sumptum, 3.   *waste away.*

expello, pŭli, pul- *I drive out.*
sum, 3.

hĭĕmo, āvi, ātum, 1. *I winter.*

jăcĕo, ŭi, ĭtum,   *I lie.*
jăcēre, 2.

———

Ăpollōnĭa, ae, *f.*   *Apollonia, a*
                  town in Illy-
                  ria.

Ăristīdes, is, *m.*   *Aristides, a noble*
                  Athenian.

Arpīnum, i, *n.*   *Arpinum, a town*
                in Latium.

Băbўlōn, ōnis, *f.*   *Babylon, a city*
                  of Assyria.

Cannae, ārum, *f.*   *Cannae, a vil-*
pl.   *lage in Apulia.*

Cŏnōn, ōnis, *m.*   *Conon, an Athen-*
                  ian general.

Cūmae, ārum, *f. pl. Cumae, a city in*
                  Campania.

Cyprus (-os), i, *f. Cyprus, an is-*
                  land off Cili-
                  cia.

Delphi, ōrum, *m.*   *Delphi, a city in*
pl.   *Greece.*

Dĭŏnўsĭus, i, *m.*   *Dionysius, ty-*
                  rant of Syra-
                  cuse.

Dyrrăchium, i, *n.*   *Dyrrachium, a*
                  town in Illy-
                  ria.

Fabrĭcĭus, i, *m.*   *Fabricius, a no-*
                  ble Roman.

Hŏrātius, i, *m.*   *Horace, a Ro-*
                  man poet.

Lesbos (-us), i, *f. Lesbos, an is-*
                  land off Asia
                  Minor.

Mărĭus, i, *m.*   *Marius, a Ro-*
               man general.

quālis, e, *pron.*   *of what sort,*
adj.   *(such) as.*

Sўrăcūsae, ārum, *Syracuse.*
f. pl.

tālis, e, *pron. adj. of that sort,*
                  such.

Tīmŏthĕus, i, *m.*   *Timotheus, a fa-*
                  mous Athe-
                  nian.

Phrase :—

morbo consūmi, *to be carried*
off by illness, to die a natural
death.

Vocabulary 54.

advĕnĭo, vēni, ven- *I arrive.*
  tum, 4.
ănĭmadverto, ti,   *I observe.*
  sum, 3.
confŭgĭo, fūgi, —, *I flee to.*
  fŭgĕre, 3.
constat, stābat,   *it is evident, it*
  stāre, 1, *v. im-*   *is agreed, it is*
  pers.   *certain.*
contĭnĕo, ŭi, ten- *I hold together.*
  tum, tĭnēre, 2.
nĕgo, āvi, ātum, · *I deny.*
  1.
părĭo, pĕpĕri, par- *I bring forth.*
  tum, părĕre, 3.
prōdo, dĭdi, dĭtum, *I hand down,*
  3.   *betray.*
pŭto, āvi, ātum, 1. *I think.*
trādo, dĭdi, dĭtum, *I hand down,*
  3.   *deliver.*
vĭdĕo, vīdi, vīsum, *I see.*
  vĭdēre, 2.

Phrase :—

trādĭtur, trādĭtum (prōdĭtum)
est, *it is handed down, there is a
tradition.*

caecŭs, a, um,   *blind.*
causā (*abl.*),   *for the sake of.*
crēdĭbĭlis, e,   *credible.*
Dēlŏs (-us), i, *f.* *Delos, an island*
              of Greece.
Dĭāna, ae, *f.*   *Diana, a god-*
              dess.
flōrens, entis,   *flourishing.*
Hŏmērus, i, *m.*   *Homer.*
imprūdentĭa, ae, *ignorance, im-*
  f.   *prudence.*
Lătōna, ae, *f.*   *Latona, mother*
              of Apollo and
              Diana.
mănĭfestus, a, um, *evident, mani-*
              fest.
nĭsĭ, *conj.*   *unless, except.*
quondam, *adv.*   *sometime, for-*
              merly, once.
stella, ae, *f.*   *a star.*
Thăles, is and   *Thales, a phi-*
  ētis, *m.*   *losopher.*
Trōjānus, a, um, *Trojan, of Troy.*
vērīsĭmĭlis, e,   *likely, probable.*

Vocabulary 55.

consentĭo, sensi, *I agree.*
  sensum, 4.
crēdo, dĭdi, dĭtum, *I believe.*
  3. (with *dat.*)
dīrĭpio, rĭpŭi, rep- *I plunder, pil-*
  tum, rĭpĕre, 3.   *lage.*
intellĭgo, lexi, lec- *I understand,*
  tum, lĭgĕre, 3.   *perceive.*
respondĕo, di, sum, *I answer.*
  dēre, 2.

bĕnĕvŏlus, a, um *kind, benevolent.*
  (see p. 25).
bŏnum, i, *n.*   *a good, a bless-*
              ing.
dīvīnus, a, um,   *of the gods,*
              divine.
ēlŏquens, tis,   *eloquent.*
ignĕus, a, um,   *fiery, made of*
              fire.
Lucrētĭus, i, *m.* *Lucretius, a Ro-*
              man poet.
mălĕvŏlus, a, um *unkind, malevo-*
  · (see p. 25).   *lent.*
mendax, ācis,   *lying, false :* as
             subst., *a liar.*
prīmārĭus, a, um, *first-rate, emi-*
              nent.
stultus, a, um,   *foolish.*
sŭpĕrus, a, um   *upper.*
  (see p. 25).
turpĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.* *disgrace.*

Vocabulary 56.

abjĭcĭo, jēci, jec- *I cast away.*
  tum, jĭcĕre, 3.
antĕpōno, pŏsŭi, *I prefer.*
  pŏsĭtum, 3.
conjĭcĭo, jēci, jec- *I fling or throw*
  tum, 3.   *(together).*
ēvĕnĭo, vēni, ven- *I happen.*
  tum, 4.
nŭmĕro, āvi, ātum, *I count.*
  1.
quaero, quaesīvi, *I seek, enquire.*
  sītum, quaerĕre,
  3.
rŏgo, āvi, ātum, 1. *I ask.*
spĕcŭlor, ātus, 1. *I spy out.*
vīso, vīsi, vīsum, *I go to see, visit.*
  vīsĕre, 3.

Blaesus, i, *m.*   *Blaesus, a Ro-*
     man name.
Chaerĕphōn, ontis, *Chaerephon, a*
   m.   *disciple of So-*
     crates.
Croesus, i, *m.*   *Croesus, a king*
     of Lydia.
fēlīcǐtĕr, *adv.*   *luckily.*
incertus, a, um,   *uncertain.*
infāmis, e,   *infamous.*
Laeca, ae, *m.*   *Laeca, a Ro-*
     man.
phǐlŏsŏphus, i, *m.* *a philosopher.*
plānē, *adv.*   *altogether.*
quaestǐo, ōnis, *f.* *a question.*
quantus, a, um,   *how great.*
quārē, *adv.*   *why, on what*
     account.
quŏt, *indec. adj.* *how many.*
saepĕnŭmĕrō, *adv. oftentimes.*
sub-diffǐcǐlis, e,   *somewhat diffi-*
     cult.
tēlum, i, *n.*   *a dart, weapon,*
     missile.
ŭbi, *adv.*   *where.*
Xĕnŏphōn, ontis, *Xenophon, an*
   m.   *Athenian.*

Vocabulary 57.

accǐdo, ǐdi, —, 3. *to happen.*
cerno, [crēvi, crē- *I see, discern.*
   tum], 3.
cŏhortor, ātus, 1. *I encourage.*
confīdo, fīsus   I trust.
   sum, fīdĕre, 3.
dēterreo, ŭi, ǐtum, *I frighten, de-*
   2.   *ter.*
diffīdo, fīsus sum, I distrust.
   fīdĕre, 3.
dīmitto, mīsi, mis- *I let go, dis-*
   sum, 3.   *miss.*
ēnarro, āvi, ātum, *I relate.*
   1.
ēnītor, nīsus and *I strive hard.*
   nixus, nīti, 3.
exclāmo, āvi,   *I cry out.*
   ātum, 1.
intrŏĕo, īvi & ǐi, *I enter.*
   ǐtum, īre, 4,
   irr.
nītor, nīsus &   *I strive.*
   nixus, nīti, 3.

*obsto, stǐti, stā- *I oppose, pre-*
   tum, stāre, 1.   *vent.*
opprǐmo, pressi, *I press upon,*
   pressum, prǐ-   *overwhelm,*
   mĕre, 3.   *crush.*
persuādĕo, suāsi, I persuade.
   suāsum, 2.
praevĕnio, vēni, *I anticipate.*
   ventum, 4.
prĕmo, pressi,   *I press.*
   pressum, 3.
prŏhǐbĕo, ŭi, ǐtum, *I keep off, pre-*
   2 (foll. by *inf.*   *vent.*
   or *conj.*)
rĕcūso, āvi, ātum, *I object, refuse.*
   1.
spēro, āvi, ātum, 1. *I hope.*
sto, stĕti, stătum, *I stand.*
   stāre, 1.
*suādeo, suāsi, *I advise.*
   suāsum, 2.
tĕneo, ŭi, tentum, *I hold, retain,*
   2.   *remember.*
transdūco (trā- *I lead across.*
   dūco), duxi,
   ductum, 3.
ventǐto, āvi, ātum, *I come fre-*
   1.   *quently.*

     * With Dative.

Bǐbŭlus, i, *m.*   *Bibulus, a Ro-*
     man.
fŏrum, i, *n.*   *market-place,*
     forum.
impĕrītus, a, um *unskilful.*
   (with *gen.*)
impransus, a, um, *unbreakfasted.*
infirmǐtas, ātis, *f. weakness.*
latro, ōnis, *m.*   *a robber.*
lūdus, i, *m.*   *play, game;*
     school.
magnŏpĕrĕ, *adv.* *greatly, earn-*
     estly.
mīrus, a, um,   *wonderful.*
mŏdus, i, *m.*   *a measure, man-*
     ner, way.
moenǐa, ǐum, *n. pl. fortifications.*
Nervǐi, ōrum,   *the Nervii, a*
   m. pl.   *Gallic tribe.*
prae-altus, a, um, *very high, very*
     deep.
Satrǐus, i, *m.*   *Satrius, a Ro-*
     man.

signum, i, *n.*   *a sign, signal.*
Trĕbōnĭus, i, *m.*   *Trebonius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

Phrases :—

sĕquĭtur (with *acc.* and *inf.* or *ut* and *subj.*), *it follows.*

făcĕrĕ nōn possum quīn, *I cannot but :* foll. by *subj.*

per me (te) stĕtit (quōmĭnus), *it was owing to me* or *you (that something did not happen)* : foll. by *subj.*

mĭnĭmum ăbest quīn sim, *very little is wanting that I should be ; I am very near being.*

Vocabulary 58.

ăquor, ātus, 1.   *to fetch water (milit. term).*
bello, āvi, ātum, 1. *I wage war.*
consŭlo, sŭlŭi, sul-*I consult.*
    tum, 3.
convĕnĭo, vēni,   *to assemble.*
    ventum, 4.
gustŏ, āvi, ātum, 1. *I taste.*
pābŭlor, ātus, 1.   *to forage (milit. term).*
postŭlo, āvi, ātum, *I demand.*
    1.
progrĕdĭor, gres- *I advance.*
    sus, grĕdi, 3.

Aedŭi, ōrum, *m.*   *the Aedui, a Gallic tribe.*
    pl.
Ăgēsĭlāus, i, *m.*   *Agesilaus, a king of Sparta.*
Divitĭăcus, i, *m.*   *Divitiacus, a Gaul.*
Făbĭus, i, *m.*   *Fabius, a Roman.*
Lăcĕdaemŏnĭi,   *the Lacedaemonians* or *Spartans.*
    ōrum, *m. pl.*
longĭus, *adv.*   *farther, too far.*
    (*comp.*)
lūdi, ōrum, *m. pl. games (public).*
Maxĭmus, i, *m.*   *Maximus (greatest), surname of Fabius.*

nĕfās, *n. indec.*   *wickedness, impiety, an impious thing.*
ŏpŭs, *n. indec.*   *need, necessity.*
ōrātor, ōris, *m.*   *envoy, orator.*
pābŭlum, i, *n.*   *fodder for cattle.*
publĭcus, a, um,   *public.*
Vēientes, um, *m.*   *the people of Veii, near Rome.*
    pl.
quisnam, quae- *who, what ?*
    nam, etc. (like quis)

Phrase :—

ŏpŭs est, *there is need of* (with *abl.*).

Vocabulary 59.

ăcŭo, ŭi, ūtum, 3. *I sharpen.*
ălo, ŭi, ĭtum &   *I nourish.*
    altum, 3.
ardĕo, arsi, arsum, *I am on fire.*
    ardēre, 2.
cōgĭto, āvi, ātum, *I think, meditate.*
    1.
collŏquor, cūtus, 3. *I converse.*
compăro, āvi, ātum, *I get together, procure.*
    1.
ĕdo, ēdi, ēsum,   *I eat.*
    ĕdĕre & esse,
    3, *irr.* (p. 85).
vēnor, ātus, 1.   *I hunt.*

---

bĕātē, *adv.*   *happily.*
grātĭa, ae, *f.*   *favour.*
grātĭā, *abl.*   *for the sake of* (foll. by *gen.*).
haud, *adv.*   *not.*
lībĕrē, *adv.*   *freely.*
mărīnus, a, um,   *of the sea.*
ŏpĕra, ae, *f.*   *pains, labour.*
plūs, ūris, *adj. n.*   *more.*
    in *sing.* ; in *pl.*
    plūres, -a
stŭdĭōsus, a, um *zealous, eager* (with *gen.*) *after.*

Phrases :—

ŏpĕram dăre, *to give one's whole energies to anything ; to devote oneself to it.*
intĕr bĭbendum, &c., *whilst drinking,* &c.

Vocabulary 60.

ădhĭbĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, *I employ.*
2.
observo, āvi, ātum, *I observe, re-*
1.   *spect.*
prōvĭdĕo, vīdi,   *I foresee, pro-*
vīsum, 2.   *vide.*

---

ardŭus, a, um,   *lofty,   steep,*
     difficult.

Phrase :—

ăgĕre aetātem, *to spend one's life.*

Vocabulary 61.

ingrĕdĭor, gressus, *I enter.*
grĕdi, 3.
interclūdo, si, sum, *I shut off, inter-*
3.   *cept.*
obtempĕro, āvi,   *I obey, comply*
ātum, 1 (with   *with.*
dat.)

---

commĕātus, ūs, *m. provisions, sup-*
     plies (milit.
     term).
commīlĭto, ōnis, *m. a fellow-soldier,*
     comrade.
istūc, *adv.*   *to-that-place*
     (*where you are*).
jūdĭcĭum, i, *n.*   *judgement.*
părātus, a, um,   *prepared, ready.*

quĭsque, quaeque, ⎫
   quodque &   ⎬ *every one, each.*
   quidque, *pron.* ⎭
quō, *adv.*   *whither.*

Phrase :—

fĭĕri de ălĭquo, *to become of one ;*
as, quid factum est de illo ? *what
has become of that man ?*

Vocabulary 62.

concēdo, cessi, ces- *I yield, retire.*
   sum, 3.
incendo, di, sum,   *I burn, set fire*
3.   *to.*
percĭpio, cēpi,   *I take in, per-*
   ceptum, cĭpĕre,   *ceive.*
3.

---

affectus, a, um,   *made, prepared.*
Brūtus, i, *m.*   *Brutus, a Ro-*
     man.
Cassĭus, i, *m.*   *Cassius, a Ro-*
     man.
Campānĭa, ae, *f.*   *Campania, a*
     part of Italy.
occŭpātus, a, um,   *engaged, busy.*
quăsĭ, *adv.*   *as if.*

Phrases :—

consĭlium ĭnīre, *to enter on, form,*
a design.
in spem vĕnīre,   *to conceive a*
hope.

LATIN INDEX.

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

abl.	= ablative.	*inter.*	= interrogative.
acc.	= accusative.	*irr.*	= irregular.
adj.	= adjective	*m.*	= masculine.
adv.	= adverb.	*n.*	= neuter.
c. or *com.*	= common gender.	*neg.*	= negative.
comp.	= comparative.	*p.*	= page.
conj.	= conjunction.	*part.*	= participle.
dat.	= dative.	*pl.*	= plural.
dep.	= deponent.	*prep.*	= preposition.
f.	= feminine.	*pron.*	= pronoun, pronominal.
freq.	= frequentative.	*rel.*	= relative.
gen.	= genitive.	*sing.*	= singular.
incep.	= inceptive.	*sup.*	= superlative.
indec.	= indeclinable.	*v.*	= verb.
indef.	= indefinite.	*voc.*	= vocabulary.

N.B.—Final a, e, er, al, ar, or, is, os, us, are to be understood as short unless actually marked long. Final i is long unless otherwise marked. Final o is usually long.

AB

A

ăb (ā, abs), *prep.* with *abl., from, by.*

ăb-ĕo, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, īre, 4, *v. irr., I go away.*

abjĭcĭo and ăbĭcĭo [ab, jăcio], jēci, jectum, ĭcĕre, 3, *I cast away.*

ab-sum, abfŭi (āfŭi), abesse, *v. irr., I am absent, away,* or *distant from.*

ab-sūmo, mpsi, mptum, mĕre, 3, *I consume, cut off, destroy.*

absurdus, a, um, *adj., absurd.*

ăb-ūtor, ūsus, ūti, 3, *v. dep.,* with *abl., I abuse.*

āc, atquĕ, *conj., and.*

accēdo [ad, cēdo], cessi, cessum, cēdĕre, 3, *I approach.*

accĭdo [ad, cădo], ĭdi, no *sup.*, accĭdĕre, 3, *v. n., to happen.*

accĭpĭo [ad, căpio], cēpi, ceptum, accĭpĕre, 3, *I receive.*

ADMIROR

ācer, cris, cre, *adj., keen, sharp.*

ăcĭēs, ēi, *f., line of battle.*

ăcŭo, ŭi, ūtum, ŭĕre, 3, *I sharpen.*

ăcus, ūs, *f., a needle.* See p. 120.

ăcūtus, a, um, *part.* and *adj., pointed, sharp.*

ăd, *prep.* with *acc., to, near, against; for (a purpose).*

ad-disco, addĭdĭci, no *sup.*, discĕre, 3, *I learn in addition, learn (something) new.*

ăd-ĕo, ĭi (rarely īvi), ĭtum, īre, 4, *v. irr., I go to.*

ădhĭbĕo [ad, hăbeo], ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2, *I employ.*

ăd-hortor, ātus, āri, 1. *v. dep., I urge, exhort.*

ădĭpiscor [ad, ăpiscor], ădeptus, ădĭpisci, 3, *v. dep., I acquire, attain to, obtain.*

ad-jŭvo, jūvi, jūtum, 1, *I assist.*

ad-mīror, ātus, āri, 1, *v. dep., I wonder at, I admire.*

ad-sum, fŭi, esse, *v. irr.*, with *dat., I am present, stand by, help.*

ădūlātĭo, ōnis, *f., flattery.*

ad-vĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, vĕnīre, 4, *to arrive.*

advento, āvi, ātum, 1, *v. freq., I am on the point of arriving.*

adventus, ūs, *m., arrival.*

adversus or adversum, *prep.* with *acc., towards, against.*

aedĭfĭcĭum, i, *n., a building.*

aedĭfĭco, āvi, ātum, 1, *I build.*

Aedŭi, ōrum, *m. pl., the Aedui, a Gallic tribe.*

aeger, gra, grum, *adj., sick.*

Aegyptus, i, *f., Egypt.*

aequus, a, um, *adj., level, even, just:* — animo, *with resignation.*

āēr, āĕris, *acc.* āĕrā, *m., the air.*

aerumna, ae, *f., trouble, affliction.*

Aeschīnēs, is, *m., Aeschines, an Athenian orator.*

aestās, ātis, *f., summer.*

aetās, ātis, *f., age, time of life.*

aeternus, a, um, *adj., eternal.*

affectus, a, um, *part., adapted, disposed.*

affĕro [ad, fĕro], attŭli, allātum, afferre, 3, *v. irr., I bring (to).*

afflīgo, flixi, flictum, flīgĕre, 3, *I cast down, ruin.*

Afrĭcānus, i, *m., Africanus, a surname of two Scipios.*

ăger, gri, *m., land, territory.*

Ăgēsĭlāus, i, *m., Agesilaus, a king of Sparta.*

agger, ĕris, *m., a mound.*

ăgo, ēgi, actum, ăgĕre, 3, *I lead, drive, carry on:* — aetatem, *to spend one's life;* — exilium, *to live in exile.*

agrĭcŏla, ae, *m., a husbandman.*

āla, ae, *f., a wing.*

albus, a, um, *adj., white.*

Alcĭbĭădēs, is, *m., Alcibiades, a celebrated Athenian.*

Ălexander, dri, *m., Alexander, a famous king of Macedonia.*

ălĭquandŏ, *adv., once (upon a time), sometimes.*

ălĭquis and -quī, ălĭquă, -quĭd and -quŏd, *pron., some one, something.*

ălĭus, a, ud, *irr. adj., one (of any number), one, another.* See pp. 23, 24.

allŏquor [ad, lŏquor], lŏcūtus, lŏqui, 3, *v. dep. I speak to.*

ălo, ălŭi, ălĭtum and altum, ălĕre, 3, *I nourish.*

Alpēs, ĭum, *f. pl., the Alps.*

alter, tĕra, tĕrum, *adj. (gen. sing.* ĭus, *dat.* ī), *one of two; the one, the other; second.* See p. 23.

altus, a, um, *adj., high, deep.*

ămābĭlis, e, *adj., lovely.*

ambŭlo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I walk.*

ămīcĭtĭa, ae, *f., friendship.*

ămīcus, i, *m., a friend.*

ămo, *I love:* p. 38.

ămor, ōris, *m., love.*

angustus, a, um, *adj., narrow.*

ănĭmadverto [ănĭmum adverto], ti, sum, tĕre, 3, *I observe:* with in and *acc., to punish.*

ănĭmal, ālis, *n., an animal.*

ănĭmus, i, *m., mind, the soul, courage, spirit, the feelings.*

annus, i, *m., a year.*

ante, *prep.* with *acc., before.*

antĕ-pōno, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, pō-nĕre, 3, *to prefer.*

Antĭŏchus, i, *m., Antiochus, the name of several kings of Syria.*

antīquus, a, um, *adj., ancient.*

Ăpollo, ĭnis, *m., Apollo.*

Ăpollōnĭa, ae, *f., Apollonia, a town in Illyria.*

ăpŭd, *prep.* with *acc., at, near, among, with.*

ăqua, ae, *f., water.*

ăquĭla, ae, *f., an eagle.*

ăquor, ātus, āri, 1, *v. dep., I fetch water* (milit. term).

Arbēla, ōrum, *n. pl., Arbela, a town in Assyria.*

arbor, ŏris, *f., a tree.*

arcus, ūs, *m., a bow:* v. **caelestis.**

ARDEO

ardĕo, arsi, arsum, ardēre, 2, *v. n.*, *I burn, am on fire; am eager.*

ardŭus, a, um, *adj.*, *lofty, steep, difficult.*

argentum, i, *n.*, *silver.*

Arĭovistus, i, *m.*, *Ariovistus, a German king.*

Arĭstīdēs, is, *m.*, *Aristides, an Athenian.*

arma, ōrum, *n. pl.*, *arms.*

Arpīnum, i, *n.*, *Arpinum, a town in Latium; birthplace of Cicero.*

ars, artis, *f.*, *art, handicraft.*

arx, arcis, *f.*, *a citadel.*

Asĭa, ae, *f.*, *Asia.*

asper, ĕra, ĕrum, *adj.*, *rough, rugged.*

aspernor, ātus, āri, 1, *v. dep.*, *I reject, scorn.*

āter, ātra, ātrum, *adj.*, *black, gloomy.*

Athēnae, ārum, *f. pl.*, *Athens.*

Athēnĭensis, e, *adj.*, *Athenian.* Plur. m. as subs., Athenienses, ium, *the Athenians.*

atquē, āc, *conj.*, *and.*

atrox, ōcis, *adj.*, *stern, sanguinary, cruel.*

attentē, *adv.*, *attentively.*

attentus, a, um, *adj.*, *attentive.*

auctōrĭtās, ātis, *f.*, *authority.*

au(c)tumnus, i, *m.*, *autumn.*

audactĕr, *adv.*, *boldly, daringly.*

audax, ācis, *adj.*, *bold.*

audĕo, ausus sum, audēre, 2, *v. semi-dep.*, *I dare, venture.*

audĭo, *I hear:* p. 44.

audītus, ūs, *m.*, *hearing.*

au-fĕro [ab, fĕro], abstŭli, ablātum, auferre, 3, *v. irr.*, *I carry away.*

Augustus, i, *m.*, *Augustus, emperor of Rome; the month August.*

aurĕus, a, um, *adj.*, *golden.*

auris, is, *f.*, *an ear.*

aurum, i, *n.*, *gold.*

autem, *conj.*, *but (placed after the first word of the clause to which it belongs).*

CAEDES

auxĭlĭum, i, *n.*, *help, aid, assistance;* in *pl.*, *auxiliary forces.*

ăvis, is, *f.*, *a bird.*

ăvus, i, *m.*, *a grandfather.*

B

Bābȳlōn, ōnis, *f.*, *Babylon, chief city of Assyria.*

bālaena, ae, *f.*, *a whale.*

bĕātē, *adv.*, *happily.*

bĕātus, a, um, *adj.*, *happy.*

bellĭcōsus, a, um, *adj.*, *warlike.*

bello, āvi, ātum, 1, *I wage war.*

bellum, i, *n.*, *war.*

bēlŭa, bellŭa, ae, *f.*, *a large beast.*

bĕnĕ, *adv.*, *well.* See p. 76.

bĕnĕvŏlus, a, um, *adj.*, *well-wishing, kind, benevolent.* See p. 25.

bĕnignē, *adv.*, *kindly.*

bĕnignus, a, um, *adj.*, *kind.*

bestĭa, ae, *f.*, *a beast.*

bestĭŏla, ae, *f.*, *a small animal, insect.*

bĭbo, bĭbi, no *sup.*, bĭbĕre, 3, *I drink.*

Bĭbŭlus, i, *m.*, *Bibulus, a Roman.*

Blaesus, i, *m.*, *Blaesus, a Roman.*

blandĭor, ītus, īri, 4, *v. dep.*, with *dat.*, *I flatter, conciliate.*

bŏna, ōrum, *n. pl.*, *goods, property.*

bŏnum, i, *n.*, *a good, a boon.*

bŏnus, a, um, *adj.*, *good.*

bōs, bŏvis, c., *ox, cow.* See p. 22.

brĕvis, e, *adj.*, *short.*

Brĭtannĭa, ae, *f.*, *Britain.*

Brĭtannus, i, *m.*, *a Briton.*

Brūtus, i, *m.*, *Brutus.*

C

cădo, cĕcĭdi, cāsum, cădĕre, 3, *I fall.*

caecus, a, um, *adj.*, *blind.*

caedēs, is, *f.*, *slaughter.*

caelestis, e, *adj.*, *belonging to the heavens, celestial:* — arcus, *m.*, *a rainbow.*

caelum, i, *n.*, *heaven.*

Caesar, ăris, *m.*, *Caesar.*

Cāïus (C.), i, *m.*, *Caius, a Roman forename.* (Also written Gaius.)

calcar, āris, *n.*, *a spur.*

călor, ōris, *m.*, *heat.*

Cămillus, i, *m.*, *Camillus, a Roman general.*

Campānïa, ae, *f.*, *Campania, a part of Italy.*

campus, i, *m.*, *a plain.*

cănis, is, *gen. pl.* cănum, *c.*, *a dog.*

Cannae, ārum, *f. pl.*, *Cannae, a village in Apulia.*

căno, cĕcĭni, cantum, cănĕre, 3, *I sing.*

canto, āvi, ātum, 1, *v. freq.*, *I sing.*

cantus, ūs, *m.*, *a song.*

Cănŭsïum, i, *n.*, *Canusium, a town in Apulia;* now *Canosa.*

căpio, *I take:* p. 67.

Căpŭa, ae, *f.*, *Capua, chief city of Campania.*

căpŭt, ĭtis, *n.*, *a head.*

carmĕn, ĭnis, *n.*, *a song.*

căro, carnis, *f.*, *flesh.*

Carthāgĭnïensis, e, *adj.*, *Carthaginian:* mostly *plur. m.* as *subst.*, *the Carthaginians.*

Carthāgo, ĭnis, *f.*, *Carthage, a city of Africa.*

cārus, a, um, *adj.*, *dear.*

cāsĕus, i, *m.*, *cheese.*

Cassïus, i, *m.*, *Cassius, a Roman.*

Cassïvellaunus, i, *m.*, *Cassivellaunus, a British chief.*

castĭgo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I chastise.*

castra, ōrum, *n. pl.*, *a camp.*

cāsus, ūs, *m.*, *chance, accident.*

Cătĭlīna, ae, *m.*, *Catiline, a notorious conspirator.*

Căto, ōnis, *m.*, *Cato;* the name of two famous Romans; *Cato the elder and Cato the younger.*

causa, ae, *f.*, *a cause.* In *abl.*,

for the sake of, on account of; foll. by *gen.*

cautus, a, um, *adj.*, *cautious, wary.*

cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdĕre, 3, *I yield, retire.*

cĕler, ĕris, ĕre, *adj.*, *swift.*

celsus, a, um, *adj.*, *lofty.*

cēno, āvi, ātum, āre, 1, *I sup, dine.* See p. 86.

centŭrïa, ae, *f.*, *a century:* see Ex. xix, 7.

cĕrăsum, i, *n.*, *a cherry.*

cĕrăsus, i, *f.*, *a cherry-tree.*

cerno, [crēvi, crētum], cernĕre, 3, *I see, discern.*

certus, a, um, *adj.*, *certain.*

cervus, i, *m.*, *a stag.*

cētĕri (caet.), cētĕrae, cētĕră, *adj. pl.* (*sing.* very rare), *the rest.*

Chaerĕphōn, ontis, *m.*, *Chaerephon, a disciple of Socrates.*

Cĭcĕro, ōnis, *m.*, *Cicero, a celebrated Roman orator.*

Cimbri, ōrum, *m. pl.*, *the Cimbrians, a formidable Celtic tribe.*

cingo, nxi, nctum, ngĕre, 3, *I surround.*

circā, circum, *prep.* with *acc.*, *around.*

circĭtĕr, *adv.* and *prep.* with *acc.*, *about.*

cis, citrā, *prep.* with *acc.*, *on this side of.*

cīvīlis, e, *adj.*, *belonging to a citizen, civic.*

cīvis, is, *com.*, *a citizen, fellow-citizen.*

cīvĭtās, tātis, *f.*, *a state, country; citizenship.*

clādēs, is, *f.*, *defeat, disaster.*

clam, *prep.* with *acc.*, rarely *abl.*, *secretly, without the knowledge of.*

clāmor, ōris, *m.*, *a shout.*

clārus, a, um, *adj.*, *bright, clear, renowned.*

classis, is, *f.*, *a fleet.*

coeno *v.* cēno.

cŏ-ĕo, īvi or ïi, ĭtum, īre, 4, *v. irr.*, *to join together.*

cŏercĕo [con, arcĕo, *I keep off*], ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2, *I restrain, curb.*

cōgĭto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I think, meditate.*

cognĭtĭo, ōnis, *f.*, *inquiry, knowledge.*

co-gnosco, nōvi, nĭtum, noscēre, 3, *I learn, ascertain.*

cŏhors, tis, *f.*, *a cohort (the tenth part of a legion).*

cŏ-hortor, ātus, āri, 1, *v. dep.*, *I encourage.*

collŏquor [con, lŏquor], cūtus, lŏqui, 3, *v. dep.*, *I converse (with).*

cŏlo, cŏlŭi, cultum, cŏlĕre, 3, *I cultivate, cherish.*

cŏlōnĭa, ae, *f.*, *a colony.*

cŏlor, ōris, *m.*, *colour.*

cŏlumba, ae, *f.*, *a dove.*

cŏmĕs, ĭtis, *com.*, *a companion (on a journey).*

cŏmĭtor, ātus, āri, *v. dep.*, *I accompany.*

commĕātus, ūs, *m.*, *provisions, supplies.*

commīlĭto, ōnis, *m.*, *fellow-soldier, comrade.*

committo [con, mitto], mīsi, missum, mittĕre, 3, *I send together, join (fight) battle.*

compăro [con, păro], āvi, ātum, 1, *I get together, procure.*

comprĕhendo [con, prĕhendo], di, sum, dĕre, 3, *I seize.*

con-cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdĕre, 3, *I yield, retire.*

con-fĕro, tŭli, collātum, conferre, 3, *v. irr.*, *I bring together, betake (myself).*

confĭcĭo [con, făcĭo], fēci, fectum, fĭcĕre, 3, *I finish, accomplish.*

con-fīdo, fīsus sum, fīdĕre, 3, usu. with *dat.* (esp. when the object is *a person*), *I trust.* See p. 86.

confĭtĕor [con, făteor], fessus, fĭtēri, 2, *v. dep.*, *I confess.*

con-fŭgĭo, fūgi, fŭgĕre, 3, *I flee to* (for refuge).

con-jĭcĭo and cōnĭcĭo [con, jăcĭo],

jēci, jectum, ĭcĕre, 3, *I fling* or *throw (together).*

conjūrātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, *a conspiracy.*

Cŏnōn, ōnis, *m.*, *Conon, an Athenian general.*

cōnor, ātus, āri, 1, *v. dep.*, *I attempt.*

conscendo [con, scando], di, sum, dĕre, 3, *I mount, go on board (ship), embark.*

conscĭentĭa, ae, *f.*, *conscience.*

con-sentĭo, nsi, nsum, ntīre, 4, *I agree.*

con-servo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I preserve, maintain.*

consĭlĭum, i, *n.*, *a plan, design, counsel: — inire, to form a design.*

con-stăt, stābăt, stāre, 1, *impers. v.*, *it is agreed, it is well-known.*

constĭtŭo [con, stătuo], ŭi, ūtum, ŭĕre, 3, *I settle, determine, resolve.*

consuētūdo, ĭnis, *f.*, *custom, habit.*

consŭl, ŭlis, *m.*, *a consul.*

consŭlātus, ūs, *m.*, *office of consul, consulate.*

consŭlo, lŭi, ltum, sŭlĕre, 3, *I consult:* with *dat.*, *to consider the interests of.*

con-sūmo, mpsi, mptum, mĕre, 3, *I consume, destroy.*

con-temno, tempsi, temptum, temnĕre, 3, *I despise.*

contemplor, ātus, āri, 1, *v. dep.*, *I observe carefully, contemplate.*

con-tendo, di, tum, dĕre, 3, *I strain; hasten.*

contentus, a, um, *adj.*, *contented.*

contĭnĕo [con, tĕneo], ŭi, tentum, tĭnēre, 2, *I hold together.*

contrā, *prep.* with *acc.*, *against, contrary to.*

con-trăho, traxi, tractum, trăhĕre, 3, *I draw together, collect.*

con-vĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, vĕnīre, 4, *to assemble, come together.*

con-vŏco, āvi, ātum, 1, *I call together.*

con-vŏlo, āvi, ātum, 1, *to fly* or *rush together.*

cōpĭa, ae, *f.*, *plenty ; in pl.*;
cōpĭae, ārum, *f.*, *forces.* See
p. 122.

cŏr, cordis, *n.*, *the heart.*

cōram, *prep.* with *abl.*, *in the presence of.*

Cŏrinthus, i, *f.*, *Corinth.*

Cornēlĭa, ae, *f.*, *Cornelia, a Roman matron.*

cornū, ūs, *n.*, *a horn; wing of an army.*

cŏrōna, ae, *f.*, *a wreath or crown.*

corpus, ŏris, *n.*, *a body.*

corrĭgo [con, rĕgo], rexi, rectum, rĭgĕre, 3, *I correct.*

crĕātor, ōris, *m.*, *a creator.*

crēdĭbĭlis, e, *adj.*, *credible.*

crēdo, dĭdi, dĭtum, crēdĕre, 3, with *dat.*, *I believe, trust.*

crĕo, crĕāvi, crĕātum, crĕāre, 1, *I create, make.*

Crēta, ae, *f.*, *Crete, an island of Greece; now Candia.*

Croesus, i, *m.*, *Croesus, a king of Lydia.*

crŭcĭātus, ūs, *m.*, *torture.*

crūdēlis, e, *adj.*, *cruel.*

crūs, crūris, *n.*, *a leg.*

culpa, ae, *f.*, *blame, fault.*

cum, *prep.* with *abl.*, *with.*

cum (less correctly quum), *adv.* and *conj.*, *when, since.*

Cūmae, ārum, *f. pl.*, *Cumae, an ancient city in Campania.*

cunctus, a, um, *adj.*, *all, all together.*

cŭpĭdĭtās, ātis, *f.*, *eager desire, passion.*

cŭpĭo, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, cŭpĕre, 3, *I desire.*

cŭr, *adv.*, *why ?*

Cŭrĭus, i, *m.*, *a Roman general.*

cūro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I take care, pains.*

curro, cŭcurri, cursum, currĕre, 3, *I run.*

currus, ūs, *m.*, *a chariot.*

cursus, ūs, *m.*, *running; course.*

custōdĭo, īvi, ītum, īre, 4, *I guard, keep guard.*

custōs, custōdis, *c.*, *a guardian, keeper, warder.*

Cyprus (-os), i, *f.*, *Cyprus, an island off Cilicia.*

Cyrus, i, *m.*, *Cyrus, king of Persia.*

D

Dārĭus, i, *m.*, *Darius, a king of Persia.*

dē, *prep.* with *abl.*, *down from, from, concerning.*

dĕa, ae, *f.*, *a goddess.* See p. 115.

dēbĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2, *I owe, I ought.*

dēbĭlis, c, *adj.*, *disabled, feeble.*

dĕcem, *indecl. num. adj.*, *ten.*

dĕcĕt, dĕcŭit, dĕcēre, 2, *v. impers.* with *acc.*, *it is seemly, becoming.*

dēcĭpĭo [dē, căpio], cēpi, ceptum, cĭpĕre, 3, *I deceive.*

dĕcus, ŏris, *n.*, *an ornament.*

dē-dĕcĕt, dĕcŭit, dĕcēre, 2, *v. impers.*, with *acc.*, *it is unseemly, unbecoming.*

deērunt, *fut.* of dē-sum.

dē-fendo, di, sum, dĕre, 3, *I defend.*

dē-flagro, āvi, ātum, 1, *v. n.*, *to be burnt down.*

dējĭcĭo and dēĭcĭo [dē, jăcio], jēci, jectum, ĭcĕre, 3, *I cast down.*

dēlecto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I delight, amuse.*

dēlectus, ūs, *m.*, *a levy.* See Voc. 50.

dēlĕo, ēvi, ētum, ēre, 2, *I blot out, destroy completely.*

Dēlos (-us), i, *f.*, *Delos, an island of Greece.*

Delphi, ōrum, *m. pl.*, *Delphi, a city of Greece.*

Dēmosthĕnēs, is, *m.*, *Demosthenes, a famous Athenian orator.*

dēmum, *adv.*, *indeed.* See Voc. 34.

dē-plōro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I lament over, deplore.*

dē-sĕro, ŭi, rtum, sĕrĕre, 3, *I abandon.*

dē-sum, fŭi, esse, with *dat.*, *I am wanting to ; fail in duty to.*

dē-tĕgo, texi, tectum, tĕgĕre, 3, *I discover.*

dē-terrĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2, *I frighten, deter.*

Dĕus, i, *m.*, *God.* See p. 22.

Dĭāna, ae, *f.*, *Diana, a goddess.*

dīco, dixi, dictum, dīcĕre, 3, *I say, speak.*

dĭēs, ēi, *m.* and *f.* in *sing.* ; plur. *m.* only, *day.* See p. 121.

diffĭcĭlis, e, *adj.*, *difficult.* See p. 25.

diffīdo [dis, fīdo], fīsus sum, fīdĕre, 3, *v. semi-dep.*, usu. with *dat.* (see **fīdo**), *I distrust.*

dīlĭgens, ntis, *adj.*, *diligent, careful.*

  dīlĭgenter, *adv.*, *carefully.*

  dīlĭgentĭa, ae, *f.*, *diligence.*

  dīlĭgentissĭmē, *sup. adv.*, *most carefully.*

dīlĭgo, lexi, lectum, lĭgĕre, 3, *I esteem, love.*

dīmĭco, āvi, ātum, 1, *I fight (a battle).*

dīmitto [dis, mitto], mīsi, missum, mittĕre, 3, *I let go, dismiss.*

Dĭŏnȳsĭus, i, *m.*, *Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse.*

dīrĭpĭo [dis, răpio], rĭpŭi, reptum, rĭpĕre, 3, *I plunder, pillage.*

discĭpŭlus, i, *m.*, *a pupil, scholar.*

disco, dĭdĭci, no *sup.*, dĭscĕre, 3, *I learn.*

displĭcĕo [dis, plăceo], ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2 (with *dat.*), *I displease.*

dis-sĭmĭlis, e, *adj.*, *unlike.* See p. 25.

dĭū, *adv.*, *a long time.*

dīvĕs, ĭtis, *adj.*, *rich.* See p. 25.

dīvĭdo, vīsi, vīsum, vĭdĕre, 3, *I divide, separate.*

dīvīnus, a, um, *adj.*, *belonging to the Gods, divine.*

Dīvĭtĭācus, i, *m.*, *Divitiacus, a Gaulish chief.*

dīvĭtĭae, ārum, *f. pl.*, *riches.*

do, dĕdi, dătum, dăre, 1, *I give.*

dŏcĕo, ŭi, ctum, dŏcēre, 2, *I teach.*

doctus, a, um, *adj.*, *learned.*

dŏlor, ōris, *m.*, *pain, grief.*

dŏmĭcĭlĭum, i, *n.*, *an abode.*

dŏmĭna, ae, *f.*, *a mistress.*

dŏmĭnātus, ūs, *m.*, *rule, sovereignty.*

dŏmĭnus, i, *m.*, *a lord, master.*

dŏmus, ūs, *f.*, *a house.* See p. 22.

dōnum, i, *n.*, *a gift.*

dormĭo, īvi, ītum, īre, 4, *I sleep.*

dŭbĭto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I doubt.*

dŭbĭus, a, um, *adj.*, *doubtful.*

dŭcenti, ae, a, *num. adj. pl.*, *two hundred.*

dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3, *I lead, make* (with ref. to *long* objects). See Voc. 51.

dulcis, e, *adj.*, *sweet, pleasant.*

dum, *adv.*, *while.*

dŭŏ, dŭae, dŭŏ, *num. adj. pl.*, *two.* See p. 27.

dūrus, a, um, *adj.*, *hard.*

dux, dŭcis, *com.*, *a leader, general.*

Dyrrăchĭum, i, *n.*, *Dyrrachium* (now *Durazzo*), *a town in Illyria.*

E

ē, **ex**, *prep.* with *abl.*, *out of, from, of.*

ĕdo, ēdi, ēsum, ĕdĕre & esse, 3, *v. irr.*, *I eat.* See p. 85.

ēdŭco, āvi, ātum, 1, *I educate.*

ē-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3, *I lead out.*

effĕro [ex, fĕro], extŭli, ēlātum, efferre, 3, *v. irr.*, *I carry out.*

efflōresco [ex, flōresco], flōrŭi, escĕre, 3, *I blossom forth, flourish.*

ĕgŏ, *I.* See p. 33.

ēgrĕgĭus, a, um, *adj.*, *excellent, eminent, distinguished.*

ējĭcĭo and **ēĭcĭo** [ex, jăcio], jēci, jectum, ĭcĕre, 3, *I cast forth.*

ējus, *v.* is, ea, id.

ēlĕgans, antis, *adj.*, *elegant, refined.*

ĕlĕphantus, i, *m.*, *an elephant.*

ēlŏquens, entis, *adj.*, *eloquent.*

ēmendo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I improve.*

ē-migro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I depart from.*

ĕmo, ēmi, emptum, ĕmĕre, 3, *I buy.*

ē-narro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I relate.*

ē-nītor, nīsus or nixus, nīti, 3, *v. dep.*, *I strive hard.*

Ĕpămīnondās, ae, *m.*, *Epaminondas, a famous Theban.*

ĕquĕs, ĭtis, *m.*, *a horse-soldier; pl.*, *cavalry.*

ĕquĭtātus, ūs, *m.*, *cavalry.*

ĕquus, i, *m.*, *a horse.*

ergā, *prep.* with *acc.*, *towards* (only of *the feelings*).

erro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I err, make a mistake.*

ērŭdĭo, īvi or ĭi, ītum, īre, 4, *I train up, educate.*

ērŭdītus, a, um, *part.* and *adj.*, *trained, educated.*

ĕt, *conj.*, *and* ; et . . . et, *both . . . and.*

ĕtĭam, *conj.*, *also, even.*

Euripīdēs, is, *m.*, *Euripides, an Athenian tragic poet.*

Eurōpa, ae, *f.*, *Europe.*

ē-vĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, vĕnīre, 4, *to happen.*

ex or ē, *prep.* with *abl.*, *out of, from, of.*

ex-cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdĕre, 3, *I go out, depart from.*

ex-clāmo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I cry out.*

ex-cōlo, cŏlŭi, cultum, cŏlĕre, 3, *I cultivate carefully, educate.*

exemplum, i, *n.*, *an example.*

ex-ĕo, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, īre, 4, *v. irr.*, *I go out.*

exercĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2, *I exercise.*

exercĭtus, ūs, *m.*, *an army.*

ex-hĭlăro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I cheer.*

exĭlĭum (exsil-), i, *n.*, *banishment, exile.*

ex-pello, pŭli, pulsum, pellĕre, 3, *I drive out.*

expĕrĭor, pertus, pĕrīri, 4, *v. dep.*, *I try, experience.*

ex-pōno, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, pōnĕre, 3, *I put forth, disembark (troops).*

ex-pugno, āvi, ātum, 1, *I take by storm.*

ex-strŭo, struxi, structum, strŭĕre, 3, *I heap or build up.*

extrā, *prep.* with *acc.*, *outside of.*

F

Făbĭus, i, *m.*, *a Roman.*

Fabrīcius, i, *m.*, *Fabricius, a Roman.*

făbŭla, ae, *f.*, *a fable, story.*

făcĭēs, ēi, *f.*, *figure, countenance.*

făcĭlĕ, *adv.*, *easily.*

făcĭlis, e, *adj.*, *easy.* See p. 25.

făcĭnus, ŏris, *n.*, *a bold act, daring deed, crime.*

făcĭo, fēci, factum, făcĕre, 3, *I make, act, do.*

fămēs, ĭs, *f.*, *hunger.*

fătĕor, fassus, fătēri, 2, *v. dep.*, *I confess.*

fēlīcĭtĕr, *adv.*, *luckily, successfully, happily.*

fēlix, īcis, *adj.*, *fortunate, successful, happy.*

fēmĭna, ae, *f.*, *a woman.*

fērē, *adv.*, *almost, commonly.*

fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, 3, *v. irr.*, *I bear, bring, endure.* See p. 81.

fĕrox, ōcis, *adj.*, *warlike, spirited.*

ferrum, i, *n.*, *iron, a sword.*

fīcus, i and ūs, *f.*, *a fig, fig-tree.*

fĭdēlis, e, *adj.*, *faithful.*

fĭdēs, ĕi, *f.*, *faith, fidelity.*

fīdo, fīsus sum, fīdere, 3, *semi-dep.* (usu. with *dat.*; esp. when the object is a person), *I trust.* See p. 86.

fīdus, a, um, *adj.*, *faithful.*

fīlĭa, ae, *f.*, *a daughter.* See p. 115.

FILIUS

fīlĭus, i, *m., a son.* See p. 5.
fingo, finxi, fictum, fingĕre, 3, *I mould, feign, invent.*
fīnĭo, īvi, ītum, īre, 4, *I limit, put an end to.*
fīnis, is, *m.* (rarely *f.*), *end, limit;* in pl., *territories.*
fīo, factus sum, fĭĕrī, *v. irr.* (serving as *pass.* to facĭo), *I become, am made.* See p. 85.
firmo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I strengthen, make strong.*
firmus, a, um, *adj., strong.*
flĕo, flēvi, flētum, flēre, 2, *I weep.*
flo, flāvi, flātum, flāre, 1, *I blow.*
flōrens, ntis, *part. adj., flourishing, prosperous.*
flōrĕo, ŭi, ēre, 2, *I bloom, flourish.*
flōs, ōris, *m., a flower.*
flūmen, ĭnis, *n., a current, river.*
flŭo, fluxi, xum, flŭĕre, 3, *I flow.*
flŭvĭus, i, *m., a river.*
fŏdĭo, fōdi, ssum, fŏdĕre, 3, *I dig.*
fons, ntis, *m., a fountain.*
fortĕ, *adv., by chance.*
fortĭs, e, *adj., brave, strong.*
fortĭtĕr, *adv., bravely.* Comp., fortius, *more bravely;* sup. fortissĭmē, *most* (or *very*) *bravely.*
fortūna, ae, *f., fortune.*
fŏrum, i, *n., market-place, forum.*
fossa, ae, *f., a ditch.*
frāter, tris (*gen. pl.* frātrum), *m., a brother.*
fraus, fraudis, *f., dishonesty.*
frīgus, ŏris, *n., cold.*
frons, ntis, *f., the forehead, brow.*
fructus, ūs, *m., fruit.*
frūges, um, *f. pl., fruits, a crop.*
fruor, frŭĭtus and fructus, frŭi, 3, *v. dep.,* with *abl., I enjoy.*
fŭgĭo, fūgi, fŭgĭtum, fŭgĕre, 3, *I flee, escape.*
fŭgo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I put to flight.*
fulgĕo, fulsi, fulgēre, 2, *I shine.*
fulgŭr, ŭris, *n., lightning.*
fulmĕn, ĭnis, *n., lightning, thunderbolt.*
fungor, functus, fungi, 3, *v. dep.,* with *abl., I discharge, perform.*

HABITO

fūnus, ŏris, *n., a funeral.*
fŭror, ōris, *m., madness.*
fŭtūrus, a, um, *fut. part.* of sum, *about to be, future.*

G

Galli, ōrum, *m. pl., the Gauls.*
Gallĭa, ae, *f., Gaul.*
gaudĕo, gāvīsus sum, gaudēre, 2, *semi-dep., I rejoice.* See p. 86.
gaudĭum, i, *n., joy.*
gĕner, ĕri, *m., a son-in-law.*
gĕnu, ūs, *n., a knee.*
gĕnus, ĕris, *n., a race, class.*
Germāni, ōrum, *m. pl., the Germans.*
gĕro, gessi, gestum, gĕrĕre, 3, *I carry on; achieve; wage* (*war*).
glădĭus, i, *m., a sword.*
glōrĭa, ae, *f., glory.*
gnāvĭtĕr, *adv., actively, vigorously, earnestly, diligently.*
Gracchus, i, *m., Gracchus, a Roman.*
grăcĭlis, e, *adj., thin.* See p. 25.
Graecĭa, ae, *f., Greece.*
Graecus, a, um, *adj., Grecian, Greek.* As *subs.,* Graeci, ōrum, *m. pl., the Greeks.*
grāmen, ĭnis, *n., grass.*
grandĭnat, āvit, āre, 1, *v. impers.,* it *hails.*
grātĭa, ae, *f., favour; gratitude.*
grātĭā, *abl. sing.* of preced., *for the sake of;* foll. by *gen.*
grātus, a, um, *adj., pleasing,* followed by *dat.*
grăvis, e, *adj., heavy, severe.*
grăvĭtĕr, *adv., heavily, severely, grievously.*
gusto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I taste.*

H

hăbĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2, *I have, hold.*
hăbĭto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I dwell.*

N 2

Hannĭbal, ălis, *m.*, *Hannibal, the great Carthaginian general.*

Hanno, ōnis, *m.*, *Hanno, a Carthaginian.*

Hasdrŭbal, ălis, *m.*, *Hasdrubal, the brother of Hannibal.*

hasta, ae, *f.*, *a spear.*

haud, *adv.*, *not.*

Hellespontus, i, *m.*, *the Hellespont* (now *the Dardanelles*).

Helvĕtĭa, ae, *f.*, *the country of the Helvetii.*

Helvĕtĭus, a, um, *adj.*, *Helvetian.* As *subs.*, Helvĕtii, *pl. m.*, *the Helvetii* (in Switzerland).

hĕrī, *adv.*, *yesterday.*

hīberna, ōrum, *n. pl.*, *winter quarters.* Strictly *n. pl.* of hībernus, with castra understood.

hībernus, a, um, *adj.*, *of winter, wintry.*

hĭĕmo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I winter, pass the winter.*

hĭems (hĭemps), hĭĕmis, *f.*, *winter.*

hĭlăris, e, *adj.*, *cheerful.*

Hōmērus, i, *m.*, *Homer, a Greek poet.*

hŏmo, ĭnis, *com.*, *a man, a human being.*

honor, ōris, *m.*, *an honour.*

hōra, ae, *f.*, *an hour.*

Hōrātĭus, i, *m.*, *Horace, a Roman poet.*

hortor, ātus, āri, 1, *v. dep.*, *I urge, exhort, encourage.*

hortus, i, *m.*, *a garden.*

hostĭa, ae, *f.*, *a victim.*

hostis, is, *com.*, *an enemy, public enemy.*

hūmānus, a, um, *adj.*, *human.*

hŭmĭlis, e, *adj.*, *low.* See p. 25.

hŭmus, i, *f.*, *the ground.* Loc. hŭmī, *on the ground.*

I

ĭbĭ, *adv.*, *there.*

ĭdem, ĕadem, ĭdem, *adj.*, *the same.* See p. 35.

ignāvē, *adv.*, *indolently.*

ignāvĭa, ae, *f.*, *cowardice, laziness, idleness, indolence.*

ignĕus, a, um, *adj.*, *made of fire.*

ignōrātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, *ignorance.*

ille, illă, illŭd, *demonstr. adj.* and *pron.*, *that: he, she, it :* p. 34.

il-luxĭt [in, lūceo], illūcescĕre, 3, *v. impers.*, *it became light.*

ĭmāgo, ĭnis, *f.*, *a likeness, portrait, image.*

ĭmĭtor, ātus, āri, 1, *v. dep.*, *I imitate.*

immŏlo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I sacrifice.*

immortālis [in, *neg.*, mortalis], e, *adj.*, *immortal.*

immortālĭtās, ātis, *f.*, *immortality.*

impĕrātor, ōris. *m.*, *a military commander (in chief), a general.*

impĕrītus [in, *neg.*, pĕrītus], a, um, *adj.*, *unskilful ;* with *gen.*

impĕrĭum, i, n., *command, empire.*

impĕro, āvi, ātum, 1, with *dat.*, *I command.*

impĕtus, ūs, *m.*, *attack, onset.*

impransus [in, *neg.*, pransus], *part. adj.*, *unbreakfasted.*

imprŏbus [in, *neg.*, prŏbus], a, um, *adj.*, *dishonest, wicked.*

imprūdentĭa, ae, *f.*, *ignorance, imprudence.*

ĭn, *prep.* with *acc.*, *into;* with *abl.*, *in, among.*

incendĭum, i, *n.*, *a fire, conflagration.*

incendo, di, sum, dĕre, 3, *I set fire to, burn.*

in-certus, a, um, *adj.*, *uncertain.*

incĭpĭo [in, căpĭo], cēpi, ceptum, cĭpĕre, 3, *I begin.*

incŏla, ae, *com.*, *an inhabitant.*

incūso, āvi, ātum, 1, *I accuse, find fault with.*

Indi, ōrum, *m. pl.*, *the Indians, people of India.*

in-doctus, a, um, *adj.*, *unlearned.*

indulgĕo, dulsi, dultum, dulgēre, 2, with *dat.*, *I indulge.*

industrĭus, a, um, *adj.*, *industrious, busy.*

ĭn-ĕo, ī̆vi and ĭi, ĭtum, īre, 4, *v. irr.*, *I go into, enter.* Of seasons, *to begin.* — consilium, *to form a plan.*

ĭners, tis, *adj.*, *helpless, idle.*

infāmĭa, ae, *f.*, *infamy.*

infāmis, e, *adj.*, *infamous.*

infectus [in, *neg.*, factus], a, um, *adj.*, *undone.*

infĕrĭŏr, ĭus, *comp.* of infĕrus, *adj.*, *lower, inferior.* See p. 25.

in-fĕro, intŭli, illātum, inferre, 3, *v. irr.*, *I carry into :* — bellum (foll. by *dat.*), *to make war on.*

in-fīnītus, a, um, *adj.*, *unbounded, infinite.*

infirmĭtas, ātis, *f.*, *weakness.*

in-firmus, a, um, *adj.*, *weak, feeble.*

infrā, *prep.* with *acc.*, *below.*

infringo [in, frango], frēgi, fractum, fringĕre, 3, *I break, impair.*

ingens, entis, *adj.*, *huge, immense.*

ingrĕdĭor [in, grădior], gressus, grĕdi, 3, *v. dep.*, *I enter.*

ĭnĭmīcĭtĭa, ae, *f.*, *enmity.*

ĭnĭmīcus [in, *neg.*, ămīcus], a, um, *adj.*, *unfriendly.* As *subs.*, inimicus, i, *m.*, *a personal enemy.*

ĭnĭtĭum, i, *n.*, *a beginning.*

injustē, *adv.*, *unjustly.*

in-justus, a, um, *adj.*, *unjust.*

innŭmĕrus, a, um, *adj.*, *innumerable.*

ĭnops, ŏpis, *adj.*, *destitute.*

insignis, e, *adj.*, *distinguished.*

instĭtŭo [in, stătuo], ŭi, ūtum, ŭĕre, 3, *I appoint, train.*

instrūmentum, i, *n.*, *stock in trade; an instrument.*

in-strŭo, xi, ctum, strŭĕre, 3, *I arrānge, draw up in order.*

insŭla, ae, *f.*, *an islånd.*

in-sum, fŭi, esse, *v. irr.*, with *dat.*, *I am in.*

intellĭgo [inter, lĕgo], lexi, lectum, lĭgĕre, 3, *I understand, perceive.*

intĕr, *prep.* with *acc.*, *between, among.*

interclūdo [inter, claudo], clūsi, clūsum, clūdĕre, 3, *I shut off, intercept.*

intĕr-ĕo, ĭi, ĭtum, īre, 4, *v. irr.*, *I perish.*

interfĭcĭo [inter, făcio], fēci, fectum, fĭcĕre, 3, *I put to death, kill.*

intĕrĭtus, ūs, *m.*, *destruction.*

inter-sum, fŭi, esse, *v. irr.* with *dat.*, *I am among, present at, take part in.*

intrā, *prep.* with *acc.*, *inside of, within.*

intro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I enter.*

intrŏ-ĕo, ī̆vi & ĭi, ĭtum, īre, 4, *v. irr.*, *I go into, enter.*

in-tŭĕor, ĭtus, ēri, 2, *v. dep.*, *I look upon or into.*

in-tŭmesco, tŭmŭi, tŭmescĕre, 3, *v. incep.*, *I swell.*

in-vĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, vĕnīre, 4, *I find, invent.*

invĭdĭa, ae, *f.*, *envy, ill-will.*

ipse, a, um, *self, actual, very,* p. 35.

īra, ae, *f.*, *anger.*

īrascor, īrātus, īrasci, 3, *v. dep.*, *I am angry.*

is, ĕă, ĭd, *that ; he, she, it* : p. 35.

iste, a, ud, *adj. pron.*, *that (near you), that of yours* : p. 34.

istūc, *adv.*, *to-that-place, thither (where you are).*

ĭtă, *adv.*, *in that way, thus, so.*

Ĭtălĭa, ae, *f.*, *Italy.*

ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris, *n.*, *a journey.*

J

jăcĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2, *I lie (down).*

jăcĭo, jēci, jactum, jăcĕre, 3, *I throw.*

jam, *adv.*, *now, already.*

jŭbĕo, ssi, ssum, jŭbēre, 2, *I order;* foll. by *acc.* and *inf.*

jūcundē, *adv.*, *delightfully, pleasantly.*

jūcundus, a, um, *adj.*, *pleasant.*

jūdex, ĭcis, *com.*, *a judge.*

jūdĭcĭum, i, *n., judgement.*

jūdĭco, āvi, ātum, 1, *I judge.*

jungo, nxi, nctum, ngĕre, 3, *I join.* Flūmen ponte —, *to throw a bridge over a river.*

Jūno, ōnis, *f., Juno, a goddess.*

Jūpĭter, Jŏvis, *m., Jupiter, the chief god of the Romans.* See p. 22.

jūro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I swear.* See p. 86, and Voc. 47.

jūs, jūris, *n., right, law.*

jusjūrandum, jūrisjūrandi, *n., an oath.* See p. 22.

justē, *adv., justly.*

justus, a, um, *adj., just.*

jŭvĕnis, is (*gen. pl.* jŭvĕnum), *com., a young man or woman.*

jŭventūs, ūtis, *f., youth;* also collect., *young people.*

juxtā, *prep.* with *acc., near, hard by, next to.*

L

Lăbĭēnus, i, *m., Labienus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

lăbor, ōris, *m., labour, hardship.*

lābor, lapsus, lābi, 3, *v. dep., I glide, pass away, fall.*

lac, lactis, *n., milk.*

Lăcĕdaemōn, ōnis, *f., Lacedaemon or Sparta.*

Lăcĕdaemŏnĭi, ōrum, *m. pl., the Spartans.*

lăcus, ūs, *m., a lake.*

Laeca, ae, *m., Laeca, a Roman.*

laetĭtĭa, ae, *f., joy, delight.*

laetus, a, um, *adj., joyful.*

lăpis, ĭdis, *m., a stone.*

lăpĭdĕus, a, um, *adj., of stone.*

lātē, *adv., widely, wide.*

Lătīnus, a, um, *adj., Latin.*

Lătōna, ae, *f., Latona, mother of Apollo and Diana.*

latro, ōnis, *m., a robber.*

lātus, a, um, *adj., wide, broad.*

lătus, ĕris, *n., side.*

laudo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I praise.*

laus, laudis, *f., praise.*

lēgātus, i, *m., ambassador, lieutenant.*

lĕgĭo, ōnis, *f., a legion.* See Ex. xix, 7.

lĕgo, lēgi, lectum, lĕgĕre, 3, *I gather, read.*

lĕo, ōnis, *m., a lion.*

Lĕōnĭdās, ae, *m., Leonidas, a king of Sparta.*

lĕpus, ŏris, *m., a hare.*

Lesbos [-us], i, *f., Lesbos, an island off Asia Minor.*

lĕvis, e, *adj., light.*

lēvis, e, *adj., smooth.*

lex, lēgis, *f., a law.*

lĭber, bri, *m., a book.*

lĭber, ĕra, ĕrum, *adj., free.*

lĭbĕrē, *adv., freely.*

lĭbĕri, ōrum, *m. pl., children.*

lĭbĕro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I free, deliver.*

lĭbertās, ātis, *f., freedom, liberty.*

lĭbet, lĭbŭit and lĭbĭtum est, lĭbēre, 2, *v. impers.,* with *dat., it pleases.*

Lĭbÿa, ae, *f., Africa.*

lĭcet, lĭcŭit and lĭcĭtum est, lĭcēre, 2, *v. impers.,* with *dat., it is lawful, allowed.*

lictor, ōris, *m., a lictor (attendant on a magistrate).*

lingua, ae, *f., tongue, language.*

lĭquet, lĭcŭit, lĭquēre, 2, *v. impers.,* with *dat., it is clear, evident.*

littĕra [lĭtĕra], ae, *f., a letter of the alphabet.*

littĕrae [lĭtĕrae], ārum, *f. pl., letters, learning;* also *an epistle, letter.*

lītus, ŏris, *n., a shore.*

Līvĭus, i, *m., Livy, a Roman historian.*

lŏcus, i, *m.;* pl. lŏcă, *n.,* and (rarely) lŏci, *m., a place.*

longē, *adv., far, far off.*

longinquĭtās, ātis, *f., length, distance.*

longinquus, a, um, *adj., long, distant.*

longĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f., length.*

longĭus, *adv., comp. of* longē, *farther, too far.*

longus, a, um, *adj., long.*

lŏquor, lŏcūtus, lŏqui, 3, *v. dep., I speak.*

Lūcĕrĭa, ae, *f., Luceria, a town in Apulia;* now Lucera.

lūcescit, [illuxit], lūcescĕre, 3, *v. impers., it becomes light; day breaks.*

Lūcĭus, i, *m., Lucius, a Roman forename.*

Lucrētĭus, i, *m., Lucretius, a Roman poet.*

lūdo, si, sum, lūdĕre, 3, *I play.*

lūdus, i, *m., play, game; school.* In *pl., public games.*

lūna, ae, *f., the moon.*

luscĭnĭa, ae, *f., a nightingale.*

lux, lūcis, *f., light.*

Lycurgus, i, *m., Lycurgus, a Spartan legislator.*

M

Măcĕdo, ŏnis, *m., a Macedonian.*

măgĭs, *comp. adv. (sup.* maxĭmē), *rather, in a higher degree.* See p. 76.

măgister, tri, *m., a master, teacher.*

măgistrātus, ūs, *m., a magistrate.*

magnĭfĭcus, a, um, *adj., magnificent.* See p. 25.

magnŏpĕrē, *adv., greatly, earnestly.* See p. 76.

magnus, a, um, *adj., great.* See p. 25.

mājor, us, *comp. adj., greater:* īn *pl. as subs.,*

mājōres, um, *m., ancestors.*

mălē, *adv. (comp.* pējus, *sup.* pessĭmē), *badly, ill.*

mălĕvŏlus, a, um, *adj., ill-wishing, malevolent, unkindly.* See p. 25.

mālo, mālūi, malle, *v. irr., I am more willing, I prefer, had rather;* usu. foll. by *inf.* See p. 78.

mālum, i, *n., an apple.*

mălum, i, *n., an evil.*

mālus, i, *f., an apple-tree.*

mălus, a, um, *adj., bad, wicked, evil.* See p. 25.

mandātum, i, *n., a charge, commission.*

mănĕo, nsi, nsum, mănēre, 2, *I remain.*

mănĭfestus, a, um, *adj., evident, manifest.*

mănĭpŭlus, i, *m., a maniple.* See Ex. XIX, 7.

mănus, ūs, *f., a hand.*

Mărăthōn, ōnis, *f., Marathon, a town and plain in Attica.*

măre, is, *n., the sea.*

margărīta, ae, *f., a pearl.*

mărīnus, a, um, *adj., of the sea.*

Mărĭus, i, *m., Marius, a Roman general.*

marmor, ŏris, *n., marble.*

māter, tris, *(gen. pl.* mātrum), *f., a mother.*

maxĭmē, *superl. adv., most, especially.* See p. 76.

maximus, *superl. of* magnus, *greatest.* See p. 25.

Maximus, i, *m., Maximus (greatest), a surname of Fabius.*

mĕdĭtor, ātus, āri, 1, *v. dep., I meditate on, practise, study.*

mĕlĭor, us, *comp. adj., better.* See pp. 19, 25.

membrāna, ae, *f., thin skin, membrane.*

mĕmor, ŏris, *adj., mindful;* with *gen.*

mĕmŏrābĭlis, e, *adj., memorable.*

mĕmŏrĭa, ae, *f., memory.*

Mĕnăpĭi, ōrum, *m. pl., Menapii, a tribe of Belgic Gaul.*

mendax, ācis, *adj., lying, false:* as *subs. m., a liar.*

mens, mentis, *f., the mind.*

mensa, ae, *f., a table.*

mensĭs, is, *m., a month.*

mentior, ītus, īri, 4, *v. dep., I tell a lie, deceive.*

mĕrĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2, *I deserve.*
More freq., mĕrĕor, ĭtus, ēri, 2,
v. dep. (in same sense).

messis, is, *f.*, *a crop, harvest.*

mĕtallum, i, *n.*, *a metal.*

mētĭor, mensus, mētīri, 4, *v. dep.*,
I measure.

mĕtŭo, ŭi, —, ŭĕre, 3, *I fear.*

mĕtus, ūs, *m.*, *fear.*

mĕus, a, um (*voc. sing. masc.* mi),
poss. adj., *my, mine.*

migro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I migrate,
depart from.*

mīlĕs, mīlĭtis, *c.*, *a soldier.*

millĕ, *num. adj. indec.*, *a thou-
sand;* also as *subs., indec.* in
sing.; *pl. n.* mīlĭa, (mill-), ĭum,
thousands.

Mĭnerva, ae, *f.*, *Minerva.*

mĭnĭmē, *adv.*, *in the least degree,
not at all.* See p. 76.

mĭnister, tri, *m.*, *a servant.*

mĭnor, ŭs (*comp. adj.* to parvus),
less.

mīror, ātus, āri, 1, *v. dep.*, *I
wonder at, admire.*

mīrus, a, um, *adj.*, *wonderful.*

mĭser, ĕra, ĕrum, *adj.*, *wretched.*

mĭsĕrĕor, ĭtus, mĭsĕrēri, 2, *v.
dep.*, with *gen.*, *I pity, have pity on.*

mĭsĕret, ŭit, mĭsĕrēre, 2, *v.
impers.*, with *acc.* and *gen.*, *it
excites pity.* See p. 87.

mītis, e, *adj.*, *mild.*

mitto, mīsi, missum, mittĕre, 3, *I
send.*

mŏdus, i, *m.*, *a measure, manner.*

moenĭa, ĭum, *n. pl.*, *fortifica-
tions.*

mŏlestus, a, um, *adj.*, *trouble-
some, offensive.*

mollĭo, īvi, ītum, īre, 4, *I soften,
assuage.*

mollis, e, *adj.*, *soft.*

mŏnĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2, *I advise,
warn.*

mons, tis, *m.*, *a mountain.*

mŏnŭmentum, i, *n.*, *a memorial,
monument.*

morbus, i, *m.*, *a disease.*

mŏrĭor, mortŭus, mŏri, 3, *v. dep.*,
I die: fut. part. mŏrĭtūrus.

mors, tis, *f.*, *death.*

mortālis, e, *adj.*, *mortal.*

mortŭus, a, um, *part.* and *adj.*,
dead.

mōs, mōris, *m.*, *manner, custom;*
pl. mōres, um, *morals, character.*

mŏvĕo, mōvi, mōtum, mŏvēre, 2,
I move, trouble.

mox, *adv.*, *soon, shortly.*

mŭlĭer, ĕris, *f.*, *a woman, wife.*

multĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.*, *a multitude.*

multum, *adv.*, *much, greatly.* See
p. 76.

multus, a, um, *adj.*, *much; pl.*,
many. See p. 25.

mundus, i, *m.*, *the world, the
universe.*

mūnīmentum, i, *n.*, *a fortifica-
tion.*

mūnĭo, īvi, ītum, īre, 4, *I fortify.*

mūnus, ĕris, *n.*, *a gift, a duty.*

mūrus, i, *m.*, *a wall.*

mūto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I change.*

N

narro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I relate.*

nascor, nātus, nasci, 3, *v. dep.*, *I
am born.*

nātūra, ae, *f.*, *nature.*

nātus, a, um, *part.* and *adj.*,
born, aged (so many years).

nauta, ae, *m.*, *a sailor.*

nāvālis, e, *adj.*, *naval.*

nāvis, is, *f.*, *a ship.*

nē, *conj.*, *not, lest, that not.* See
pp. 48, 98.

nĕc, nĕquĕ, *conj.*, *neither, nor.*

nĕcessārĭus, a, um, *adj.*, *neces-
sary.*

nĕfās, *indecl. n.*, *wickedness, im-
piety.*

nĕgo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I deny.*

nĕgōtĭum, i, *n.*, *business.*

nēmo, ĭnem (*gen.* and *abl.* not
in use), *com.*, *nobody, no one.*

Neptŭnus, i, *m., Neptune, god of the sea.*

nēquam, *indecl. adj., worthless.* See p. 25.

nēquĕo, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, īre, 4, *v. irr., I am unable, cannot.* See p. 84.

Nĕro, ōnis, *m., Nero, a Roman emperor.*

Nervĭi, ōrum, *m. pl., the Nervii, a Gallic tribe.*

nescĭo, īvi or ĭi, ītum, ıre, 4, *I know not, am ignorant of.*

neuter, tra, trum (*gen. sing.* īŭs, *dat.* ī), *adj., neither of two.*

nē-vĕ, *conj.,* =et ne, *and that not, and not, nor.*

nīdus, i, *m., a nest.*

nĭger, gra, grum, *adj., black.*

nĭhil, *indecl. n., nothing.*

Nīlus, i, *m., the Nile.*

nĭmĭs, *adv., too, too much.*

ningit, ninxit, ningĕre, 3, *v. impers., it snows.*

nĭsĭ, *conj., unless, except.*

nītor, nīsus aud nixus, nīti, 3, *v. dep., I strive.*

nix, nĭvis, *f., snow.*

nōbĭlis, e, *adj., distinguished, celebrated, noble.*

nŏcĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2, *with dat., I hurt, harm, am hurtful to.*

nōlo, nōlŭi, nolle, *v. irr., I am unwilling.* See p. 78.

nōmen, ĭnis, *n., a name.*

nōn, *adv., not.*

non-nullus, a, um, *adj., usu. pl., some.* See nullus.

non-nunquam, *adv., sometimes.*

nōs, *pl. of* ĕgo: p. 33.

noster, tra, trum, *poss. pron. adj., our, ours.*

nōtus, a, um, *adj., known.*

nŏvus, a, um, *adj., new.*

nox, noctis, *f., night.*

noxĭus, a, um, *adj., hurtful, injurious, guilty.* See p. 25.

nūbes, is, *a cloud.*

nullus, a, um (*gen. sing.* iŭs, *dat.* ī), *adj., no, none.*

num, *interrog. part.* See p. 95.

nŭmĕro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I count.*

nŭmĕrus, i, *m., a number, a quantity.*

nunc, *adv., now.*

nunquam, *adv., never.*

nūtrĭo, īvi, ītum, īre, 4, *I nourish, nurture.*

O

ŏb, *prep.* with *acc., on account of.*

ŏbēdĭo, īvi, ītum, īre, 4, *with dat., I obey.*

ŏb-ĕo, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, īre, 4, *v. irr., I meet, esp. meet death, I die.*

oblīviscor, lītus, līvisci, 3, *v. dep., I forget;* with *gen.*

obscūro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I darken.*

ob-servo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I observe, respect.*

obsĕs, ĭdis, *com., a hostage.*

obsĭdĕo [ob, sĕdeo], sēdi, sessum, sĭdēre, 2, *I blockade, lay sieye to.*

obsĭdĭo, ōnis, *f., a siege, blockade.*

ob-sto, stĭti, stātum, stāre, 1, *I oppose, prevent.*

ob-sum, obfŭi, obesse, *v. irr.* with *dat., I am hurtful to, injure.*

ob-tempĕro, āvi, ātum, 1, *with dat., I obey, comply with.*

obtĭnĕo [ob, tĕneo], ŭi, tentum, tĭnēre, 2, *I hold, keep possession of.*

occĭdens, tis, *m.* (prop. *part.* of occĭdo, *to set); the setting sun, the west.*

occīdo [ob, caedo], cīdi, cīsum, cīdĕre, 3, *I slay, kill.*

occĭdo [ob, cădo], cĭdi, cāsum, cĭdĕre, 3, *to set* (as the sun, moon, etc.).

occŭpātus, a, um, *part.* and *adj., engaged, busy.*

occŭpo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I seize upon.*

ōcĕănus, i, *m., the ocean.*

octōgintā, *indec. num. adj., eighty.*

ŏcŭlus, i, *m., an eye.*

ŏdĭum, i, *n., hatred.*

ŏdor, ōris, *m.*, *a smell, scent.*

offĕro [ob, fĕro], obtŭli, oblātum, offerre, 3, *v. irr.*, *I present.*

ōlim, *adv.*, *formerly, once upon a time.*

omnis, e, *adj.*, *all, every.*

ŏnus, ĕris, *n.*, *a load, burden.*

ŏpĕra, ae, *f.*, *pains, labour:* operam dare, *to do all in one's power.*

ŏportet, ŭit, ēre, 2, *v. impers.*, with *acc.*, *it behoves.*

oppĭdum, i, *n.*, *a town.*

oppōno [ob, pōno], pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, pōnĕre, 3, *I set against, oppose.*

opprĭmo [ob, prĕmo], pressi, pressum, prĭmĕre, 3, *I press upon, overwhelm.*

oppugno [ob, pugno], āvi, ātum, 1, *I attack, assault.*

optĭmē, *adv.*, *sup.* of bĕnĕ, *excellently:* p. 76.

optĭmus, a, um, *adj. sup.* of bŏnus : p. 25.

opto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I wish, desire.*

ŏpŭlentus, a, um, *adj.*, *wealthy.*

ŏpus, ĕris, *n.*, *a work.*

ŏpus, *n. indecl.*, with *abl.*, *need, necessity;* also used as *adj.*, *necessary.*

ōra, ae, *f.*, *coast.*

ōrācŭlum, i, *n.*, *an oracle.*

ōrātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, *an oration, speech.*

ōrātor, ōris, *m.*, *an orator, an envoy.*

ordĭor, orsus, ordīri, 4, *v. dep.*, *I begin.*

ŏrĭor, ortus, ŏrīri, 4 and 3, *v. dep.*, *to rise* (as the sun, moon, etc.). *Fut. part.*, ŏrĭtūrus. See p. 146.

ornāmentum, i, *n.*, *an ornament.*

orno, āvi, ātum, 1, *I adorn, decorate.*

ōro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I entreat, pray.*

ōs, ōris (no *gen. pl.*), *n.*, *mouth.*

ŏs, ossis (*gen. pl.* ossium), *n.*, *bone.*

P

pābŭlor, ātus, āri, 1, *v. dep.*, *I forage.* Milit. word.

paenĭtet (poe-), ŭit, ēre, 2, *v. impers.*, with *acc.* and *gen.*, *it repents.* See p. 87.

pallĭum, i, *n.*, *a cloak.*

părātus, a, um, *part.* and *adj.*, *prepared, ready.*

părens, entis, (*gen. pl.* părentum), c., *a parent.*

părĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2, with *dat.*, *I obey.*

părĭo, pĕpĕri, partum, părĕre, 3, *I bring forth.* *Fut. part.* părĭtūrns.

păro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I prepare, get, gain; raise (forces).*

pars, tis, *f.*, *a part.*

partĭor, ītus, īri, 4, *v. dep.*, *I share, divide.*

parvus, a, um, *adj.*, *small, little.* See p. 25.

passus, ūs, *m.*, *a pace* (*about* 5 *feet*). Mille passus *or* passuum, 1000 paces, *a (Roman) mile.*

păter, tris, (*gen. pl.* patrum), *m.*, *a father.*

pătĭentĕr, *adv.*, *patiently.*

pătĭentĭa, ae, *f.*, *patience.*

pătĭor, passus, păti, 3, *v. dep.*, *I endure, suffer.*

patrĭa, ae, *f.*, *native land, one's country.*

pauci, ae, a, *pl. adj.*, *few.*

pauper, ĕris, *adj.*, *poor.*

paupertās, ātis, *f.*, *poverty.*

pāvo, ōnis, *m.*, *a peacock.*

pax, pācis, *f.*, *peace.*

pĕcūnĭa, ae, *f.*, *money.*

pĕdĕs, ĭtis, *m.*, *a foot-soldier.* In *pl.*, *infantry.*

pĕdĭtātus, ūs, *m.*, *infantry.*

pellis, is, *f.*, *a skin, hide (of an animal).*

pĕnĕs, *prep.* with *acc.*, *in the power of.*

pĕr, *prep.* with *acc.*, *through; during.*

percĭpĭo [per, căpio], cēpi, cep-
tum, cĭpĕre, 3, *I take in; perceive.*

per-do, dĭdi, dĭtum, perdĕre, 3,
I destroy, ruin.

pĕr-ĕo, ĭi, ĭtum, īre, 4, *v. irr., I
perish.*

perfectus, a, um, *part.* and *adj.,
finished, perfect.*

per-fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, 3, *v.
irr., I bear through, endure.*

pĕrīcŭlum, i, *n., danger.*

pĕrītus, a, um, *adj.,* with *gen.,
skilful, skilled in.*

per-lĕgo, lēgi, lectum, lĕgĕre, 3,
I read through.

per-multi, ae, a, *pl. adj., very
many.*

pernĭcĭōsus, a, um, *adj., destruc-
tive, baneful.*

perpĕtŭus, a, um, *adj., continual.*

per-rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, rum-
pĕre, 3, *I burst through.*

Persa (-ēs), ae, *m., a Persian.*

•per-suādĕo, suāsi, suāsum, suā-
dĕre, 2, with *dat., I persuade.*

per-vĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, vĕnīre,
4, **I** *arrive at.*

perversus, a, um, *adj., wilful,
perverse.*

pēs, pĕdis, *m., a foot.*

pessĭmē, see **mălĕ.**

pĕto, īvi and ĭi, ītum, pĕtĕre, 3,
I seek, make for.

Phăēthōn, ontis, *m., Phaëthon, a
son of Apollo.*

Phīdĭās, ae, *m., Phidias, a
famous Athenian sculptor.*

phĭlŏsŏphus, i, *m., a philosopher.*

pĭgĕt, pĭgŭit and pĭgĭtum est,
pĭgēre, 2, *v. impers.,* with *acc.* and
•gen., *it vexes.* See p. 87.

pingo, pinxi, pĭctum, pingĕre,
3, *I paint, embroider.*

pĭrum, i, *n., a pear.*

pĭrus, i, *f., a pear-tree.*

piscis, is, *m., a fish.*

Pīsistrātus, i, *m., Pisistratus, a
despot of Athens.*

plăcĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2, with
dat., I please, am pleasing to: also,

plăcet, ŭit or ĭtum est, ēre, 2, *v.
impers.,* with *dat., it pleases.*

plăcĭdus, a, um, *adj., quiet.*

plānē, *adv., altogether.*

plānĭtĭēs, ēi, *f., a plain.*

planta, ae, *f., a shoot, plant.*

Plăto, ōnis, *m., Plato, a famous
Greek philosopher.*

plēnus, a, um, *adj.,* with *gen.,
full.*

Plīnĭus, i, *m., Pliny, the name of
two Roman authors.*

plŭit, plŭit or plūvit, plŭĕre, 3,
v. impers., it rains.

plūrĭmus, a, um, *sup. adj., very
much;* in *pl., very many, most.* See
p. 25.

plūrĭmum, *sup. adv., most, very
much.* See p. 76.

plūs, ūris, *compar. adj., neut.,*
in *pl.* plūres, plūra, *more.*

poena, ae, *f., punishment.*

Poeni, ōrum, *m. pl., the Cartha-
ginians.*

poenitet, see **pae-.**

pŏēta, ae, *m., a poet.*

pollĭcĕor, ĭtus, ēri, 2, *v. dep., I
promise.*

Pompēius (usu. trisyll.), i, *m.,
Pompey, the rival of Caesar.*

pŏnĕ, *prep.* with *acc., behind.*

pōno, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, pōnĕre, 3,
I place, pitch (a camp).

pons, ntis, *m., a bridge.*

porta, ae, *f., a gate.*

porto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I carry.*

portus, ūs, *m., a harbour.* See
p. 120.

possum, pˀtŭi, posse, *v. irr., I
am able, can.* See p. 77.

post, *prep.* with *acc., after, be-
hind.*

postŭlo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I de-
mand.*

pŏtens, entis, *adj., powerful.*

pŏtentĭa, ae, *f., power, influence,
personal ascendancy.*

pŏtestās, ātis, *f., (lawful) power
(of a magistrate).*

pŏtĭor, ĭtus, īri, 4 and 3 (see

p. 146), *v. dep.*, with *abl.*, also *gen.*, *I take possession of, obtain.*

prae, *prep.* with *abl.*, *before, in comparison with ; by reason of* (after a negative).

prae-altus, a, um, *adj.*, *very high, very deep.*

praebĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2, *I furnish, afford, exhibit, set (an example).*

praeceptor, ōris, *m.*, *a teacher.*

praeceptum, i, *n.*, *precept, instruction, lesson.*

praeda, ae, *f.*, *booty.*

prae-ĕo, īvi and ĭi, ĭtum, īre, 4, *v. irr.*, *I go before.*

prae-fĕro, tŭli, lātum, forre, 3, *v. irr.*, *I prefer, place* or *esteem before.*

prae-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittĕre, 3, *I send on before.*

praemĭum, i, *n.*, *a reward.*

praesens, entis, *adj.*, *present.*

praestābĭlis, e, *adj.*, *excellent.*

praestans, antis, *adj.*, *excellent.*

prae-sum, fŭi, esse, *v. irreg.*, with *dat.*, *I am at the head of.*

praetĕr, *prep.* with *acc.*, *beside.*

praetĕr-ĕo, īvi, more frequently ĭi, ĭtum, īre, 4, *v. irr.*, *I pass by.*

praetĕrĭtus, a, um, *adj.*, *past.*

prae-vĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, vĕnīre, *I anticipate.*

prĕmo, pressi, pressum, prĕmĕre, 3, *I press.*

prīmārĭus, a, um, *adj.*, *first-rate, eminent.*

prīmo, *sup. adv.*, *at first.*

prīmum, *sup. adv.*, *first, in the first place.* See p. 76.

prīmus, a, um, *sup. adj.*, *first.* See p. 26.

prĭor, ŭs, *comp. adj.*, *former.* See p. 26.

pristĭnus, a, um, *adj.*, *former, olden.*

prĭus, *comp. adv.*, *sooner, before.*

prĭus-quam (often as two words separated by others), *conj.*, *before that.*

prō, *prep.* with *abl.*, *before, for, on behalf of.*

prŏbĕ, *adv.*, *rightly, properly.*

prŏbĭtās, ātis, *f.*, *honesty, integrity.*

prŏbus, a, um, *adj.*, *good, upright.*

prō-do, dĭdi, dĭtum, prōdĕre, 3, *I hand down ; betray.*

proelĭum, i, *n.*, *a battle.*

prō-fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, 3, *v. irr.*, *I extend.*

prŏfĭciscor, fectus, fĭcisci, 3, *v. dep.*, *I set out.*

prŏfundus, a, um, *adj.*, *very deep.*

prōgrĕdĭor [pro, grădior], gressus, grĕdi, 3, *v. dep.*, *I advance.*

prŏhĭbĕo [pro, hăbeo], ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2, *I keep off, prohibit, prevent.*

prō-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittĕre, 3, *I promise.*

prŏpĕ, *prep.* with *acc.*, *near.*

prŏpĕ, *adv.*, *near, nearly.*

prŏpinquus, a, um, *adj.*, *near.*

proptĕr, *prep.* with *acc.*, *on account of.*

prō-sum, fŭi, prōdesse, *v. irr.*, *I am serviceable to, do good to.* See p. 32. Multum prodesse, *to be of great service to.*

prō-vĭdĕo, vidi, vīsum, vĭdĕre, 2, *I foresee, provide.*

proxĭmē, *sup. adv.*, *very near.* See p. 76.

proxĭmus, a, um, *sup. adj.*, *nearest, next, preceding.* See p. 26.

prūdens, ntis, *adj.*, *prudent, sagacious.*

prūdentĭa, ae, *f.*, *knowledge, prudence.*

prūnum, i, *n.*, *a plum.*

prūnus, i, *f.*, *a plum-tree.*

publĭcus, a, um, *adj.*, *public*, i.e. *belonging to the state.*

pŭdet, ŭit or pŭdĭtum est, ēre, 2, *v. impers.*, with *acc.* and *gen.*, *it shames.* See p. 87.

pŭella, ae, *f.*, *a girl.*

pŭer, ĕri, *m.*, *a boy.*

pugna, ae, *f.*, *a battle.*

PUGNO

pugno, āvi, ātum, 1, *I fight.*
pulcher, chra, chrum, *adj., beautiful.*
Pūnĭcus, a, um, *adj., Punic, Carthaginian.*
pūnĭo, īvi, ītum, īre, 4, *I punish.*
pŭto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I think.*
Pӯthăgŏrās, ae, *m., Pythagoras, a famous Greek philosopher*

•

Q

quaero, quaesīvi (ĭi), sītum, quaerĕre, 3, *I seek, enquire.*
quaestĭo, ōnis, *f., a question.*
quālis, e, *pron. adj., of what sort;* with **tālis**, *such as.*
quam, *adv.* and *conj., than, as.*
quantus, a, um, *adj., how great;* with **tantus**, *as great as.*
quārē, *adv., why, on what account.*
quăsĭ, *conj., as if.*
quătĭo, *no perf.,* quassum, quătĕre, 3, *I shake.*
quattuor, *indec. num. adj., four.*
-que, *conj.* (always attached to the word which it connects with what precedes), *and.*
quercus, ūs, *f., an oak, oak-tree.*
quĭa, *conj., because.*
quīdam, quaedam, quoddam and quiddam, *pron. indef., a certain, certain one, somebody.*
quĭdem, *adv.* and *conj.* (never first in a sentence), *indeed.*
quīn, *conj., that not* (with *subj.*). See pp. 48, 98.
quīnquĕ, *indec. num. adj., five.*
quĭs (quī), quae, quĭd (quŏd), *pron. interr.; who, which, what?*
quisnam, quaenam, quĭdnam, *interrog. pron., who, which, what?*
quisquĕ, quaeque, quodque (and *subst.* quidque or quicque), *indef. pron., every one, each one, each.*
quō, *interrog.* and *rel. adv., whither.*

REGO

quō, *conj.* with *subj., in order that.* See p. 99.
quŏd, *conj., because, that.*
quōmĭnŭs, *conj.* with *subj., that not.* See p. 99.
quondam, *adv., at a certain time, formerly, once.*
quŏquĕ, *conj., also, even, too.*
quŏt, *indecl. num. adj., how many?*
quŏtīdĭē (cŏt-), *adv., every day.*
quum : see **cum**.

R

rādix, īcis, *f., a root.*
răpax, ācis, *adj., rapacious.*
răpĭdus, a, um, *adj., rapid.*
răpĭo, ŭi, raptum, rapĕre, 3, *I seize.*
rārō, *adv., seldom, rarely.*
rārus, a, um, *adj., rare, thinly scattered.*
rătĭo, ōnis, *f., reason; a reckoning.*
rĕcĭto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I read aloud.*
rĕcordor, ātus, āri, 1, *v. dep.,* usu. with *acc.,* also *gen., I call to mind.*
rĕ-crĕo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I refresh.*
rectē, *adv., rightly.*
rectus, a, um, *adj., straight, right.*
rĕcŭpĕro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I recover, get back.*
rĕcūso, āvi, ātum, 1, *I object, refuse.*
rĕd-ămo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I love in return.*
rĕd-ĕo, ĭi, ĭtum, īre, 4, *v. irr., I return.*
re-fĕro, rettŭli or rĕtŭli, rĕlātum, rĕferre, 3, *v. irr., I bring back.*
rēgĭna, ae, *f., a queen.*
regno, āvi, ātum, 1, *I reign, am king.*
regnum, i, *n., a kingdom.*
rĕgo, rexi, rectum, rĕgĕre, 3, *I rule.*

Rēgŭlus, i, *m.*, *Regulus, a famous Roman.*

rĕ-linquo, līqui, lictum, linquĕre, 3, *I leave, quit.*

rĕmīniscor, —, isci, 3, *r. dep.* with *gen.*, *I remember.*

rĕ-nŏvo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I make new again, restore.*

rĕpĕrio [părio], reppĕri, repertum, rĕpĕrīre, 4, *I find, invent.*

rēs, rĕi, *f.*, *thing, matter, affair, subject.*

rĕ-sisto, stĭti, sistĕre, 3, with *dat.*, *I resist.*

re-spondĕo, di, sum, dĕre, 2, with *dat.*, *I answer.*

res-publĭca, rĕi-publĭcae, *f.*, *commonwealth.* See p. 22.

rētĕ, is, *n.*, *a net.*

rĕus, i, *m.*, *an accused man, defendant.*

rĕverto, ti, sum, tĕre, 3; also as *v. dep.*, rĕvertor, versus, 3, *I turn back, return.*

rex, rēgis, *m.*, *a king.*

Rhēnus, i, *m.*, *the Rhine.*

Rhŏdānus, i, *m.*, *the Rhone.*

Rhŏdŏs (-us), i, *f.*, *Rhodes, an island off Asia Minor.*

rīpa, ae, *f.*, *a bank (of river).*

rŏgo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I ask.*

Rōma, ae, *f.*, *Rome.*

Rōmānus, a, um, *adj.*, *Roman.* Also as *subs.*, Rōmānus, i, *m.*, *a Roman.*

Rōmŭlus, i, *m.*, *Romulus.*

rŏsa, ae, *f.*, *a rose.*

Roscĭus, i, *m.*, *Roscius, a Roman.*

rūpēs, is, *f.*, *a rock.*

rūs, rūris, *n.*, *the country* (as distinguished from town or city).

S

săcer, cra, crum, *adj.*, *sacred.*

saepĕ, *adv.*, *often.* Comp. saepius, *oftener*; *sup.* saepissĭmē, *oftenest, very often.*

saepĕnŭmĕro, *adv.*, *oftentimes.*

săgitta, ae, *f.*, *an arrow.*

Săguntīni, ōrum, *m. pl.*, *Saguntines, the people of Saguntum, in Spain.*

Sălămis, īnis, *acc.* Sălămīnă, *f.*, *Salamis, an island near Athens.*

Sallustĭus, i, *m.*, *Sallust, a Roman historian.*

salto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I dance.*

sălūs, ūtis, *f.*, *safety.*

salvus, a, um, *adj.*, *safe.*

sanguis, ĭnis, *m.*, *blood.*

săpĭenter, *adv.*, *wisely.*

săpĭens, ntis, *adj.*, *wise*; as *subs.* *m.*, *a wise man.*

săpĭentĭa, ae, *f.*, *wisdom.*

săpĭo, īvi or ĭi, no *sup.*, ĕre, 3, *to savour* or *taste of*; *to be wise.*

sătis, *adv.*, *enough, sufficiently.*

Satrĭus, i, *m.*, *Satrius, a Roman.*

scĕlus, ĕris, *n.*, *a crime.*

scĭentĭa, ae, *f.*, *knowledge.*

scĭo, īvi, ĭtum, scīre, 4, *I know.*

Scīpĭo, ōnis, *m.*, *Scipio* (a Roman family name).

scrībo, psi, ptum, bĕre, 3, *I write.*

scriptor, ōris, *m.*, *a writer, author.*

scūtum, i, *n.*, *a shield.*

Scȳtha and Scȳthēs, ae, *m.*, *a Scythian.*

sĕcundum, *prep.* with *acc.*, *following, in accordance with.*

sĕd, *conj.*, *but.*

sĕdĕo, sēdi, sessum, sĕdĕre, 2, *I sit.*

sēdēs, is, *f.*, *a seat.*

segnĭtĭēs, ēi, *f.*, *slothfulness, indolence.*

sempĕr, *adv.*, *always.*

sĕnātus, ūs, *m.*, *senate.*

sĕnectūs, ūtis, *f.*, *old age.*

sĕnex, sĕnis, *adj.* (of persons only), *old.* As *subs. m.*, *an old man.* See p. 22; also p. 25 (*compar.*).

sensus, ūs, *m.*, *sense.*

sentĭo, si, sum, sentīre, 4, *I feel, perceive.*

sĕpĕlĭo, īvi or ĭi, pultum, sĕpĕlīre, 4, *I bury.*

septem, *num. adj. indec.*, *seven*

sĕquor, sĕcūtus, sĕqui, 3,'*v. dep.*, *I follow. Impers.*, sĕquĭtur, *it follows.*

sĕrēnus, a, um, *adj.*, *clear, calm.*

sermo, ōnis, *m.*, *a discourse.*

sēro, sēvi, sătum, sĕrĕre, 3, *I plant, sow.*

servĭtūs, ūtis, *f.*, *slavery.*

Servĭus, i, *m.*, *Servius, a Roman forename.*

servo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I preserve, save.*

servus, i, *m.*, *a slave.*

sĕvērus, a, um, *adj.*, *strict, severe.*

sī, *conj.*, *if.*

Sĭcĭlĭa, ae, *f.*, *Sicily.*

sīdus, ĕris, *n.*, *a constellation.*

signum, i, *n.*, *a sign, signal.*

sĭlentĭum, i, *n.*, *silence.*

silva, ae, *f.*, *a wood.*

sĭmĭlis, e, *adj.*, *like.* See p. 25.

sĭmŭl, *adv.*, *at the same time.*

sĭmŭl-āc (atque), or as two words, *conj.*, *as soon as.*

sĭmŭlācrum, i, *n.*, *an image, statue.*

sĭmŭlātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, *a pretence.*

sĭnĕ, *prep.* with *abl.*, *without.*

sŏcer, ĕri, *m.*, *a father-in-law.*

sŏcĭus, i, *m.*, *a partner, ally, companion.*

Sōcrătēs, is, *m.*, *Socrates, the sage of Athens.*

sōl, sōlis, *m.*, *the sun.*

sŏlĕo, ĭtus sum, ēre, 2, *v. semi-dep.*, *I am accustomed.* See p. 86.

sōlers (sollers), rtis, *adj.*, *skilful, ingenious.*

Sŏlōn, ōnis, *m.*, *Solon, the Athenian lawgiver.*

sōlum, *adv.*, *only.*

sōlus, a, um, *adj.* (*gen. sing.* īŭs, *dat.* ī), *alone.* See p. 23.

solvo, solvi, sŏlūtum, solvĕre, 3, *I loosen, pay, dissolve.*

somnus, 1, *m.*, *sleep.*

sŏnĭtus, ūs, *m.*, *sound, noise.*

sŏror, ōris, *f.*, *sister.*

sors, tis, *f.*, *lot, portion.*

Sparta, ae, *f.*, *Sparta.*

specto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I look at, behold.*

spĕcŭlor, ātus, āri, 1, *v. dep.*, *I spy out.*

spērātus, a, um, *part.* and *adj.*, *hoped for.*

spēro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I hope.*

spēs, ĕi, *f.*, *hope:* in spem venire, *to conceive a hope.*

splendĭdus, a, um, *adj.*, *splendid, bright.*

splendor, ōris, *m.*, *brightness, brilliancy.*

stătim, *adv.*, *immediately.*

stătĭo, ōnis, *f.*, *a post, station.*

stătuo, ŭi, ūtum, ŭĕre, 3, *I fix, determine.*

stella, ae, *f.*, *a star.*

sto, stĕti, stătum, stāre, 1, *I stand.*

strēnŭē, *adv.*, *vigorously.*

strēnŭus, a, um, *adj.*, *vigorous.*

stŭdĕo, ŭi, ēre, 2, with *dat.*, *I am eager, zealous for.*

stŭdĭōsus, a, um, *adj.*, with *gen.*, *zealous, eager after.*

stŭdĭum, i, *n.*, *zeal, a pursuit, study.*

stultĭtĭa, ae, *f.*, *folly.*

stultus, a, um, *adj.*, *foolish.*

suādĕo, suāsi, suāsum, suādĕre, 2, with *dat.*, *I advise.*

suāvis, e, *adj.*, *sweet, delightful.*

sŭb, *prep.* with *abl.*, *beneath, under;* with *acc.*, *to beneath, up to;* of time, *about, towards.*

sub-dĭffĭcĭlis, e, *adj.*, *somewhat difficult.*

sŭb-ĕo, ĭi, ĭtum, īre, 4, *v. irr.*, *I go up to, under.*

sŭbĭtus, a, um, *adj.*, *sudden.*

sub-cēquor, cūtus, sĕqui, 3, *v. dep.*, *I follow up.*

sub-sum, *no perf.*, sŭbesse, *v. irr.*, *I am under, near.*

subter, *prep.* with *acc.* or *abl.*, *under, beneath.*

summus, a, um, *superl.* of sŭpĕrus, *highest, utmost, greatest :* p. 25.

sŭpĕr, *prep.*, usually with *acc.*, sometimes *abl.*, *over, above.*

sŭpĕro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I overcome, surmount, cross (mountains).*

sŭper-sum, fŭi, esse, *v. irr.*, with *dat.*, *I remain over, survive.*

sŭpĕrus, a, um, *adj.*, *upper.* See p. 25.

suprā, *prep.* with *acc.*, *above.*

suprēmus, a, um, *adj.*, *sup.* of sŭpĕrus, *highest;* relating to time, *last.* See p. 25.

suscĭpĭo [sub, căpio], cēpi, ceptum, cĭpĕre, 3, *I undertake.*

sŭus, a, um, *refl. pron. adj.*, *his, her, its, their own.*

Sȳrācūsae, ārum, *f. pl.*, *Syracuse.*

T

tăbernācŭlum, i, *n.*, *a tent.*

tăcĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2, *I am silent.*

taedĕt, dŭit or pertaesum est, taedēre, 2, *v. impers.*, with *acc.* and *gen.*, *it disgusts, wearies.* See p. 87.

tālis, e, *pron. adj.*, *of that sort, such.*

tam, *adv.*, *so, to such a degree.*

tandem, *adv.*, *at length, at last.*

tantum, *adv.*, *only.*

Tarquĭnĭus, i, *m.*, *Tarquinius (Tarquin);* the name of two kings of Rome.

taurus, i, *m.*, *a bull.*

tĕgo, texi, tectum, tĕgĕre, 3, *I cover.*

tēlum, i, *n.*, *a dart, weapon, missile.*

tĕmĕrĭtās, ātis, *f.*, *recklessness, rashness.*

tempestās, ātis, *f.*, *a tempest.*

templum, i, *n.*, *a temple.*

tempus, ŏris, *n.*, *time.*

tĕnĕo, ŭi, tentum, tĕnēre, 2, *I hold, contain, retain.*

tĕner, ĕra, ĕrum, *adj.*, *tender.*

tĕnŭis, e, *adj.*, *thin, delicate.*

tĕnŭs, *prep.* with *abl.* and *gen.*, *reaching to, as far as.* See p. 74.

terra, ae, *f.*, *the earth, land.*

terrĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2, *I terrify, frighten, alarm.*

terror, ōris, *m.*, *terror, alarm.*

Thălēs, is and ētis, *m.*, *Thales, a philosopher.*

Thĕmistŏclēs, is, *m.*, *Themistocles, a famous Athenian.*

Tĭbĕrĭus (Ti.), i, *m.*, *Tiberius, a Roman emperor.*

tigris, is or ĭdis, *com.*, *a tiger, tigress.*

tĭmĕo, ŭi, ēre, 2, *I fear.*

tĭmĭdus, a, um, *adj.*, *timid.*

tĭmor, ōris, *m.*, *fear.*

Tīmŏthĕus, i, *m.*, *Timotheus, a famous Athenian.*

Tĭtus (T.), i, *m.*, *Titus (a common Roman forename).*

tŏnat, ŭit, āre, 1, *v. impers.*, *it thunders.*

tōtus, a, um, *adj.* (*gen.* ius, *dat.* ī), *the whole, all:* p. 23.

trabs, trăbis, *f.*, *a beam.*

tracto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I handle, deal with.*

trādo [trans, do], dĭdi, dĭtum, dĕre, 3, *I hand down, deliver.*

trăho, traxi, tractum, trăhĕre, 3, *I draw, drag.*

tranquillus, a, um, *adj.*, *calm.*

trans, *prep.* with *acc.*, *across.*

trans-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcĕre, 3, *I lead across.*

trans-ĕo, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, īre, 4, *v. irr.*, *I cross over, pass through.*

Trăsĭmēnus, i, *m.*, *the lake Trasimenus in Italy.*

Trēbōnĭus, i, *m.*, *Trebonius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

trēcenti, ae, a, *num. adj. pl.*, *three hundred.*

trēs, trĭa, *num. adj. pl.*, *three.* See p. 27.

trĭbŭo, ŭi, ūtum, ŭĕre, 3, *I give, assign, ascribe.*

trĭgintā, *num. adj. indec.*, *thirty.*

tristis, e, *adj.*, *sad.*

triumpho, āvi, ātum, 1, *I enjoy a triumph*. See foll. art.

triumphus, i, *m*., *a triumphal procession of a victorious general at Rome; a triumph*.

Trōja, ae, *f*., *Troy, in Asia Minor*.

Trōjānus, a, um, *adj*., *Trojan*.

tū, *thou (you)*. See p. 33.

tŭĕor, tŭĭtus, ēri, 2, *v. dep*., *I guard, protect*.

Tullĭus, i, *m*., *Tullius, a Roman family name*

tum, *adv*., *then*.

turpis, e, *adj*., *base, disgraceful*.

turpĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f*., *disgrace*.

turris, is, *f*., *a tower*. See p. 118.

tūtus, a, um, *adj*., *safe*.

tŭus, a, um, *poss. pron. adj., thy, thine ; your, yours*. (Only used in speaking of one person.)

tўrannus, i, *m*., *a despot, tyrant*.

U

ŭbĭ, *adv*., *where*.

ullus, a, um, *adj*. (*gen. sing*. ĭŭs, *dat*. ī), *any*. See p. 23.

ultrā, *prep*. with *acc*., *on the farther side of, beyond*.

unquam, *adv*., *at any time, ever*.

ūnus, a, um, *adj*. (*gen. sing*. ĭŭs, *dat*. ī), *one, alone*. See pp. 23, 125.

urbs, urbis, *f*., *a city*.

ŭt, *conj*., *that, in order that*. See p. 98.

ŭter, tră, trum, *adj*. (*gen. sing*. īus, *dat*. ī), *which of two*. See p. 23.

ūtĭlis, e, *adj*., *useful*.

ūtor, ūsus, ūti, 3, *v. dep*., with *abl*., *I use, enjoy*.

ŭterquĕ, utrăquĕ, utrumquĕ (*gen. sing*. utrĭusque, *dat*. utrīquĕ), *each, both*.

uxor, ōris, *f*., *a wife*.

V

vălĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, ēre, 2, *I am strong, in good health*.

vălētūdo, ĭnis, *f*., *health*.

vălĭdus, a, um, *adj., strong*.

vallis (-ēs), is, *f*., *a valley*.

vărĭus, a, um, *adj., different, various*.

vasto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I lay waste*.

vectīgăl, ālis, *n*., *a tax*.

vĕhēmenter, *adv*., *vehemently, warmly, greatly*.

vĕho, vexi, vectum, vĕhĕre, 4, *I carry ;* in pass., *I ride*.

Vēientēs, um, *m. pl., the people of Veii, near Rome*.

vēlox, ōcis, *adj., swift*.

vĕnĕror, ātus, āri, 1, *v. dep.. I reverence, worship*.

vĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, vĕnīre, 4, *I come*.

vēnor, ātus, āri, 1, *v. dep*., *I hunt*.

ventĭto, āvi, 1, *v. freq*., *I come frequently*.

ventus, i, *m*., *the wind*.

Vĕnŭsĭa, ae, *f*., *Venusia, a town in Italy*, now *Venosa*.

vēr, vēris, *n*., *the spring*.

vĕrĕor, ĭtus, ēri, 2, *v. dep*., *I fear, reverence*.

vērī-sĭmĭlis, e, *adj., likely, probable*.

versus, ūs, *m*., *a line, verse*.

versŭs, *prep*. with *acc., towards* (*only of place* or *direction*). See p. 73.

vērus, a, um, *adj., true*.

vescor, no *perf*., vesci, 3, *v. dep*.. with *abl*., *I feed, live on*.

vespĕrascit, āvit, ascĕre, 3, *v. impers., evening approaches*.

Vesta, ae, *f*., *Vesta, the goddess of fire and hearth*.

vester, tra, trum, *poss. pron.. your, yours* (only in speaking to more than one person).

vestĭmentum, i, *n*., *clothing*.

vestĭo, īvi, ītum, īre, 4, *I clothe*.

vestis, is, *f*., *clothing, a garment*.

vĕterrĭmus, *sup*. of vetus.

vĕtus, vĕtĕris, *adj., old, ancient*. Pl. *m*., vĕtĕrēs, um, *the ancients*.

vexo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I vex, harass, oppress*.

vĭa, ae, *f.*, *a way, road.*
victĭma, ae, *f.*, *a victim.*
victor, ōris, *m.*, *a conqueror.*
victōrĭa, ae, *f.*, *victory.*
vĭdĕo, vīdi, vīsum, vĭdēre, 2, *I see;* in pass.,—
vĭdĕor, vīsus, vĭdēri, 2, *I seem, appear.*
vĭgĭlo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I watch, I am awake.*
vīgintī, *indec. num. adj.*, *twenty.*
vīlis, e, *adj.*, *cheap, common.*
vincĭo, vinxi, vinctum, vincīre, 4, *I bind.*
vinco, vīci, victum, vincĕre, 3, *I conquer.*
vincŭlum, i, *n.*, *a chain, bond.*
vīnum, i, *n.*, *wine.*
vĭr, vĭri, *m.*, *a man.*
virgo, ĭnis, *f.*, *a maiden.*
virtūs, ūtis, *f.*, *valour, virtue, good quality.*
vīs, *f.*, *strength, power, force.* See p. 22
vīso, vīsi, vīsum, vīsĕre, 3, *v. freq.*, *I go to see, visit.*

vīsus, ūs, *m.*, *sight.*
vīta, ae, *f.*, *life.*
vĭtŭpĕro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I blame, find fault with.*
vīvo, vixi, victum, vīvĕre, 3, *I live.*
vix, *adv.*, *scarcely; with difficulty.*
vŏlo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I fly.*
vŏlo, vŏlŭi, velle, *v. irr.*, *I wish, am willing.* See p. 78.
vŏluntās, ātis, *f.*, *a wish, will.*
vŏluptās, ātis, *f.*, *pleasure.*
vōs, *ye* or *you*, *pl.* of tu: p. 33.
vox, vōcis, *f.*, *a voice.*
vulnĕro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I wound.*
vulnus, ĕris, *n.*, *a wound.*
vultur, ŭris, *m.*, *a vulture.*
vultus, ūs, *m.*, *countenance.*

X

Xĕnŏphōn, ōntis, *m.*, *Xenophon, an Athenian.*
Xerxēs, is, *m.*, *Xerxes, a king of Persia.*

ENGLISH INDEX.

A

N.B.—The Infinitives of Verbs (excepting Regular Verbs of the 1st Conjugation), and the quantities of final syllables, are given in the Index of Latin words.

abandon, dēsĕro, ŭi, rtum, 3 ; (an enterprise) ŏmitto, mīsi, ssum, 3.
able, be, possum, p. 77.
abode, dŏmĭcĭlĭum, i, n.
about, adv., circĭter, adv.
——, prep., v. around.
above, sŭpĕr, sŭprā, preps. with acc. ; super sometimes with abl.
absurd, absurdus, a, um, adj.
abuse, ăbūtor, ūsus, 3, v. dep., with abl.
accident, cāsus, ūs, m.
accompany, cŏmĭtor, ātus, 1, v. dep.
accomplish, confĭcĭo, fēci, fectum, 3.
accordance, in — with, sĕcundum, prep. with acc.
account of, on, ŏb, proptĕr, preps. with acc. ; causā, with gen.
accuse, accūso, āvi, ātum, 1.
accused man, rĕus, i, m.
accustomed, to be, sŏlĕo, ĭtus sum, 2, semi-dep., p. 86.
acquire, ădĭpiscor, ădeptus, 3, v. dep.
across, trans, prep. with acc.
act, făcio, fēci, factum, 3.
—— (subs.), factum, i, n.
actively, gnāvĭtĕr, adv.
admire, mīror, admīror, ātus, 1, v. dep.

adorn, orno, āvi, ātum, 1.
advance, prōgrĕdĭor, gressus, 3, v. dep.
advice, consĭlĭum, i, n.
advise, suādĕo, si, sum, 2, with dat. ; mŏnĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2.
affair, rēs, rĕi, f.
affliction, aerumna, ae, f.
afford, praebĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2.
after, post, prep. with acc.
against, adversus, contrā, preps. with acc.
age, aetās, ātis, f.
——, old, sĕnectūs, ūtis, f.
aged (so many years), part., nātus, a, um.
agree, consentĭo, si, sum, 4.
agreed, it is, constăt, stābat, 1, v. impers.
aid, auxĭlĭum, i, n.
air, āĕr, ĕris, acc. āĕră, m.
alarm, terror, ōris, m.
——, to, terrĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2.
all, omnis, e ; tōtus, a, um, adj. See p. 23.
—— (together), cunctus, a, um, adj.
allowed, it is, lĭcet, lĭcŭit and lĭcĭtum est, lĭcēre, 2, v. impers. with dat., p. 87.
ally, sŏcĭus, i, m.
almost, prŏpĕ, paenĕ, adv.
alone, sōlus, a, um ; ūnus, a, um, adj. See p. 23.
Alps, Alpes, ĭum, pl. f.
already, jam, adv.
also, ĕtĭam ; quŏquĕ, conj.
altogether, plānē, adv.
always, sempĕr, adv.
ambassador, lēgātus, i, m.

BEAST

beast, bestĭa, ae, *f.*
——, **great**, bēlŭa (bell-), ae, *f.*
——, **small**, bestĭŏla, ae, *f.*
beautiful, pulcher, chra, chrum, *adj.*
because, quĭa, quŏd, *conj.*
—— **of**, ŏb, proptĕr, *preps.* with *acc.*
become, fīo, factus, fīĕri, p. 85.
becomes, **it**, dĕcet, 2, *v. impers.*, with *acc.*, p. 87.•
before (*prep.*), antĕ, with *acc.*; prae, prō, with *abl.*
—— (*adv.*), prĭus.
—— (*conj.*), prĭusquam, antĕquam; or as separate words, p. 150 (note).
——, **to be**, praesum, p. 32.
beg, pĕto, īvi and ĭi, ītum, 3.
begin, incĭpĭo, cēpi, ceptum, 3; coepi, *v. def.*, p. 147.
beginning, ĭnĭtĭum, i, *n.*
behalf of, **on**, prō, *prep.* with *abl.*
behind, pōnĕ, *prep.* with *acc.*
behold, specto, āvi, ātum, 1.
behoves, **it**, ŏportet, ŭit, 2, *v. impers.*, with *acc.*, p. 87.
believe, crēdo, dĭdi, dĭtum, 3, with *dat.*
beneath, sŭb, subtĕr, *preps.* with *acc.* and *abl.*
benevolent, bĕnĕvŏlus, a, um, *adj.* See p. 25.
beside, praetĕr, *prep.* with *acc.*
besiege, obsĭdĕo, sēdi, sessum, 2.
betake (oneself), confĕro, tŭli, collātum, ferre, 3, *v. irr.*
betray, prōdo, dĭdi, dĭtum, 3.
between, inter, *prep.* with *acc.*
beyond, ultrā, *prep.* with *acc.*
bid, jŭbeo, jussi, jussum, 2, with *acc.*
bind, vincĭo, xi, nctum, 4.
bird, ăvis, is, *f.*
black, nĭger, gra, grum; āter, ātra, ātrum, *adj.*
blame, culpo, vĭtŭpĕro, āvi, ātum, 1.
——, *subs.*, culpa, ae, *f.*

BUILDING

blessing, **a**, bŏnum, i, *n.*
blind, caecus, a, um, *adj.*
blockade, obsĭdĭo, ōnis, *f.*
——, **to**, obsĭdĕo, sēdi, sessum, 2.
blood, sanguis, ĭnis, *m.*
bloom, flōreo, ŭi, —, 2.
blossom forth, efflōresco, flōrŭi, 3.
blow, flo, flāvi, flātum, 1.
board, **go on**, conscendo, di, sum, 3 (with nāvem, nāves).
body, corpus, ŏris, *n.*
bold, audax, ācis, *adj.*
bond, vincŭlum, i, *n.*
bone, ŏs, ossis, *n.*
book, lĭber, bri, *m.*
booty, praeda, ae, *f.*
born, **be**, nascor, nātus, 3, *v. dep.*
both . . . and (*conjs.*), et . . . et.
boundary, fīnis, is, *m.* (rarely *f.*).
boy, pŭer, ĕri, *m.*
bow, arcus, ūs, *m.*
brave, fortis, e, *adj.*
bravely, fortĭtĕr, *adv.*
break, frango, frēgi, fractum, 3.
bridge, pons, tis, *m.*
bright, splendĭdus, a, um, *adj.*
brightness, **brilliancy**, splendor, ōris, *m.*
bring, fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, 3, *v. irr.*, p. 81.
—— **back**, rĕfĕro, rettŭli (rēt-), rĕlātum; see compounds of fĕro, p. 82.
—— **forth** (young), părĭo, pĕpĕri, partum (*fut. part.* părĭtūrus), 3.
—— **to an end**, fīnĭo, īvi, ītum, 4; confĭcĭo, fēci, fectum, 3.
—— **together**, cōgo, cŏēgi, actum, 3; contrăho, xi, ctum, 3.
Britain, Brĭtannĭa, ae, *f.*
Briton, Brĭtannus, i, *m.*
broad, lātus, a, um, *adj.*
brother, frāter, tris, *m.*
brow, frons, tis, *f.*
build, aedĭfĭco, āvi, ātum, 1.
building, aedĭfĭcĭum, i, *n.*

bull, taurus, i, *m.*

burden, ŏnus, ĕris, *n.*

burn, *trans.*, incendo, di, sum, 3.

—, be on fire, *intrans.*, ardĕo, si, sum, 2.

burnt down, to be, dēflagro, āvi, ātum, 1.

burst through, perrumpo, rūpi, ruptum, 3.

bury, sĕpĕlĭo, īvi, pultum, 4.

business, nĕgōtĭum, i, *n.*

busy, occŭpātus, a, um; industrĭus, a, um, *adj.*

but, sĕd, autem; the former first, the latter second in a sentence: after a negative phr., quīn, p. 98.

buy, ĕmo, ēmi, emptum, 3.

by (denoting personal agent, p. 63), ăb (before a vowel), ā (before a consonant), *prep.* with *abl.*

C

call, vŏco, āvi, ātum, 1.

— together, convŏco, āvi, ātum, 1.

— to mind, rĕcordor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*; with *acc.* or, less freq., *gen.*

calm, tranquillus, a, um, *adj.*

camp, castra, ōrum, *n. pl.*

can, possum, *v. irr.*, p. 77. *I cannot but . . .*, facere non possum quin.

care, cūra, ae, *f.*

—, take, cūro, āvi, ātum, 1.

careful, dīlĭgens, ntis, *adj.*

carefully, dīlĭgentĕr, *adv.*

carry, porto, āvi, ātum, 1; vĕho, vexi, vectum, 3.

— (a wall, ditch, &c.), dūco, xi, ctum, 3.

— on (war), gĕro, gessi, gestum, 3.

Carthage, Carthāgo, ĭnis, *f.*

Carthaginian, *subs.*, Poenus, i, *m.*

—, *adj.*, Pūnĭcus, a, um; Carthāgĭnĭensis, e.

cast away, abjĭcĭo (ābĭcĭo), jēci, jectum, 3.

— down, dējĭcĭo (dĕĭcĭo), jēci, jectum; afflīgo, xi, ctum, 3.

— forth, out, ējĭcĭo (ēĭcĭo), jēci, jectum, 3.

catch, căpĭo, cēpi, captum, 3.

Catiline, Cătĭlīna, ae, *m.*

cause, causa, ae, *f.*

cavalry, ĕquĭtātŭs, ūs, *m.*

celebrated, clārus, a, um, *adj.*; nōbĭlis, e, *adj.*

celestial, caelestis, e, *adj.*

century, centūrĭa, ae, *f.*

certain, certus, a, um, *adj.*

—, a, quīdam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam, *pron.*

chain, vincŭlum, i, *n.*

chance, cāsus, ūs, *m.*

—, by, fortĕ, cāsū.

change, mūto, āvi, ātum, 1.

charge, (*commission*) mandātum, i, *n.*

—, to, mando, āvi, ātum, 1.

chariot, currus, ūs, *m.*

chastise, castīgo, āvi, ātum, 1.

cheap, vīlis, e, *adj.*

cheer, exhĭlăro, āvi, ātum, 1.

cheerful, hĭlăris, e, *adj.*

cheese, cāsĕus, i, *m.*

cherish, cŏlo, ŭi, cultum, 3.

cherry, cĕrăsum, i, *n.*

— tree, cĕrăsus, i, *f.*

children, lībĕri, ōrum, *m. pl.*

Cimbrians, Cimbri, ōrum, *m. pl.*

citadel, arx, arcis, *f.*

citizen, cīvis, is, *c.*

citizenship, cīvĭtas, ātis, *f.*

city, urbs, urbis, *f.*

civil, *belonging to a citizen*, cīvīlis, e, *adj.*

class, gĕnus, gĕnĕris, *n.*

clear, clārus, sĕrēnus, a, um, *adj.*

—, it is, lĭquet, 2, *v. impers.*, p. 87.

cloak, pallĭum, i, *n.*

clothe, vestĭo, īvi, ītum, 4.

clothing, vestis, is, *f.*; vestīmentum, i, *n.*

cloud, nūbēs, is, *f.*

COAST

coast, ōra, ae, *f.*

cohort, cŏhors, rtis, *f.*

cold, frīgus, ŏris, *n.*

colony, cŏlōnĭa, ae, *f.*

colour, cŏlor, ōris, *m.*

come, vĕnio, vēni, ventum, 4.

—— frequently, ventĭto, āvi, ātum, 1.

—— to pass, fīo, factus, fĭĕri : see p. 85.

—— together, convĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, 4.

command, impĕro, āvi, ātum, 1, with *dat.*; jŭbĕo, jussi, jussum, 2, with *acc.* and *inf.*

commander (in chief), impĕrātor, ōris, *m.*

commission, mandātum, i, *n.*

common, commūnis, e (*shared*); vīlis, e (*cheap*).

commonly, fĕrē, plērumquĕ, *adv.*

commonwealth, respublĭca, rēipublĭcae, *f.*

companion, (*on a journey*) cŏmĕs, ĭtis, *c.*; (*in general*) sŏcĭus, i, *m.*

comparison with, in, prae, *prep.* with *abl.*

comply with, obtempĕro, āvi, ātum, 1; with *dat.*

comrade, sŏcĭus, i, *m.*; (*fellow-soldier*) commīlĭto, ōnis, *m.*

concerning, dē, *prep.* with *abl.*

confess, fătĕor, fassus; confĭtĕor, fessus, 2, *v. dep.*

conflagration, incendĭum, i, *n.*

conquer, vinco, vīci, victum, 3.

conqueror, victor, ōris, *m.*

conscience, conscĭentĭa, ae, *f.*

conspiracy, conjūrātĭo, ōnis, *f.*

constellation, sīdus, ĕris, *n.*

consul, consul, ŭlis, *m.*

——, office of, consulate, consŭlātus, ūs, *m.*

consult, consŭlo, lŭi, ltum, 3.

consume, absūmo, consūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, 3.

contemplate, contemplor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.* [with *abl.*

contented, contentus, a, um, *adj.*;

continual, perpĕtŭus, a, um, *adj.*

DANGER

contrary to, contrā, *prep.* with *acc.*

converse, collŏquor, lŏcūtus, 3.

Corinth, Cŏrinthus, i, *f.*

correct, corrĭgo, rexi, rectum, 3.

counsel, consĭlĭum, i, *n.*

count, nŭmĕro, āvi, ātum, 1.

countenance, vultus, ūs, *m.*; făcĭes, ēi, *f.*

country, the (opp. to '*the town*'), rūs, rūris, *n.*

——, one's own, patrĭa, ae, *f.*: see also state.

courage, ănĭmus, i, *m.*

cover, tĕgo, xi, ctum, 3.

cowardice, ignāvĭa, ae, *f.*

create, crĕo, āvi, ātum, 1.

creator, creātor, ōris, *m.*

credible, crēdĭbĭlis, e, *adj.*

Crete, Crēta, ae, *f.*

crime, scĕlus, ĕris, *n.*; (*daring*) făcĭnus, ŏris, *n.*

crop, messis, is, *f.*; frūges, um, *f. pl.*

cross over, transĕo, 4, *v. irr.*, p. 84. Also sŭpĕro, āvi, ātum, 1 (*to surmount*).

crown, (*wreath*) cŏrōna, ae, *f.* In fig. sense, regnum, i, *n.*

cruel, crūdēlis, e; atrox, ōcis, *adj.*

crush, opprĭmo, pressi, pressum, 3.

cry out, clāmo, exclāmo, āvi, ātum, 1.

cultivate, cŏlo, cŏlŭi, cultum, 3.

—— carefully, excŏlo, cŏlŭi, cultum, 3.

curb, cŏercĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2.

current, flūmen, ĭnis, *n.*

custom, consuētūdo, ĭnis, *f.*; mōs, mōris, *m.*

cut off, interclūdo, si, sum, 3; *to destroy*, absūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, 3.

D

dance, salto, āvi, ātum, 1.

danger, pĕrīcŭlum, i, *n.*

dangerous, pĕrīcŭlōsus, a, um, *adj.*

dare, audĕo, ausus sum, 2, *semi-dep.*, p. 86.

   daring, audax, ācis, *adj.*

   daringly, audactĕr, *adv.*

   darken, obscūro, āvi, ātum, 1.

   dart, tēlum, i, *n.*

   daughter, fīlĭa, ae, *f.*

   day, dĭes, ēi, *m.* and *f.* in *sing.*; pl. *masc.* only.

   dead, mortŭus, a, um; *part.* of mŏrior.

   deal with, tracto, āvi, ātum, 1; with *acc.*

   dear, cārus, a, um, *adj.*

   death, mors, rtis, *f.*

   ——, **put to,** interfĭcĭo, fēci, fectum, 3.

   deceive, dēcĭpĭŏ, cēpi, ceptum, 3.

   deed, factum, i, *n.*; a bold, daring —, făcĭnus, ŏris, *n.*

   deep, altus, a, um; prŏfundus, a, um, *adj.*

   ——, **very,** praealtus, a, um, *adj.*

   defeat, clādēs, ĭs, *f.*

   defend, dēfendo, di, sum, 3.

   defendant, rĕus, i, *m.*

   delicate, tĕnŭis, e, *adj.*

   delight, dēlecto, āvi, ātum, 1.

   delightful, jūcundus, a, um; dulcis, suāvis, e, *adj.*

   delightfully, jūcundē, *adv.*

   deliver, lībĕro, āvi, ātum, 1.

   —— *(hand down)*, trādo, dĭdi, dĭtum, 3.

   demand, postŭlo, āvi, ātum, 1.

   deny, nĕgo, āvi, ātum, 1.

   depart, excēdo, cessi, cessum, 3; migro, ēmigro, āvi, ātum, 1.

   deplore, dēplōro, āvi, ātum, 1.

   deserve, mĕrĕor, ĭtus, 2, *v. dep.*: the act. form is also used.

   design, consĭlium, i, *n. To form a* —, consilium capere, inire.

   desire, to, opto, āvi, ātum, 1; cŭpĭo, īvi and ĭi, ītum, 3.

   ——, **stŭdĭum, i, *n.*; cŭpĭdĭtas, ātis, *f.*

   despise, contemno, mpsi, mptum, 3; aspernor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*

   despot, tўrannus, i, *m.*

   destitute, ĭnops, ŏpis, *adj.*

   destroy, perdo, dĭdi, dĭtum, 3; *(utterly)* dēlĕo, ēvi, ētum, 2.

   destruction, exĭtĭum, i, *n.*

   destructive, pernĭcĭōsus, a, um, *adj.*

   deter, dēterrĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2.

   determine, constĭtŭo, ŭi, ūtum, 3; stătŭo, ŭi, ūtum, 3.

   devote oneself, ŏpĕram do, dĕdi, dătum, dăre, 1.

   devoted to, stŭdĭōsus, a, um, with *gen.*

   die, mŏrĭor, mortŭus, mŏri, 3, *v. dep. Fut. part.,* mŏrĭtūrus.

   different, vărĭus, a, um, *adj.*

   difficult, diffĭcĭlis; e, *adj.* See p. 25.

   ——, **somewhat,** subdiffĭcĭlis, e, *adj.*

   dig, fŏdĭo, fōdi, fossum, 3.

   diligence, dīlĭgentĭa, ae, *f.*

   diligent, dīlĭgens, ntis, *adj.*

   dine, cēno (cae-, coe-), āvi, ātum, 1, *perf. part.* cēnātus, *having dined,* p. 86.

   disaster, clādēs, ĭs, *f.*

   discern, cerno, [crēvi, crētum], 3.

   discharge, fungor, nctus, 3, *v. dep.*, with *abl.*

   discourse, sermo, ōnis, *m.*

   discover, dētĕgo, texi, tectum, 3.

   disease, morbus, i, *m.*

   disembark, *trans.*, expōno, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum, 3.

   disgrace, turpĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.*

   disgraceful, turpis, e, *adj.*

   disgusts, it, taedet, 2, *v. impers.*, with *acc.* and *gen.*, p. 87.

   dishonest, imprŏbus, a, um, *adj.*

   dishonesty, fraus, dis, *f.*

   dismiss, dīmitto, mīsi, missum, 3.

   displease, displĭcĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2, with *dat.*

   dissolve, solvo, vi, ūtum, 3.

   distance, longinquĭtas, tātis, *f.*

   distant, longinquus, a, um, *adj.*

distant from, to be, absum, abfŭi & āfŭi, ăbesse, p. 31.

distinguished, insignis, nōbĭlis, e ; ēgrĕgĭus, a, um, *adj*.

distrust, diffīdo, īsus sum, 3, *semi-dep.*, p. 86 ; with *dat.* of person ; *dat.* or *abl.* of thing.

disturb, turbo, āvi, ātum, 1 ; mŏveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2.

ditch, fossa, ae, *f.*

divide, sēpăro, āvi, ātum, 1 ; dīvĭdo, īsi, īsum, 3 ; partior, ītus, 4, *v. dep.*

divine, dīvīnus, a, um, *adj.*

do, făcio, fēci, factum, 3 ; as *pass.*, fīo, factus, fĭĕri, p. 85.

dog, cănis, is, *c.*

doubt, dŭbĭto, āvi, ātum, 1.

doubtful, dŭbĭus, a, um, *adj.*

dove, cŏlumba, ae, *f.*

draw, drag, trăho, traxi, tractum, 3.

—— together, contrăho, traxi, tractum, 3 ; cōgo, cŏēgi, cŏactum, 3.

—— up in order, instrŭo, xi, ctum, 3.

drink, to, bĭbo, i, 3.

drive out, expello, pŭli, pulsum, 3.

duty, mūnus, ĕris, *n.*

dwell, hăbĭto, āvi, ātum, 1.

dwelling-place, dŏmĭcĭlĭum, i, *n.* ; sēdes, is, *f.*

E

eager after, stŭdiōsus, a, um, with *gen.*

eager, be, stŭdĕo, ŭi, —, 2.

eagle, ăquĭla, ae, *f.*

ear, auris, is, *f.*

earnestly, vĕhĕmentĕr, magnŏpĕrĕ, strēnŭē, *adv.*

earth, terra, ae, *f.*

easily, făcĭlĕ, *adv.*

easy, făcĭlis, e, *adj.* See p. 25.

eat, ĕdo, ēdi, ēsum, ĕdĕre and esse, 3, *v. irr.* See p. 85.

educate, ēdŭco, āvi, ātum, 1.

elegant, ēlĕgans, ntis, *adj*

elephant, ĕlĕphantus, i, *m.*

eloquent, ēlŏquens, ntis, *adj.*

embark, *intrans.*, nāvem (nāves) conscendo, di, sum, 3.

embroider, pingo, pinxi, pictum, 3.

eminent, exĭmĭus, ēgrĕgĭus, prīmārius, a, um, *adj.*

empire, impĕrĭum, i, *n.*

employ, ădhĭbĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2.

encourage, hortor, ădhortor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*

end, fīnis, is, *m.* (rarely *f.*).

——, put to an, fīnĭo, īvi, ītum, 4.

endure, pătior, passus, 3 ; fĕro, perfĕro, p. 81.

enemy (*public*), hostis, is, *c.*

—— (*personal*), ĭnĭmīcus, i, *m.*

engaged, occŭpātus, a, um, *adj.*

enjoy, frŭor, ĭtus and ctus, 3, *v. dep.* with *abl.*

enmity, ĭnĭmĭcĭtĭa, ae, *f.*

enough, sătĭs, *adv.*

enquire, quaero, quaesīvi and ĭi, quaesītum, 3.

enter, intro, āvi, ātum, 1 ; ingrĕdior, gressus, 3, *v. dep.*

entreat, ōro, āvi, ātum, 1.

envy, invĭdĭa, ae, *f.*

epistle, ĕpistŏla, ae, *f.* ; littĕrae (līt.), ārum, *f. pl.*

erect, exstrŭo, struxi, structum, 3.

err, erro, āvi, ātum, 1.

escape, fŭgio, fūgi, fŭgĭtum, 3.

esteem, dīlĭgo, lexi, lectum, 3.

eternal, sempĭternus, a, um, *adj.*

Europe, Eurōpa, ae, *f.*

even, *adj.*, aequus, a, um.

——, *conj.*, ĕtĭam, quŏquĕ.

evening, vesper, ĕris and ĕri, *m.*

—— comes on, vespĕrascit, 3, *v. impers.*, p. 88.

ever, *at any single time*, unquam, *adv.*

——, *always*, semper, *adv.*

every, omnis, e, *adj.*

—— day (*adv.*), quŏtĭdĭē (cot-).

every one, quisquĕ, quaequĕ, quodquĕ, and *subst.* quicquĕ (quidquĕ), *pron.*

—— thing, omnĭă, *n. pl.*; omnēs rēs.

evident, mănĭfestus, a, um, *adj.*

evil (*adj.*), mălus, a, um.

——, *subst.*, mălum, i, *n.*

example, exemplum, i, *n.*

excellent, optĭmus, a, um; ēgrĕgĭus, a, um; praestans, ntis; *adj.*

except, praeter, *prep.* with *acc.*; nĭsĭ, *conj.*

exercise, to, exercĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2.

exhibit, = *afford*, praebĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2.

exhort, hortor, ădhortor, ātus, 1.

exile, exsĭlĭum (exĭl-), i, *n.*

——, live in, ex(s)ĭlĭum ăgo, ēgi, actum, 3.

experienced, pĕrītus, a, um, *adj.*, with *gen.*

extend, prōfĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, 3, *v. irr.*, p. 81.

eye, ŏcŭlus, i, *m.*

F

fable, fābŭla, ae, *f.*

face, făcĭes, ēi, *f.*; vultus, ūs, *m.*

fall, cădo, cĕcĭdi, cāsum, 3.

faith, fĭdes, ĕi, *f.*

faithful, fĭdēlis, e; fĭdus, a, um, *adj.*

false, falsus, a, um, *adj.*

famous, nōbĭlis, e, *adj.*

far, far off, longē, *adv.*

—— and wide, longē lātēquĕ.

farther, too far, longĭus, *comp. adv.*

father, păter, tris, *m.*

—— -in-law, sŏcer, ĕri, *m.*

fault, culpa, ae, *f.*

—— with, find, culpo, vĭtŭpĕro, āvi, ātum, 1.

favour, grātĭa, ae, *f.*

fear, mĕtŭs, ūs, *m.*; tĭmor, ōris, *m.*

fear, to, mĕtŭo, i, —, 3; tĭmĕo, ŭi, —, 2; vĕrĕor, ĭtus, 2, *v. dep.*

feeble, dēbĭlis, e; infirmus, a, um, *adj.*

feed on, vescor, no *perf.*, 3, *v. dep.*; with *abl.*

feel, sentĭo, si, sum, 4.

feelings, the, (collectively) ănĭmus, i, *m.*

feign, sĭmŭlo, ₐāvi, ātum, 1; fingo, finxi, fictum, 3.

fellow - citizen, - countryman, cīvis, is, *c.*

fellow-soldier, commīlĭto, ōnis, *m.*

few, pauci, ae, a, *adj. pl.*

fidelity, fĭdes, ĕi, *f.*

field, ăger, gri, *m.*

fierce, fĕrus, a, um; saevus, a, um.

fiery (*made of fire*), ignĕus, a, um, *adj.*

fig, fig-tree, fīcus, i and ūs, *f.*

fight, pugno, āvi, ātum, 1.

—— a battle, committo, mīsi, missum, 3 (with proelium); dīmĭco, āvi, ātum, 1.

find, rĕpĕrĭo, reppĕri, rĕpĕrtum, 4; invĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, 4.

—— fault with, culpo, vĭtŭpĕro, āvi, ātum, 1.

finish, confĭcĭo, fēci, fectum, 3.

finished, perfectus, a, um, *adj.*

fire, ignis, is, *m.*

—— = *conflagration*, incendĭum, i, *n.*

——, be on, ardĕo, si, sum, 2.

——, made of, ignĕus, a, um.

——, set on, incendo, di, sum, 3.

first, prīmus, a, um, *adj.*

——, at, in the first place (*adv.*), prīmum, prīmo.

first-rate, prīmārĭus, a, um, *adj.*

fish, piscis, is, *m.*

fix, fīgo, fixi, fixum, 3; stătŭo, ŭi, ūtum, 3.

flatter, ădūlor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*, with *acc.* or *dat.*; blandĭor, ītus, 4, *v. dep.*, with *dat.*

flattery, ădūlātĭo, ōnis, *f.*

level, aequus, a, um, *adj.*
levy, dēlectus, ūs, *m.*
liar, lying, (homo) mendax, ācis, *adj.*
liberty, lībertas, ātis, *f.*
lictor, lictor, ōris, *m.*
lie (*on the ground*), jăcĕo, ŭi, , 2.
—— (*to speak falsely*), mentĭor, ītus, 4, *v. dep.*
lieutenant, lēgātus, i, *m.*
life, vīta, ae, *f.*
——, time of, aetas, ātis, *f.*
light (*adj.*), lĕvis, e, *adj.*
—— (*subs.*), lux, lūcis, *f.*
——, it becomes, lūcescit (illuxit), 3, *impers. v.*, p. 88.
lightning, fulmen, ĭnis, *n.*; fulgur, ŭris, *n.*
like, sĭmĭlis, e, *adj.* See p. 25.
likely, vērīsĭmĭlis, e, *adj.*
likeness, ĭmāgo, ĭnis, *f.*
limit, fīnis, *m.* (rarely *f.*).
——, to, fīnio, īvi, ītum, 4.
line, of poetry, versus, ūs, *m.*
—— of battle, ăcĭēs, ēi, *f.*
lion, lĕo, ōnis, *m.*
little, parvus, a, um, *adj.*
live, vīvo, vixi, victum, 3.
—— on, vescor, no *perf.*, 3, *v. dep.*; with *abl.*
—— in exile, exĭlĭum ăgo, ēgi, actum, 3.
Livy, Līvĭus, i, *m.*
load, ŏnus, ĕris, *n.*
lofty, celsus, a, um, *adj.*
long (*adj.*), longus, *a*, um.
—— (*adv.*), dĭū.
look at, specto, āvi, ātum, 1.
—— upon or into, intuĕor, tuĭtus, 2, *v. dep.*
looks, vultus, ūs, *m.*
loosen, solvo, solvi, sŏlūtum, 3.
lord, dŏmĭnus, i, *m.*
lot, sors, rtis, *f.*
love, ămor, ōris, *m.*
——, to, ămo, āvi, ātum, 1; dīlĭgo, lexi, ᵈectum, 3.
—— in return, rĕdămo, āvi, ātum, 1.

lovely, ămābĭlis, e, *adj.*
low, hŭmĭlis, e, *adj.* See p. 25.
lower, infĕrus, a, um; infĕrĭor, ĭus, *comp. adj.*
luckily, fēlīcĭtĕr, *adv.*
lucky, fēlix, īcis, *adj.*

M

Macedonian, Măcĕdo, dŏnis, *m.*
madness, fŭror, ōris, *m.*
magistrate, măgistrātus, ūs, *m.*
magnificent, magnĭfĭcus, a, um, *adj.* See p. 25.
maiden, virgo, ĭnis, *f*
maintain, servo, conservo, āvi, ātum, 1.
make, făcio, fēci, factum, 3.
malevolent, mălĕvŏlus, a, um, *adj.* See p. 25.
man, hŏmo, ĭnis, *c.*; vĭr, vĭri, *m.* *Plur.* men = soldiers, mīlĭtes, um, *m.* (Often expressed only by masc. ending of *adj.*)
manage, gĕro, gessi, gestum, 3.
manifest, mănĭfestus, a, um, *adj.*
maniple, mănĭpŭlus, i, *m.*
manner, mōs, mōris, *m.*; mŏdus, i, *m.*
many, multi, ae, a, *adj.*
——, how, quŏt, *indec. adj.*
——, very, permulti, ae, a, *adj.*
marble, marmŏr, ōris, *n.*
march, ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris, *n.*; *forced -es*, maxima itinera.
market-place, fŏrum, i, *n.*
master, (*owner*) dŏmĭnus, i, *m.*; (*teacher*) măgister, tri, *m.*
matter, rēs, rĕi, *f.*
measure, mŏdus, i, *m.*
——, to, mētĭor, mensus, 4, *v. dep.*
meditate on, mĕdĭtor, ātus, 1; cōgĭto, āvi, ātum, 1.
meet (death, danger), ŏbeo, īvi and ĭi, ĭtum, 4, *v. irr.*
mellow, mollis, e, *adj.*
membrane, membrāna, ae, *f.*

sum, 3; —— carefully, contemplor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*

obtain, păro, āvi, ātum, 1; ădĭpiscor, ădeptus, 3, *v. dep.*

—— possession of, pŏtĭor, ĭtus, 4, *v. dep.*, with *abl.*; sometimes *gen.*

ocean, ōcĕănus, i, *m.*

often, saepĕ, *adv.*

——, very, saepissĭmē, *sup. adv.*

oftentimes, saepĕnŭmĕrō, *adv.*

old, sĕnex, sĕnis (of persons only); vĕtus, ĕris, *adj.*

—— age, sĕnectūs, ūtis, *f.*

olden, antīquus, pristĭnus, a, um, *adj.*

once, (not *twice*) sĕmel, *adv.*

—— upon a time, ōlim, quondam, ălĭquando, *advs.*

one, ūnus, a, um, *adj.* See p. 23.

—— (of two), alter, a, um, p. 23.

—— (of any number), ălĭus, ă, ŭd, p. 23.

◀ ... another, ălĭus ... ălĭus, p. 23.

——, the, ... the other, alter ... alter, p. 23.

only, *adj.* ūnus, a, um, p. 23.

——, *adv.* sōlum, tantum.

onset, impĕtus, ūs, *m.*

oppose, rĕsisto, stĭti, —, 3, with *dat.*; obsto, stĭti, stătum, 1, with *dat.*

oracle, ōrācŭlum, i, *n.*

oration, ōrătĭo, ōnis, *f.*

orator, ōrātor, ōris, *m.*

order, jŭbĕo, jussi, jussum, 2; with *acc.* and *inf.*

ornament, ornāmentum, i, *n.*; dĕcus, ŏris, *n.*

other, of two, altĕr, ĕra, ĕrum, p. 23.

others, ălĭi, p. 23. See also rest, the.

ought, one, ŏportet, ŭit, 2, *v. impers.* with *acc.*, p. 87; dēbĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2.

out of, ē, ex, *prep.* with *abl.*

outside of, extrā, *prep.* with *acc.*

---

overcome, sŭpĕro, āvi, ātum, 1.

overwhelm, opprĭmo, pressi, pressum, 3.

owe, dēbĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2.

owing to, it is, per (te, &c.) stat (of a negative consequence only): in positive sense expr. by ŏpĕrā (tuā, &c.) fit.

ox, bōs, bŏvis, *c.*, p. 22.

P

pace, passus, ūs, *m.*

pain, dŏlor, ōris, *m.*

pains, to take, cūro, āvi, ātum, 1.

paint, pingo, pinxi, p¡ctum, 3.

parent, părens, entis, *c.*

part, pars, tis, *f.*

partner, sŏcĭu⌐, i, *m.*

pass away, lābor, lapsus, 3, *v. dep.*

—— by, over, praetĕrĕo, īvi and ĭi, ĭtum, 4, *v. irr.*

—— through, transĕo, īvi and ĭi, ĭtum, 4, *v. irr.*

——, come to, fīo, factus, fīĕri, p. 85.

passion, cŭpĭdĭtas, ātis, *f.*

past, praetĕrĭtus, a, um, *adj.*

path, vĭa, ae, *f.*

patience, pătĭentĭa, ae, *f.*

patiently, pătĭentĕr, *adv.*

pay, solvo, vi, ūtum, 3.

peace, pax, pācis, *f.*

peacock, pāvo, ōnis, *m.*

pear, pĭrum, i, *n.*

—— tree, pĭrus, i, *f.*

pearl, margărĭta, ae, *f.*

perceive, intellĭgo, exi, ctum, 3; sentĭo, si, sum, 4; percĭpĭo, cēpi, ceptum, 3.

perfect, perfectus, a, um, *adj.*

perish, pĕrĕo, intĕrĕo, īvi and ĭi, ĭtum, 4, *v. irr.*

Persian, Persa (-es), ae, *m.*

person, hŏmo, ĭnis, *c.*, often expr. by masc. adj. only. See p. 46.

persuade, persuădĕo, si, sum, 2, with *dat.*

perverse, perversus, a, um, *adj.*

philosopher, phĭlŏsŏphus, i, *m.*

pillage, dīrĭpĭo, rĭpŭi, reptum, 3.

pitch a camp, castra pōno, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, 3.

pity, mĭsĕreor, ĭtus, 2, *v. dep.*; mĭsĕret or mĭsĕrētur, mĭsĕrĭtum est, 2, *v. impers.*, with *acc.* of subject; both with *gen.* of object.

place, lŏcus, i, *m.*; *pl.* lŏca, *n.*, and (rarely) i, *m.*

——, to that, ĕō, illūc, istūc, *advs.*

——, to, collŏco, āvi, ātum, 1.

plain, plānĭtĭēs, ēi, *f.*; campus, i, *m.*

plan, consĭlĭum, i, *n.*

plant, planta, ae, *f.*

——, to, sĕro, sēvi, sătum, 3.

play, lūdo, si, sum, 3.

pleasant, jūcundus, a, um, *adj.*

pleasantly, jūcundē, *adv.*

please, plăceo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2, with *dat.*

pleases, it, plăcet, lĭbet, ŭit, 2, *v. impers.*, p. 87; both with *dat.*

pleasing, grātus, a, um, *adj.*

pleasure, vŏluptas, ātis, *f.*

plenty, cōpĭa, ae, *f.*

Pliny, Plīnĭus, i, *m.*

plum, prūnum, i, *n.*

—— tree, prūnus, i, *f.*

plunder (*subs.*), praeda, ae, *f.*

——, to, dīrĭpĭo, rĭpŭi, reptum, 3.

poem, carmen, ĭnis, *n.*

poet, pŏēta, ae, *m.*

Pompey, Pompēius (-ēĭus), i, *m.*

poor, paupĕr, ĕris, *adj.*

portrait, ĭmāgo. ĭnis, *f.*

post, stătĭo, ōnis, *f.*

poverty, paupertas, ātis, *f.*

power, pŏtentia, ae, *f.*; pŏtĕ tas, ātis, *f.* See Latin Index.

—— of, in the, pĕnĕs, *prep.* with *acc.*

powerful, pŏtens, tis, *adj.*

praise (*subs.*), laus, dis, *f.*

praise, to, laudo, āvi, ātum, 1.

pray, ōro, āvi, ātum, 1.

precept, praeceptum, i, *n.*

precious, cārus, a, um, *adj.*

prefer, mālo, mālŭi, malle, *v. irr.*, with *inf.*; antĕpōno, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, 3, with *acc.* and *dat.*

prepare, păro, āvi, ātum, 1.

prepared, părātus, a, um, *part.* and *adj.*

presence of, in the, cōram, *prep.* with *abl.*

present, praesens, tis, *adj.*

——, to be, adsum, adfŭi or affŭi, ădesse, *v. irr.*, p. 31: with *dat.*

preserve, servo, conservo, āvi, ātum, 1.

press, prĕmo, prĕssi, pressum, 3.

pretence, sĭmŭlātĭo, ōnis, *f.*

prevent, obsto, stĭti, stătum, 1, with *dat.*; prŏhĭbĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2.

probable, vērīsĭmĭlis, e, *adj.*

promise, prŏmitto, mīsi, missum, 3; pollĭceor, ĭtus, 2, *v. dep.*

properly, prŏbē, rectē, *adv.*

prostrate, to, afflīgo, flixi, flictum, 3.

protect, tŭĕor, ĭtus, 2, *v. dep.*

provide, prŏvĭdĕo, vīdi, vīsum, 2.

provisions, commeātus, ūs, *m.*

prudence, prūdentĭa, ae, *f.*

prudent, prūdens, tis, *adj.*

public, publĭcus, a, um, *adj.*

punish, pūnio, īvi, ītum, 4.

punishment, poena, ae, *f.*

pupil, discĭpŭlus, i, *m.*

pursuit, stŭdĭum, i, *n.*

put an end to, fīnĭo, īvi, ītum, 4.

—— forth, prōfĕro, tŭli, lātum, 3, *v. irr.*; expōno, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, 3.

—— to death, interfĭcĭo, fēci, fectum, 3.

—— to flight, fŭgo, āvi, ātum, 1.

Q

quality, good, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*
queen, rēgīna, ae, *f.*
question, quaestio, ōnis, *f.*
quiet, tranquillus, a, um, *adj.*
quit, (*a place*) excēdo, cessi, cessum, 3, with *abl.*; (*abandon a person*) rĕlinquo, līqui, lictum, 3.

R

race, gĕnus, ĕris, *n.*
rainbow, arcus caelestis, *m.*
rains, it, plŭit, plŭit and plūvit, plŭĕre, 3, *v. impers.*
raise (*forces*), compăro, āvi, ātum, 1.
rapacious, răpax, ācis, *adj.*
rapid, răpĭdus, a, um, *adj.*
rare, rārus, a, um, *adj.*
rarely, rārō, *adv.*
rashness, tĕmĕrĭtas, ātis, *f.*
rather, have, mālo, ŭi, malle, *v. irr.*, p? 78.
read, lĕgo, lēgi, lectum, 3.
—— aloud, rĕcĭto, āvi, ātum, 1.
—— through, perlĕgo, lēgi, lectum, 3.
ready, părātus, a, um, *part.* and *adj.*
reason, rătĭo, ōnis, *f.*
receive, accĭpĭo, cēpi, ceptum, 3.
recklessness, tĕmĕrĭtas, ātis, *f.*
recover, rĕcŭpĕro, āvi, ātum, 1 ; rĕcĭpĭo, cēpi, ceptum, 3.
refresh, rĕcrĕo, āvi, ātum, 1.
refuse, rĕcūso, āvi, ātum, 1.
regions, lŏca, ōrum, *n. pl.*
reign, regno, āvi, ātum, 1.
reject, aspernor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*
rejoice, gaudĕo, gāvīsus sum, 2, *semi-dep.*, p. 86.
relate, narro, ēnarro, āvi, ātum, 1.
remain, mănĕo, mansi, mansum, 2.

remain over, sŭpersum, fŭi, esse, with *dat.*, p. 31.
remember, rĕmĭniscor, —, 3, *v. dep.*; usu. with *gen.*
render assistance, auxĭlĭum fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, 3, *v. irr.*
renowned, clārus, a, um, *adj.*
repents, it, paenĭtet (poe·), 2, *v. impers.* with *acc.* and *gen.*, p. 87.
republic, respublĭca, rĕipublĭcae, *f.*
resist ·ĕsisto, stĭti, —, 3 ; obsto, stĭti, stātum. 1 ; both with *dat.*
resolve, constĭtŭo, ŭi, ūtum, 3.
respect, to, observo, āvi, ātum, 1.
rest, the, cētĕri, ĕrae, ĕra, *adj. pl.* Sing. rare.
restrain, cŏercĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2.
retain, tĕnĕo, ŭi, tentum, 2.
retire, cēdo, concēdo, cessi, cessum, 3.
return, rĕdeo, 4, *v. irr.*, p. 84 ; rĕverto, ti, sum ; rĕvertor, sus, 3, *v. dep.* (Active form of perfect preferred.)
reverence, to, vĕnĕror, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*; vĕrĕor, ĭtus, 2, *v. dep.*
reward, praemĭum, i, *n.*
Rhine, Rhēnus, i, *m.*
Rhodes, Rhŏdos (-us), i, *f.*
Rhone, Rhŏdănus, i, *m.*
rich, dīves, ĭtis, *adj.* See p. 25.
riches, dīvĭtĭae, ārum, *f. pl.*
ride, to, vĕhor, vectus, 3, *v. pass.* used as *dep.*
right, *adj.*, rectus, a, um.
——, *subs.* jūs, jūris, *n.*
rightly, prŏbē, rectē, *adv.*
rise, to, (*as the sun*) ŏrĭor, ortus, ŏrīri, 4 & 3, *v. dep.*: see p. 146.
river, flŭvĭus, i, *m.*; flūmen, ĭnis, *n.*
road, vĭa, ae, *f.*
robber, latro, ōnis, *m.*
rock, rūpes, is, *f.*
Roman, Rōmānus, a, um, *adj.*: as *subs.*, Rōmānus, i, *m.*
Rome, Rōma, ae, *f.*
root, rādix, īcis, *f.*
rose, rŏsa, ae, *f.*

SIDE

side, on this, cis, citrā, *preps.*
with *acc.*

siege, obsĭdĭo, ōnis, *f.*

sign, signal, signum, i, *n.*

silence, sĭlentĭum, i, *n.*

silent, to be, tăcĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2.

silver, argentum, i, *n.*

sing, canto, āvi, ātum, 1 ; căno, cĕcĭni, cantum, 3.

sister, sŏror, ōris, *f.*

sit, sĕdeo, sēdī, sessum, 2.

skilful, skilled in, pĕrītus, a, um, with *gen.*

skin, (*of animal*) pellis, is, *f.*; (*of man*) cŭtis, is, *f.*

——— (*thin*), membrāna, ae, *f.*

slaughter, caedes, is, *f.*

slave, servus, i, *m.*

slavery, servĭtūs, ūtis, *f.*

slay, interfĭcio, fēci, fectum ; (*in battle*) occīdo, cīdi, cīsum, 3.

sleep (*subs.*), somnus, i, *m.*

———, to, dormĭo, īvi and ĭi, ītum, 4.

slender, tĕnŭis, e, *adj.*

slothfulness, segnĭtĭes, ēi, *f.*

sluggish, segnis, e ; ignāvus, a, um ; ĭners, tis, *adj.*

small, parvus, a, um, *adj.*

smell, ŏdor, ōris, *m.*

snow, nix, nĭvis, *f.*

snows, it, ningit, p. 88.

so, (*to such a degree*) tam, *adv.* ; (*in that way*) ĭtă, sīc, *adv.*

soft, mollis, e, *adj.*

soften, mollĭo, īvi, ītum, 4.

soldier, mīles, ĭtis, *c.*

———, fellow, commīlĭto, ōnis, *m.*

———, foot, pĕdĕs, ĭtis, *m.*

———, horse, ĕquĕs, ĭtis, *m.*

Solon, Sŏlōn or Sŏlo, ōnis, *m.*

some, nonnullus, ă, um, *adj.* See also ălĭus, p. 24.

some one, some thing, ălĭquĭs (quī), ălĭquă, ălĭquĭd (quŏd), *indef. pron.*

somebody, ălĭquĭs : see preced. art.

sometime, quondam, *adv.*

STRAIGHT

sometimes, nonnunquam, ălĭquando, *adv.*

son, fīlĭus, i, *m.* ; *voc.* fīlĭ.

———-in-law, gĕner, ĕri, *m.*

song, (*poem*) carmen, ĭnis, *n.* ; (*singing*) cantus, ūs, *m.*

soon, mox, *adv.*

——— as, as, sĭmŭl atquĕ (āc) ; or as one word : when used of a past event, with *perf. ind.*

sooner, prĭus, *adv.*

sorrow, dŏlor, ōris, *m.*

sort, of that, tālis, e, *adj.*

———, of what, quālis, e, *adj.*

soul, ănĭmus, i, *m.*

sound, sŏnĭtus, ūs, *m.*

sovereignty, dŏmĭnātus, ūs, *m.*

sow, sĕro, sēvi, sătum, 3.

speak, lŏquor, lŏcūtus, 3, *v. dep.* ; dīco, dixi, dictum, 3.

——— to, allŏquor, cūtus, 3 ; with *acc.*

speech, ōrātĭo, ōnis, *f.*

spend (*life*), aetātem ăgo, ēgi, actum, 3.

spirited, fĕrox, ōcis, *adj.*

splendid, splendĭdus, a, um, *adj.*

spring, vēr, vēris, *n.*

spur, calcăr, āris, *n.*

spy out, spĕcŭlor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.* ; explōro, āvi, ātum, 1.

stag, cervus, i, *m.*

stand, sto, stĕti, stătum, stāre, 1.

——— by, adsum, adfŭi, ădesse, *v. irr.* with *dat.*, p. 31.

star, (*single*) stella, ae, *f.* ; (*constellation*) sīdus, ĕris, *n.*

state, cīvĭtas, ātis, *f.*

station, stătĭo, ōnis, *f.*

statue, ĭmāgo, ĭnis, *f.* ; sĭmŭlācrum, i, *n.*

steep, ardŭus, a, um, *adj.*

stern, atrox, ōcis, *adj.*

stone, lăpis, ĭdis, *m.*

———, of, lăpĭdĕus, a, um, *adj.*

storm, tempestas, āt`s, *f.*

———, take by, expugno, āvi ātum, 1.

story, fābŭla, ae, *f.*

straight, rectus, a, um, *adj.*

strength, vīs, *f.*, p. 22.
strengthen, firmo, āvi, ātum, 1.
strive, nītor, nīsus and nixus, 3, *v. dep.*
—— hard, ēnītor, nīsus, &c., 3, *v. dep.*
strong, firmus, vălĭdus, a, um; fortis, e, *adj.*
——, be, vălĕo, ui, 2.
——, make, firmo, āvi, ātum, 1.
study, (pursuit) stŭdĭum, i, *n.*
successful, fēlix, īcis, *adj.*
such, tālis, e, *pron. adj.*
sudden, sŭbĭtus, a, um, *adj.*
suddenly, sŭbĭtō, *adv.*
suffer, pătĭor, passus, 3, *v. dep.*
sufficiently, sătĭs, *adv.*
summer, aestas, ātis, *f.*
sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.*
sup, cēno (cae-, coe-), āvi, cēnā-tum, 1. See p. 86.
supplies, commeātus, ūs, *m.*
surround, cingo, nxi, nctum, 3.
survive, sŭpersum, fŭi, esse, *v. irr.* with *dat.*, p. 32.
swear, jūro, āvi, ātum, 1. See p. 86.
sweet, dulcis, suāvis, e, *adj.*
swell, intŭmesco, tŭmŭi, 3.
swift, cĕlĕr, ĕris, ĕre; vēlox, ōcis, *adj.*
sword, glădĭus, i, *m.*; ensis, is, *m.*; ferrum, i, *n.*
Syracuse, Sўrācūsae, ārum, *f. pl.*

T

table, mensa, ae, *f.*
take, căpio, cēpi, captum, 3.
—— by storm, expugno, āvi, ātum, 1.
tall, celsus, a, um, *adj.*
taste, to, gusto, āvi, ātum, 1.
taste of, v. savour of.
tax, vectīgal, ālis, *n.*
teach, dŏcĕo, ŭi, ctum, 2.
teacher, măgister, tri, *m.*; prae-ceptor, ōris, *m.*
tell, dīco, xi, ctum, 3.

temper, ănĭmus, i, *m.*
tempest, tempestas, ātis, *f.*
temple, templum, i, *n.*
tender, tĕnĕr, a, um, *adj.*
tent, tăbernācŭlum, i, *n.*
terrify, terrĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2.
territories, fīnes, ĭum, *pl. m.*
terror, terror, păvor, ōris, *m.*
than, quam, *adv.*
that (*pron.*), istĕ, illĕ, ĭs, pp. 34, 35.
—— (*conj.*), ŭt, p. 98.
—— not, nē, quīn, p. 98 : and that not (after nē), nēvĕ, neu.
their, *gen. pl.* of ĭs, ĕa, ĭd: when referring to Subject, sŭus, a, um, *pron. adj.*: p. 33.
then, tum, *adv.*
—— indeed, tum dēmum.
there, ĭbi, *adv.*
thin, tĕnuis, e, *adj.*
thing, rēs, ĕi, *f.*
think, pŭto, āvi, ātum ; (*meditate*) cōgĭto, āvi, ātum, 1.
thither, ĕō, illūc, istūc, *adv.*
three, trēs, trĭa, *num. adj.*: p. 27.
through, per, *prep.* with *acc.*
throw, jăcio, jēci, jactum, con-jĭcio (cōnĭcĭo), jēci, jectum, 3 ; — *a bridge over a river*, flūmen ponte jungo, 3.
thunderbolt, fulmen, ĭnis, *n.*
thunders, it, tŏnăt, ŭit, āre, 1 : p. 88.
thus, ĭtă, sīc, *adv.*
tiger, tigress, tigris, is and ĭdis, *c.*
time, tempus, ŏris, *n.*
—— of life, aetas, ātis, *f.*
——, for a long, dĭū, *adv.*
timid, tĭmĭdus, a, um, *adj.*
to, ăd, *prep.* with *acc.*; see also p. 92, Rūle 21.
too, = also, quŏquĕ, ĕtiam.
——, too much, nĭmĭs, *adv.*
tongue, lingua, ae, *f.*
torture, crŭcĭātus, ūs, *m.*
towards, versŭs, after its noun (see p. 73), adversŭs, *preps.* with *acc.*

wake (*intrans.*), vĭgĭlo, āvi, ātum, 1.

walk, take a walk, ambŭlo, āvi, ātum, 1.

wall, mūrus, i, *m.*

wanting, to be, dēsum, fŭi, esse, *v. irr.* with *dat.*, p. 31.

war, bellum, i, *n.*

warlike, bellĭcōsus, a, um, *adj.*

warm, călĭdus, a, um, *adj.*

warmly, vĕhĕmentĕr, *adv.*

warn, mŏnĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2.

waste, to lay, vasto, āvi, ātum, 1.

watch, to, vĭgĭlo, āvi, ātum, 1.

water, ăqua, ae, *f.*

——, to fetch, ăquor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.* (milit. term).

way, vĭa, ae, *f.*

——, in that, ĭtă, *adv.*

——, to be in the, obsum, obfŭi & offŭi, ŏbesse, *v. irr.* with *dat.* : p. 32.

weak, infirmus, a, um, *adj.*; dēbĭlis, e (*helpless, disabled*).

weakness, infirmĭtas, ātis, *f.*

wealthy, ŏpŭlentus, a, um, *adj.*

weapon, tēlum, i, *n.*

wearies, it, taedet, taedŭit & pertaesum est, 2, *v. impers.*, with *acc.* and *gen.* : p. 87.

weep, flĕo, flēvi, flētum, 2.

well, bĕnĕ, *adv.* ; *comp.* mĕlĭus, *sup.* optĭmē.

——, to be, vălĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2.

west, occĭdens, entis, *m.*

whale, bālaena, ae, *f.*

what, quis(quī), quae, quĭd and quŏd, *inter.* and *indef. pron.*

—— sort, of, quālĭs, e, *rel. adj.*

when, quando, *inter. adv.* ; cum (quum), *adv.* and *conj.*

where, ŭbi, *adv.*

whether, utrum, *inter. particle*, p. 95.

which of two, ŭter, tra, trum, *pron. adj.*

while, dum, *conj.*

whilst (doing something), inter, with *gerund.*

white, albus, a, um, *adj.*

whither, quō, *rel. adv.*

who, quī, quae, quŏd, *rel. pron.* ; quĭs (quī), quae, quĭd or quŏd, *inter. pron.*

whole, tōtus, a, um, *adj.* : p. 23.

why, cūr, quārē, *adv.*

wicked, imprŏbus, mălus, a, um ; nēquam, *indec. adj.* : p. 25.

wickedness, scĕlus, ĕris, *n.* ; nĕfās (*indecl.*), *n.*

wide, lātus, a, um, *adj. Far and wide*, longē lātēque.

widely, lātē, *adv.*

wife, uxor, ōris, *f.* ; mŭlĭĕr, ĕris, *f.*

wilful, perversus, a, um, *adj.*

will, vŏluntas, ātis, *f.*

willing, to be, vŏlo, *v. irr.*, p. 78.

——, to be more, mālo, *v. irr.*, p. 78.

win, ădĭpiscor, ădeptus, 3, *v. dep.* ; păro, āvi, ātum, 1.

—— upon, blandĭor, ītus, 4, *v. dep.* ; with *dat.*

wind, ventus, i, *m.*

wine, vīnum, i, *n.*

wing, āla, ae, *f.*

winter, hĭems (hĭemps), ĕmis, *f.*

——, of, wintry, hĭbernus, a, um, *adj.*

——, to, hĭĕmo, āvi, ātum, 1.

—— quarters, hĭberna, ōrum. *n. pl.*

wisdom, săpientĭa, ae, *f.*

wise, to be, săpio, īvi and ĭi, 3.

——, a wise man, săpiens, entis, *adj.* and *subst.*

wisely, săpĭenter, *adv.*

wish, vŏluntas, ātis, *f.*

——, to, opto, āvi, ātum, 1 ; vŏlo, *v. irr.*, p. 78.

——, not to, nōlo, *v. irr.*, p. 78.

with, cum, *prep.* with *abl.*

within, intĭā, *prep.* with *acc.* ; also in with *abl.*

woman, fēmĭna, ae, *f.* ; mŭlĭĕr, ĕris, *f.*

wonder at, mīror, admīror, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*

wonderful, mīrus, mīrăbĭlis, e, *ıdj.*

wood, silva, ae, *f.*

work, ŏpus, ĕris, *n.*

world, mundus, i, *m.*

worship, to, vĕnĕror, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*

wound, vulnus, ĕris, *n.*

——, **to,** vulnĕro, āvi, ātum, 1.

wounded, saucĭus, a, um.

wretched, mĭsĕr, ĕră, ĕrum, *adj.*

write, to, scrībo, scripsi, scriptum, 3.

writer, scriptor. ōris, *m.*

Y

year, annus, i, *m.*

yesterday, hĕrī, *adv.*

yield, cēdo, concēdo, cessi, cessum, 3.

your, yours, (in speaking to one person) tŭus, a, um; (to more than one) vester, tra, trum, *poss. pron. adj.*

yourself, tu, tŭi, *pers. pron.* used reflexively.

youth, (*the period of youth;* also in collective sense, *young persons*) jŭventūs, tūtis, *f.*

—— (*a young man or woman*), jŭvĕnis, is, *c.*

Z

zeal, stŭdĭum, i, *n.*

zealous, stŭdĭōsus, a, um, *adj.*; with *gen.*

——, **to be,** stŭdĕo, ŭi, 2, with *dat.*

SIR WILLIAM SMITH'S SMALLER HISTORIES.

Maps, Plans, and Woodcuts. Small crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

England, from the Earliest Times to 1887.

Scripture History, continued down to A.D. 70.

Ancient History. Down to the Conquests of Alexander the Great.

Ancient Geography.

Rome, to the Establishment of the Empire.

Greece, to the Roman Conquest.

Classical Mythology. For Ladies' Schools and Young Persons.

English Literature. With Lives of our Chief Writers.

Specimens of English Literature.

SIR WM. SMITH'S SCHOOL DICTIONARIES.

Latin.

A Smaller Latin-English Dictionary. With a Dictionary of Proper Names. By Sir WM. SMITH and Prof. T. D. HALL, M.A. (730 pp.) 7s. 6d.

Smaller English-Latin Dictionary. 7s. 6d.

Larger Latin-English Dictionary. 16s.

Larger English-Latin Dictionary. Compiled from Original Sources. 16s.

An English-Latin Gradus or Verse Dictionary. By A. C. AINGER, M.A. and H. G. WINTLE, M.A. (448 pp.) Crown 8vo. 9s.

Bible.

Concise Dictionary of the Bible. Illustrations. 21s.

Smaller Bible Dictionary. Illustrations. 7s. 6d.

Classical.

Classical Dictionary of Greek and Roman Mythology, Biography, and Geography. With 800 Woodcuts. 18s.

Dictionary of Greek and Roman Antiquities. With many Illustrations. One Vol. 8vo. 21s.

Smaller Classical Dictionary. 200 Woodcuts. 7s. 6d.

Smaller Dictionary of Greek and Roman Antiquities. 200 Woodcuts. 7s. 6d.